



Touch A/D Flash MCU with LCD Driver

BS67F340/BS67F350
BS67F360/BS67F370

Revision: V1.70 Date: October 25, 2024

www.holtek.com

Table of Contents

Features	7
CPU Features	7
Peripheral Features.....	7
General Description.....	8
Selection Table.....	9
Block Diagram.....	9
Pin Assignment.....	10
Pin Descriptions	17
Absolute Maximum Ratings.....	35
D.C. Characteristics.....	36
A.C. Characteristics.....	37
A/D Converter Characteristics.....	38
Temperature Sensor Electrical Characteristics	38
LVD/LVR Electrical Characteristics	38
LCD Driver Electrical Characteristics	39
Touch Key Electrical Characteristics.....	40
Touch Key RC Oscillator 500kHz Mode Selected	40
Touch Key RC Oscillator 1000kHz Mode Selected	40
Touch Key RC Oscillator 1500kHz Mode Selected	41
Touch Key RC Oscillator 2000kHz Mode Selected	41
Power-on Reset Characteristics.....	42
System Architecture	42
Clocking and Pipelining.....	42
Program Counter.....	43
Stack	44
Arithmetic and Logic Unit – ALU	44
Flash Program Memory.....	45
Structure.....	45
Special Vectors	46
Look-up Table.....	46
Table Program Example	46
In Circuit Programming – ICP	47
On-Chip Debug Support – OCDS	48
In Application Programming – IAP	48
Data Memory	59
Structure.....	59
Data Memory Addressing.....	60
General Purpose Data Memory	60
Special Purpose Data Memory	60

Special Function Register Description.....	65
Indirect Addressing Registers – IAR0, IAR1, IAR2	65
Memory Pointers – MP0, MP1H/MP1L, MP2H/MP2L.....	65
Program Memory Bank Pointer – PBP.....	67
Accumulator – ACC.....	67
Program Counter Low Register – PCL.....	67
Look-up Table Registers – TBLP, TBHP, TBLH.....	68
Status Register – STATUS.....	68
EEPROM Data Memory.....	70
EEPROM Data Memory Structure	70
EEPROM Registers	70
Reading Data from the EEPROM	71
Writing Data to the EEPROM.....	72
Write Protection.....	72
EEPROM Interrupt	72
Programming Considerations.....	72
Oscillators	74
Oscillator Overview	74
System Clock Configurations.....	74
External Crystal/Ceramic Oscillator – HXT	75
Internal High Speed RC Oscillator – HIRC	76
External 32.768 kHz Crystal Oscillator – LXT	76
Internal 32kHz Oscillator – LIRC.....	77
Operating Modes and System Clocks	77
System Clocks	77
System Operation Modes.....	78
Control Registers	79
Operating Mode Switching	82
Standby Current Considerations	85
Wake-up	85
Watchdog Timer.....	86
Watchdog Timer Clock Source.....	86
Watchdog Timer Control Register	86
Watchdog Timer Operation	87
Reset and Initialisation.....	88
Reset Functions	88
Reset Initial Conditions	91
Input/Output Ports	97
Pull-high Resistors	99
Port A Wake-up	99
I/O Port Control Registers.....	99
Pin-shared Functions	100

I/O Pin Structures	113
Programming Considerations.....	114
Timer Modules – TM	114
Introduction	114
TM Operation	115
TM Clock Source.....	115
TM Interrupts.....	115
TM External Pins.....	115
TM Input/Output Pin Selection	116
Programming Considerations.....	117
Compact Type TM – CTM	118
Compact TM Operation	118
Compact Type TM Register Description.....	119
Compact Type TM Operation Modes	123
Standard Type TM – STM	129
Standard TM Operation.....	129
Standard Type TM Register Description	130
Standard Type TM Operation Modes	134
Periodic Type TM – PTM.....	144
Periodic TM Operation	144
Periodic Type TM Register Description	145
Periodic Type TM Operation Modes.....	149
Analog to Digital Converter	158
A/D Overview	158
Registers Descriptions	159
A/D Operation	165
A/D Reference Voltage.....	166
A/D Input Pins	166
Conversion Rate and Timing Diagram	166
Summary of A/D Conversion Steps.....	167
Programming Considerations.....	168
A/D Transfer Function	168
A/D Programming Examples.....	169
Serial Interface Module – SIM	171
SPI Interface	171
I ² C Interface	177
UART Interface.....	187
UART External Pin	188
UART Data Transfer Scheme.....	188
UART Status and Control Registers.....	188
Baud Rate Generator	194
UART Setup and Control.....	195
UART Transmitter.....	196

UART Receiver	197
Managing Receiver Errors	199
UART Interrupt Structure.....	200
UART Power Down and Wake-up.....	201
LCD Driver	202
LCD Memory	203
LCD Clock Source.....	205
LCD Register.....	205
LCD Voltage Source and Biasing.....	207
LCD Reset Function.....	208
LCD Driver Output.....	209
Programming Considerations.....	212
Touch Key Function	213
Touch Key Structure.....	213
Touch Key Register Definition	215
Touch Key Operation.....	222
Touch Key Interrupt.....	228
Progrsmming Considerations.....	229
Low Voltage Detector – LVD	229
LVD Register	229
LVD Operation.....	230
Interrupts	230
Interrupt Registers.....	230
Interrupt Operation	235
External Interrupt.....	237
Touch Key Interrupt.....	237
UART Transfer Interrupt.....	237
A/D Converter Interrupt.....	237
Multi-function Interrupt	238
Time Base Interrupt.....	238
Serial Interface Module Interrupt.....	240
LVD Interrupt.....	240
EEPROM Interrupt	240
TM Interrupt.....	241
Interrupt Wake-up Function.....	241
Programming Considerations.....	241
Application Circuits	242
Instruction Set.....	243
Introduction	243
Instruction Timing	243
Moving and Transferring Data	243
Arithmetic Operations.....	243
Logical and Rotate Operation	244

Branches and Control Transfer	244
Bit Operations	244
Table Read Operations	244
Other Operations.....	244
Instruction Set Summary	245
Table Conventions.....	245
Extended Instruction Set.....	247
Instruction Definition.....	249
Extended Instruction Definition	258
Package Information	265
48-pin LQFP (7mm×7mm) Outline Dimensions	266
64-pin LQFP (7mm×7mm) Outline Dimensions	267
80-pin LQFP (10mm×10mm) Outline Dimensions	268

Note that the BS67F340 device, although mentioned in this datasheet, has already been phased out and is presently no longer available.

Features

CPU Features

- Operating voltage
 - ♦ $f_{SYS}=8\text{MHz}$: 2.2V~5.5V
 - ♦ $f_{SYS}=12\text{MHz}$: 2.7V~5.5V
 - ♦ $f_{SYS}=16\text{MHz}$: 3.3V~5.5V
- Up to 0.25 μs instruction cycle with 16MHz system clock at $V_{DD}=5\text{V}$
- Power down and wake-up functions to reduce power consumption
- Oscillator type
 - ♦ External High Speed Crystal – HXT
 - ♦ Internal High Speed RC – HIRC
 - ♦ External 32.768kHz Crystal – LXT
 - ♦ Internal 32kHz RC – LIRC
- Fully integrated internal 8/12/16MHz oscillator requires no external components
- Multi-mode operation: NORMAL, SLOW, IDLE and SLEEP
- All instructions executed in one to three instruction cycles
- Table read instructions
- 115 powerful instructions
- Up to 16-level subroutine nesting
- Bit manipulation instruction

Peripheral Features

- Program Memory: Up to 32K \times 16
- Data Memory: Up to 1536 \times 8
- True EEPROM Memory: 128 \times 8
- Watchdog Timer function
- Up to 59 bidirectional I/O lines
- Two external interrupt lines shared with I/O pins
- Multiple Timer Modules for time measure, input capture, compare match output, PWM output function or single pulse output function
- Serial Interfaces Module – SIM for SPI or I²C
- Fully-duplex Universal Asynchronous Receiver and Transmitter Interface – UART
- LCD driver function with 1/3 bias – R-type & C-type bias
- Fully integrated up to 36 touch key functions – require no external components
- Dual Time-Base functions for generation of fixed time interrupt signals
- 8-channel 12-bit resolution A/D converter
- Temperature Sensor

- In Application Programming function – IAP
- Low voltage reset function
- Low voltage detect function
- Flash program memory can be re-programmed up to 100,000 times
- Flash program memory data retention > 10 years
- True EEPROM data memory can be re-programmed up to 1,000,000 times
- True EEPROM data memory data retention > 10 years
- Wide range of available package types

General Description

The series of devices are Flash Memory A/D type 8-bit high performance RISC architecture microcontroller with fully integrated touch key functions. With all touch key functions provided internally and with the convenience of Flash Memory multi-programming features, each device has all the features to offer designers a reliable and easy means of implementing Touch Keys within their products applications.

The touch key functions are fully integrated completely eliminating the need for external components. In addition to the flash program memory, other memory includes an area of RAM Data Memory as well as an area of true EEPROM memory for storage of non-volatile data such as serial numbers, calibration data, etc. Analog features include a multi-channel 12-bit A/D converter and a temperature sensor. Protective features such as an internal Watchdog Timer and Low Voltage Reset functions coupled with excellent noise immunity and ESD protection ensure that reliable operation is maintained in hostile electrical environments.

These devices also include fully integrated low and high speed oscillators which are flexibly used for different applications. The ability to operate and switch dynamically between a range of operating modes using different clock sources gives users the ability to optimise microcontroller operation and minimise power consumption. Easy communication with the outside world is provided using the internal UART, I²C and SPI interfaces, while the inclusion of flexible I/O programming features, Timer modules and many other features further enhance device functionality and flexibility.

The touch key devices will find excellent use in a huge range of modern Touch Key product applications such as instrumentation, household appliances, electronically controlled tools to name but a few.

Selection Table

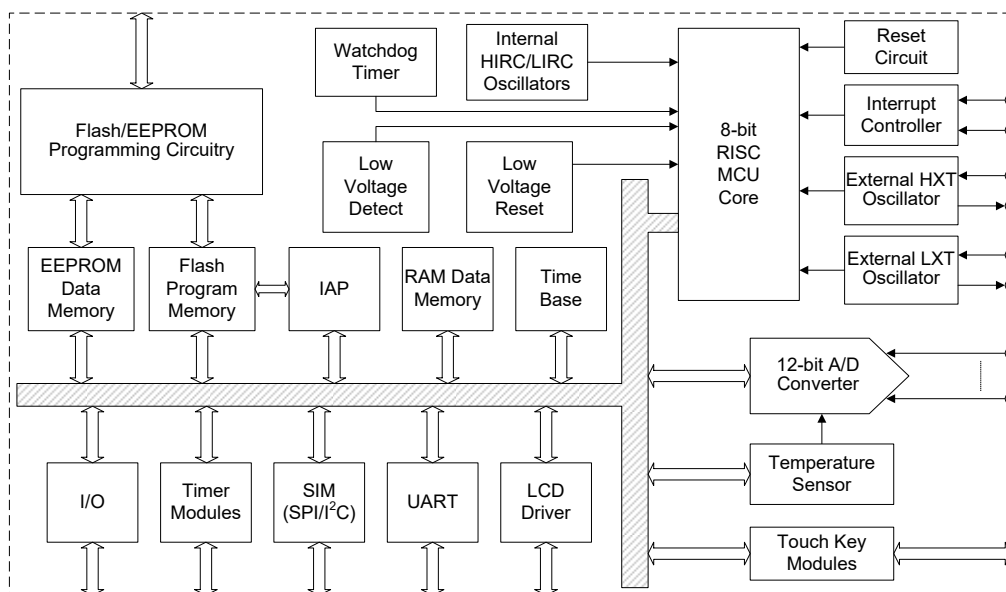
Most features are common to all devices. The main features distinguishing them are Memory capacity, I/O count, Timer Module features, Touch Module and key number, stack capacity, LCD driver and package types. The following table summarises the main features of each device.

Part No.	Program Memory	Data Memory	Data EEPROM	I/O	External Interrupt	A/D	Temp. Sensor	Time Base
BS67F340	4K×16	512×8	128×8	31	2	12-bit×8	√	2
BS67F350	8K×16	768×8	128×8	39	2	12-bit×8	√	2
BS67F360	16K×16	1024×8	128×8	43	2	12-bit×8	√	2
BS67F370	32K×16	1536×8	128×8	59	2	12-bit×8	√	2

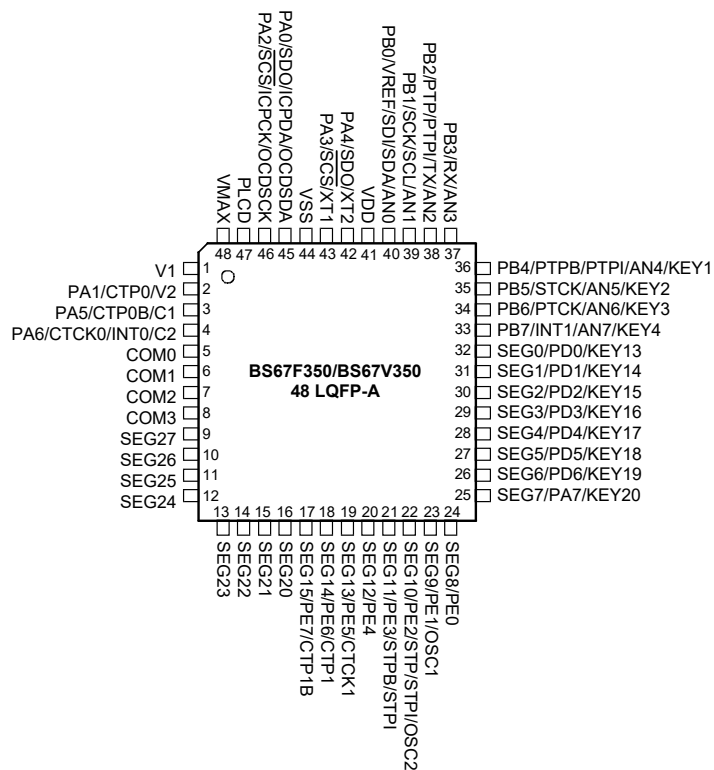
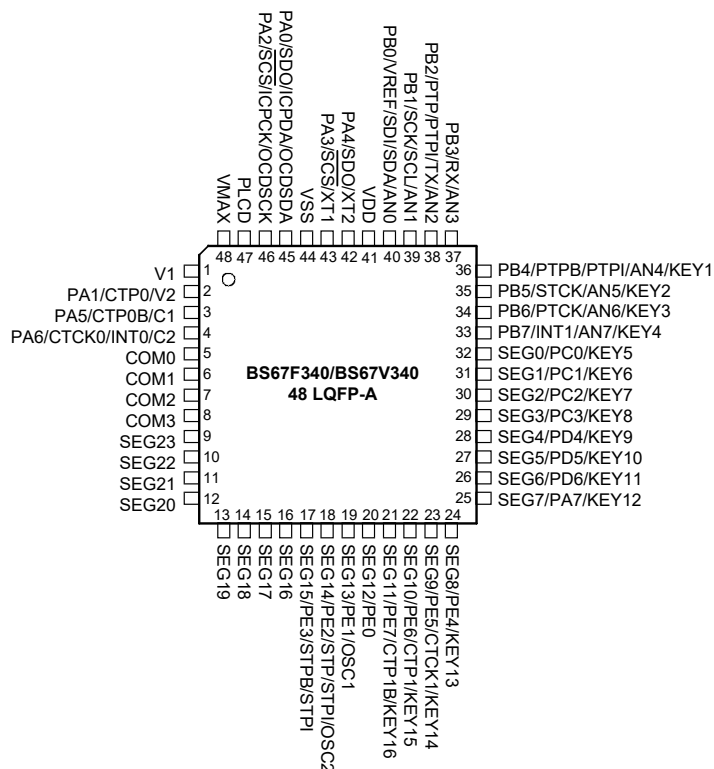
Part No.	Timer Module	Touch Module	Touch Key	SIM	UART	LCD Driver	Stacks	Package
BS67F340	10-bit CTM×2 10-bit PTM×1 16-bit STM×1	4	16	√	√	4×24	8	48LQFP
BS67F350	10-bit CTM×2 10-bit PTM×1 16-bit STM×1	5	20	√	√	4×32	8	48/64LQFP
BS67F360	10-bit CTM×2 10-bit PTM×1 16-bit STM×1	7	28	√	√	4×40	12	48/64LQFP
BS67F370	10-bit CTM×2 10-bit PTM×1 16-bit STM×1	9	36	√	√	4×48	16	48/64/80LQFP

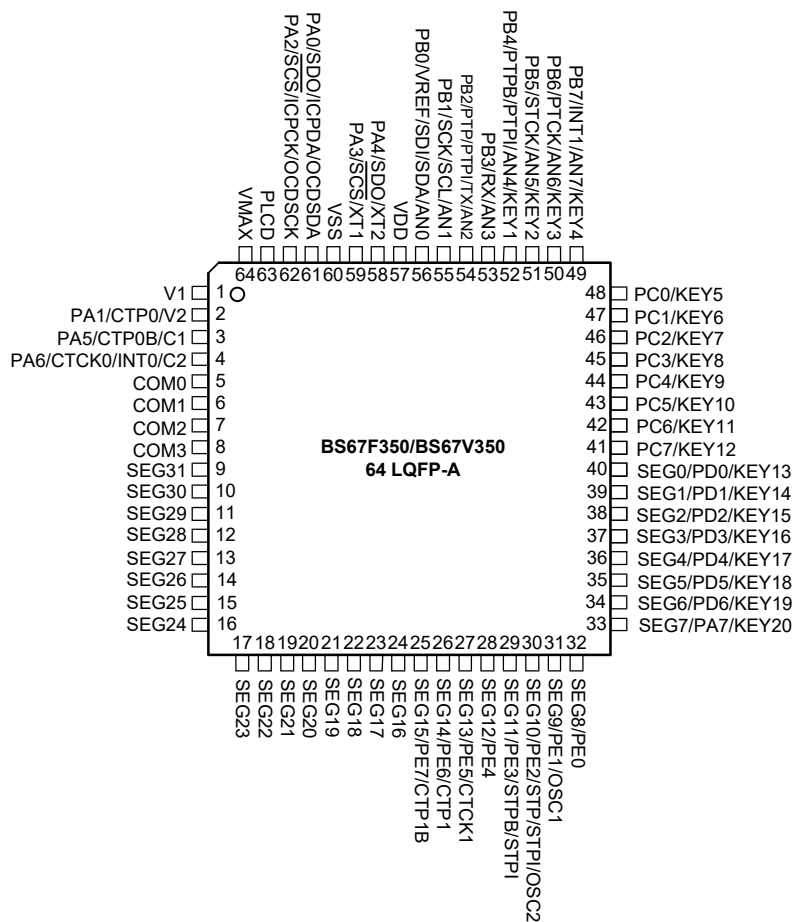
Note: As devices exist in more than one package format, the table reflects the situation for the package with the most pins.

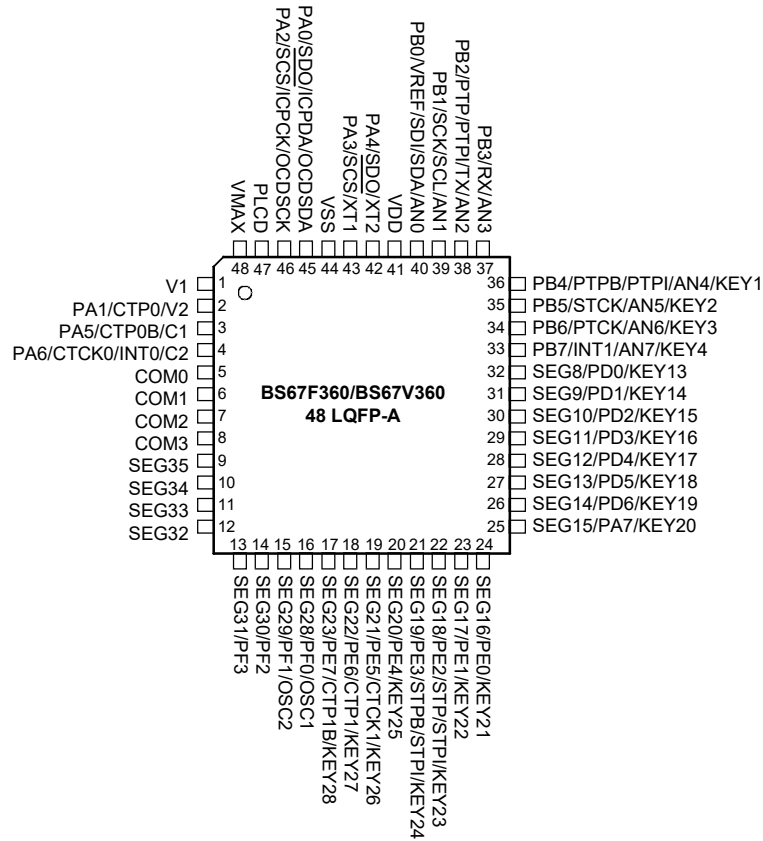
Block Diagram

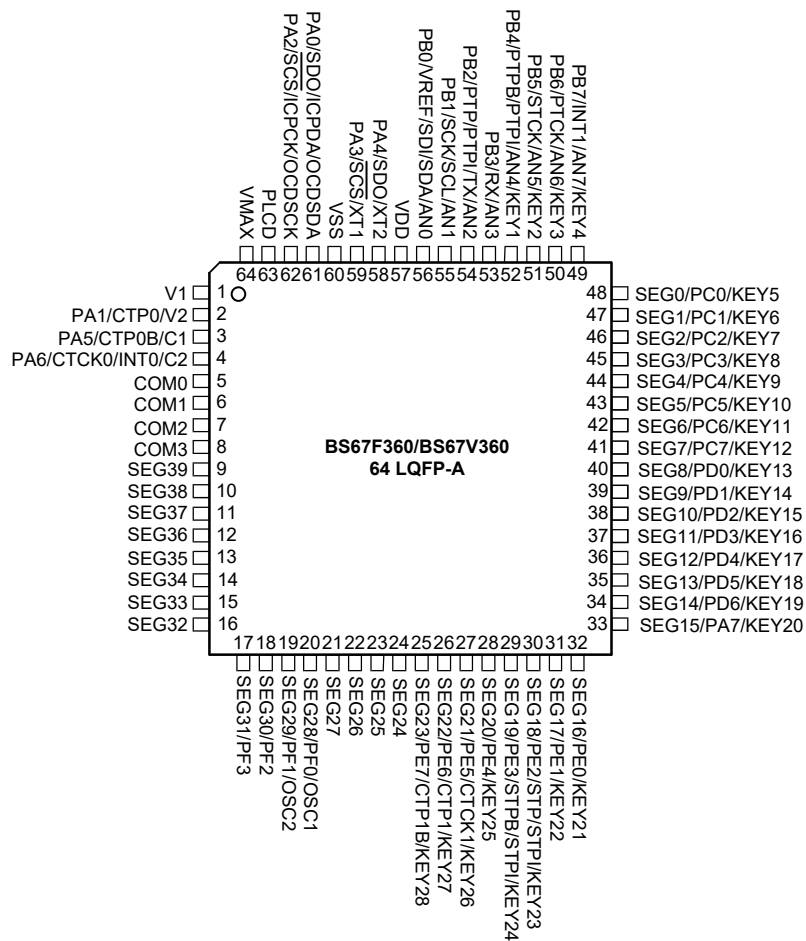


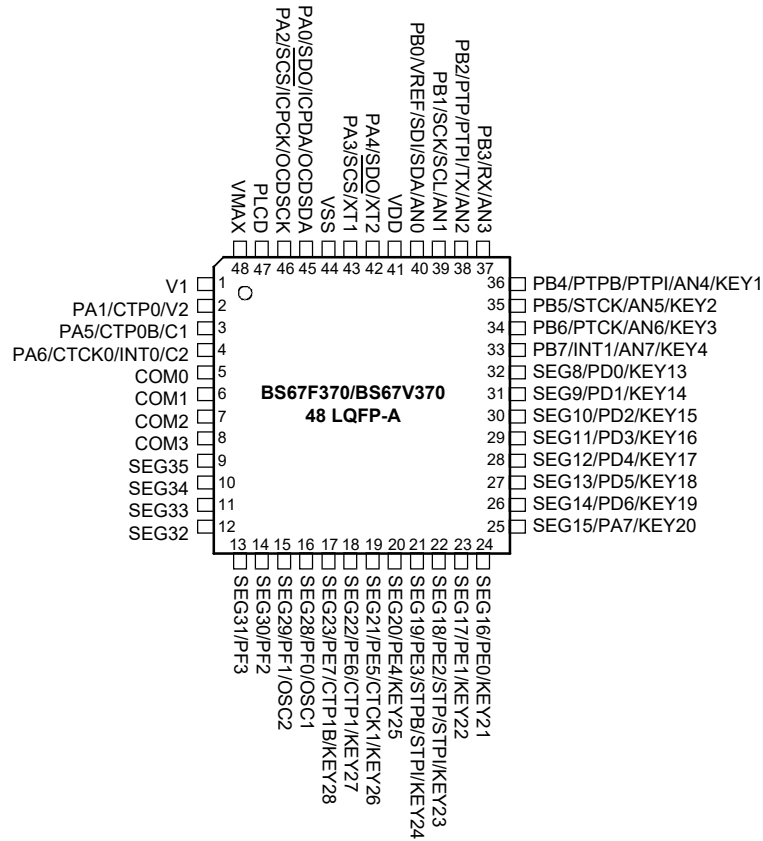
Pin Assignment

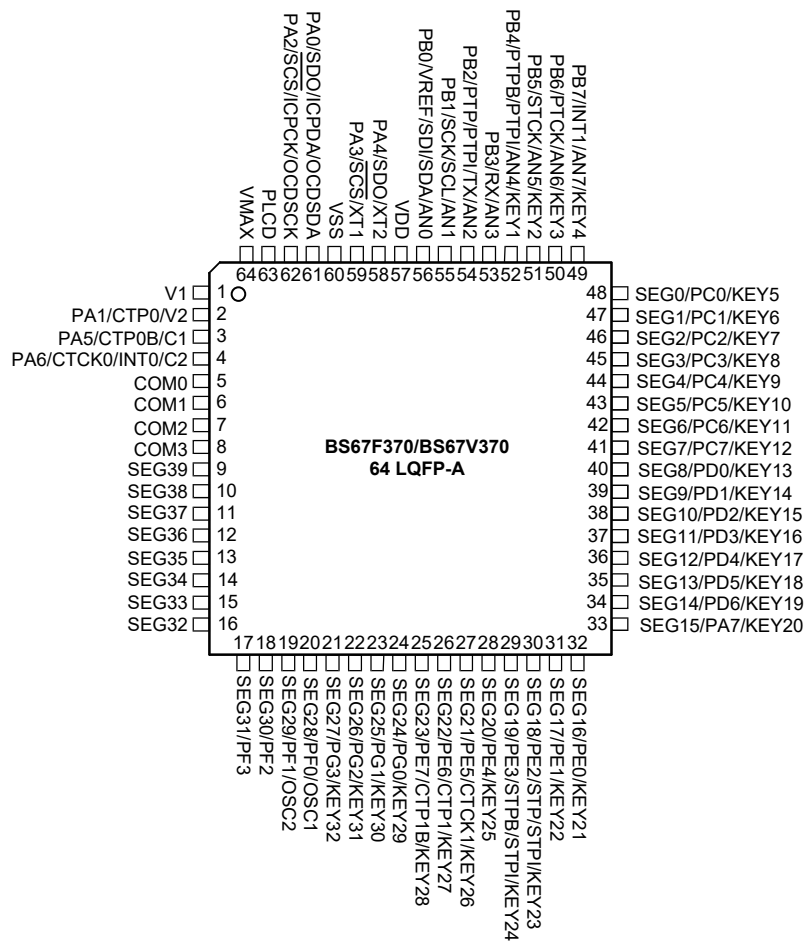


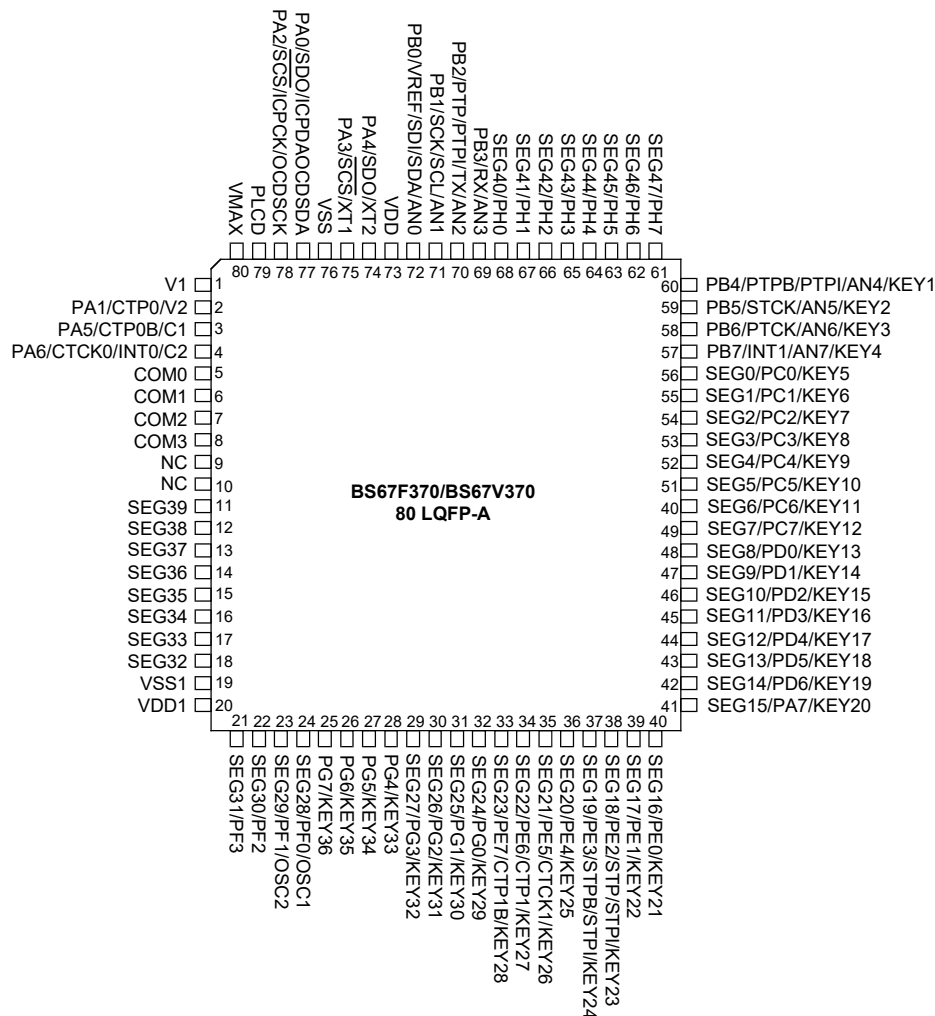












- Note: 1. If the pin-shared pin functions have multiple outputs simultaneously, the desired pin-shared function is determined by the corresponding software control bits.
2. The OCDSDA and OCDSCK pins are the OCDS dedicated pins and only available for the BS67V3x0 device which is the OCDS EV chip for the BS67F3x0 device.
3. For less pin-count package types there will be unbonded pins which should be properly configured to avoid unwanted current consumption resulting from floating input conditions. Refer to the “Standby Current Considerations” and “Input/Output Ports” sections.

Pin Descriptions

With the exception of the power pins and some relevant transformer control pins, all pins on these devices can be referenced by their Port name, e.g. PA0, PA1 etc, which refer to the digital I/O function of the pins. However these Port pins are also shared with other function such as the Analog to Digital Converter, Timer Module pins etc. The function of each pin is listed in the following table, however the details behind how each pin is configured is contained in other sections of the datasheet.

As the Pin Description table shows the situation for the package with the most pins, not all pins in the table will be available on smaller package sizes.

BS67F340

Pad Name	Function	OPT	I/T	O/T	Description
PA0/SDO/ICPDA/OCDSDA	PA0	PAWU PAPU PAS0	ST	CMOS	General purpose I/O. Register enabled pull-up and wake-up.
	SDO	PAS0	—	CMOS	SPI data output
	ICPDA	—	ST	CMOS	ICP Data/Address pin
	OCDSDA	—	ST	CMOS	OCDS Data/Address pin, for EV chip only.
PA1/CTP0/V2	PA1	PAWU PAPU PAS0	ST	CMOS	General purpose I/O. Register enabled pull-up and wake-up.
	CTP0	PAS0	—	CMOS	CTM0 output
	V2	PAS0	—	AN	LCD voltage pump
PA2/ $\overline{\text{SCS}}$ /ICPCK/OCDSCK	PA2	PAWU PAPU PAS0	ST	CMOS	General purpose I/O. Register enabled pull-up and wake-up.
	$\overline{\text{SCS}}$	PAS0 IFS	ST	CMOS	SPI slave select
	ICPCK	—	ST	CMOS	ICP Clock pin
	OCDSCK	—	ST	—	OCDS Clock pin, for EV chip only.
PA3/ $\overline{\text{SCS}}$ /XT1	PA3	PAWU PAPU PAS0	ST	CMOS	General purpose I/O. Register enabled pull-up and wake-up.
	$\overline{\text{SCS}}$	PAS0 IFS	ST	CMOS	SPI slave select
	XT1	PAS0	LXT	—	LXT oscillator pin
PA4/SDO/XT2	PA4	PAWU PAPU PAS1	ST	CMOS	General purpose I/O. Register enabled pull-up and wake-up.
	SDO	PAS1	—	CMOS	SPI data output
	XT2	PAS1	—	LXT	LXT oscillator pin
PA5/CTP0B/C1	PA5	PAWU PAPU PAS1	ST	CMOS	General purpose I/O. Register enabled pull-up and wake-up.
	CTP0B	PAS1	—	CMOS	CTM0 inverted output
	C1	PAS1	—	AN	LCD voltage pump
PA6/CTCK0/INT0/C2	PA6	PAWU PAPU PAS1	ST	CMOS	General purpose I/O. Register enabled pull-up and wake-up.
	CTCK0	PAS1	ST	—	CTM0 clock input
	INT0	PAS1 INTEG INTC0	ST	—	External Interrupt 0
	C2	PAS1	—	AN	LCD voltage pump

Pad Name	Function	OPT	I/T	O/T	Description
PA7/KEY12/SEG7	PA7	PAWU PAPU PAS1	ST	CMOS	General purpose I/O. Register enabled pull-up and wake-up.
	KEY12	PAS1	AN	—	Touch key input
	SEG7	PAS1	—	AN	LCD segment output
PB0/SDI/SDA/VREF/AN0	PB0	PBPU PBS0	ST	CMOS	General purpose I/O. Register enabled pull-up.
	SDI	PBS0	ST	—	SPI data input
	SDA	PBS0	ST	NMOS	I ² C data line
	VREF	PBS0	—	AN	A/D Converter reference voltage output
	AN0	PBS0	AN	—	A/D Converter analog input
PB1/SCK/SCL/AN1	PB1	PBPU PBS0	ST	CMOS	General purpose I/O. Register enabled pull-up.
	SCK	PBS0	ST	CMOS	SPI serial clock
	SCL	PBS0	ST	NMOS	I ² C clock line
	AN1	PBS0	AN	—	A/D Converter analog input
PB2/PTPI/TX/PTP/AN2	PB2	PBPU PBS0	ST	CMOS	General purpose I/O. Register enabled pull-up.
	PTPI	PBS0 IFS	ST	—	PTM capture input
	TX	PBS0	—	CMOS	UART TX serial data output
	PTP	PBS0	—	CMOS	PTM output
	AN2	PBS0	AN	—	A/D Converter analog input
PB3/RX/AN3	PB3	PBPU PBS0	ST	CMOS	General purpose I/O. Register enabled pull-up.
	RX	PBS0	ST	—	UART RX serial data input
	AN3	PBS0	AN	—	A/D Converter analog input
PB4/PTPI/PTPB/KEY1/AN4	PB4	PBPU PBS1	ST	CMOS	General purpose I/O. Register enabled pull-up.
	PTPI	PBS1 IFS	ST	—	PTM capture input
	PTPB	PBS1	—	CMOS	PTM inverted output
	KEY1	PBS1	AN	—	Touch key input
	AN4	PBS1	AN	—	A/D Converter analog input
PB5/STCK/KEY2/AN5	PB5	PBPU PBS1	ST	CMOS	General purpose I/O. Register enabled pull-up.
	STCK	PBS1	ST	—	STM clock input
	KEY2	PBS1	AN	—	Touch key input
	AN5	PBS1	AN	—	A/D Converter analog input
PB6/PTCK/KEY3/AN6	PB6	PBPU PBS1	ST	CMOS	General purpose I/O. Register enabled pull-up.
	PTCK	PBS1	ST	—	PTM clock input
	KEY3	PBS1	AN	—	Touch key input
	AN6	PBS1	AN	—	A/D Converter analog input
PB7/INT1/KEY4/AN7	PB7	PBPU PBS1	ST	CMOS	General purpose I/O. Register enabled pull-up.
	INT1	PBS1 INTEG INTC0	ST	—	External Interrupt 1
	KEY4	PBS1	AN	—	Touch key input
	AN7	PBS1	AN	—	A/D Converter analog input

Pad Name	Function	OPT	I/T	O/T	Description
PC0/KEY5/SEG0	PC0	PCPU PCS0	ST	CMOS	General purpose I/O. Register enabled pull-up.
	KEY5	PCS0	AN	—	Touch key input
	SEG0	PCS0	—	AN	LCD segment output
PC1/KEY6/SEG1	PC1	PCPU PCS0	ST	CMOS	General purpose I/O. Register enabled pull-up.
	KEY6	PCS0	AN	—	Touch key input
	SEG1	PCS0	—	AN	LCD segment output
PC2/KEY7/SEG2	PC2	PCPU PCS0	ST	CMOS	General purpose I/O. Register enabled pull-up.
	KEY7	PCS0	AN	—	Touch key input
	SEG2	PCS0	—	AN	LCD segment output
PC3/KEY8/SEG3	PC3	PCPU PCS0	ST	CMOS	General purpose I/O. Register enabled pull-up.
	KEY8	PCS0	AN	—	Touch key input
	SEG3	PCS0	—	AN	LCD segment output
PD4/KEY9/SEG4	PD4	PDP PDS1	ST	CMOS	General purpose I/O. Register enabled pull-up.
	KEY9	PDS1	AN	—	Touch key input
	SEG4	PDS1	—	AN	LCD segment output
PD5/KEY10/SEG5	PD5	PDP PDS1	ST	CMOS	General purpose I/O. Register enabled pull-up.
	KEY10	PDS1	AN	—	Touch key input
	SEG5	PDS1	—	AN	LCD segment output
PD6/KEY11/SEG6	PD6	PDP PDS1	ST	CMOS	General purpose I/O. Register enabled pull-up.
	KEY11	PDS1	AN	—	Touch key input
	SEG6	PDS1	—	AN	LCD segment output
PE0/SEG12	PE0	PEPU PES0	ST	CMOS	General purpose I/O. Register enabled pull-up.
	SEG12	PES0	—	AN	LCD segment output
PE1/OSC1/SEG13	PE1	PEPU PES0	ST	CMOS	General purpose I/O. Register enabled pull-up.
	OSC1	PES0	HXT	—	HXT oscillator pin
	SEG13	PES0	—	AN	LCD segment output
PE2/STPI/STP/OSC2/ SEG14	PE2	PEPU PES0	ST	CMOS	General purpose I/O. Register enabled pull-up.
	STPI	PES0 IFS	ST	—	STM capture input
	STP	PES0	—	CMOS	STM output
	OSC2	PES0	—	HXT	HXT oscillator pin
	SEG14	PES0	—	AN	LCD segment output
PE3/STPI/STPB/SEG15	PE3	PEPU PES0	ST	CMOS	General purpose I/O. Register enabled pull-up.
	STPI	PES0 IFS	ST	—	STM capture input
	STPB	PES0	—	CMOS	STM inverted output
	SEG15	PES0	—	AN	LCD segment output

Pad Name	Function	OPT	I/T	O/T	Description
PE4/KEY13/SEG8	PE4	PEPU PES1	ST	CMOS	General purpose I/O. Register enabled pull-up.
	KEY13	PES1	AN	—	Touch key input
	SEG8	PES1	—	AN	LCD segment output
PE5/CTCK1/KEY14/SEG9	PE5	PEPU PES1	ST	CMOS	General purpose I/O. Register enabled pull-up.
	CTCK1	PES1	ST	—	CTM1 clock input
	KEY14	PES1	AN	—	Touch key input
	SEG9	PES1	—	AN	LCD segment output
PE6/CTP1/KEY15/SEG10	PE6	PEPU PES1	ST	CMOS	General purpose I/O. Register enabled pull-up.
	CTP1	PES1	—	CMOS	CTM1 output
	KEY15	PES1	AN	—	Touch key input
	SEG10	PES1	—	AN	LCD segment output
PE7/CTP1B/KEY16/ SEG11	PE7	PEPU PES1	ST	CMOS	General purpose I/O. Register enabled pull-up.
	CTP1B	PES1	—	CMOS	CTM1 inverted output
	KEY16	PES1	AN	—	Touch key input
	SEG11	PES1	—	AN	LCD segment output
SEG16~SEG23	SEGN	LCDC0	—	AN	LCD segment output
COM0~COM3	COMn	LCDC0	—	AN	LCD common output
V1	V1	—	—	AO	LCD voltage pump
PLCD	PLCD	—	PWR	—	LCD power supply
VMAX	VMAX	—	PWR	—	IC maximum voltage, connected to VDD, PLCD or V1.
VDD	VDD	—	PWR	—	Positive power supply
VSS	VSS	—	PWR	—	Negative power supply, ground.

Legend: I/T: Input type
O/T: Output type
OPT: Optional by register option
PWR: Power
ST: Schmitt Trigger input
AN: Analog signal
CMOS: CMOS output
NMOS: NMOS output
HXT: High frequency crystal oscillator
LXT: Low frequency crystal oscillator

BS67F350

Pad Name	Function	OPT	I/T	O/T	Description
PA0/SDO/ICPDA/OCDSDA	PA0	PAWU PAPU PAS0	ST	CMOS	General purpose I/O. Register enabled pull-up and wake-up.
	SDO	PAS0	—	CMOS	SPI data output
	ICPDA	—	ST	CMOS	ICP Data/Address pin
	OCDSDA	—	ST	CMOS	OCDS Data/Address pin, for EV chip only.
PA1/CTP0/V2	PA1	PAWU PAPU PAS0	ST	CMOS	General purpose I/O. Register enabled pull-up and wake-up.
	CTP0	PAS0	—	CMOS	CTM0 output
	V2	PAS0	—	AN	LCD voltage pump
PA2/ $\overline{\text{SCS}}$ /ICPCK/OCDSCK	PA2	PAWU PAPU PAS0	ST	CMOS	General purpose I/O. Register enabled pull-up and wake-up.
	$\overline{\text{SCS}}$	PAS0 IFS	ST	CMOS	SPI slave select
	ICPCK	—	ST	CMOS	ICP Clock pin
	OCDSCK	—	ST	—	OCDS Clock pin, for EV chip only.
PA3/ $\overline{\text{SCS}}$ /XT1	PA3	PAWU PAPU PAS0	ST	CMOS	General purpose I/O. Register enabled pull-up and wake-up.
	$\overline{\text{SCS}}$	PAS0 IFS	ST	CMOS	SPI slave select
	XT1	PAS0	LXT	—	LXT oscillator pin
PA4/SDO/XT2	PA4	PAWU PAPU PAS1	ST	CMOS	General purpose I/O. Register enabled pull-up and wake-up.
	SDO	PAS1	—	CMOS	SPI data output
	XT2	PAS1	—	LXT	LXT oscillator pin
PA5/CTP0B/C1	PA5	PAWU PAPU PAS1	ST	CMOS	General purpose I/O. Register enabled pull-up and wake-up.
	CTP0B	PAS1	—	CMOS	CTM0 inverted output
	C1	PAS1	—	AN	LCD voltage pump
PA6/CTCK0/INT0/C2	PA6	PAWU PAPU PAS1	ST	CMOS	General purpose I/O. Register enabled pull-up and wake-up.
	CTCK0	PAS1	ST	—	CTM0 clock input
	INT0	PAS1 INTEG INTC0	ST	—	External Interrupt 0
	C2	PAS1	—	AN	LCD voltage pump
PA7/KEY20/SEG7	PA7	PAWU PAPU PAS1	ST	CMOS	General purpose I/O. Register enabled pull-up and wake-up.
	KEY20	PAS1	AN	—	Touch key input
	SEG7	PAS1	—	AN	LCD segment output

Pad Name	Function	OPT	I/T	O/T	Description
PB0/SDI/SDA/VREF/AN0	PB0	PBPU PBS0	ST	CMOS	General purpose I/O. Register enabled pull-up.
	SDI	PBS0	ST	—	SPI data input
	SDA	PBS0	ST	NMOS	I ² C data line
	VREF	PBS0	—	AN	A/D Converter reference voltage output
	AN0	PBS0	AN	—	A/D Converter analog input
PB1/SCK/SCL/AN1	PB1	PBPU PBS0	ST	CMOS	General purpose I/O. Register enabled pull-up.
	SCK	PBS0	ST	CMOS	SPI serial clock
	SCL	PBS0	ST	NMOS	I ² C clock line
	AN1	PBS0	AN	—	A/D Converter analog input
PB2/PTPI/TX/PTP/AN2	PB2	PBPU PBS0	ST	CMOS	General purpose I/O. Register enabled pull-up.
	PTPI	PBS0 IFS	ST	—	PTM capture input
	TX	PBS0	—	CMOS	UART TX serial data output
	PTP	PBS0	—	CMOS	PTM output
	AN2	PBS0	AN	—	A/D Converter analog input
PB3/RX/AN3	PB3	PBPU PBS0	ST	CMOS	General purpose I/O. Register enabled pull-up.
	RX	PBS0	ST	—	UART RX serial data input
	AN3	PBS0	AN	—	A/D Converter analog input
PB4/PTPI/PTPB/KEY1/AN4	PB4	PBPU PBS1	ST	CMOS	General purpose I/O. Register enabled pull-up.
	PTPI	PBS1 IFS	ST	—	PTM capture input
	PTPB	PBS1	—	CMOS	PTM inverted output
	KEY1	PBS1	AN	—	Touch key input
	AN4	PBS1	AN	—	A/D Converter analog input
PB5/STCK/KEY2/AN5	PB5	PBPU PBS1	ST	CMOS	General purpose I/O. Register enabled pull-up.
	STCK	PBS1	ST	—	STM clock input
	KEY2	PBS1	AN	—	Touch key input
	AN5	PBS1	AN	—	A/D Converter analog input
PB6/PTCK/KEY3/AN6	PB6	PBPU PBS1	ST	CMOS	General purpose I/O. Register enabled pull-up.
	PTCK	PBS1	ST	—	PTM clock input
	KEY3	PBS1	AN	—	Touch key input
	AN6	PBS1	AN	—	A/D Converter analog input
PB7/INT1/KEY4/AN7	PB7	PBPU PBS1	ST	CMOS	General purpose I/O. Register enabled pull-up.
	INT1	PBS1 INTEG INTC0	ST	—	External Interrupt 1
	KEY4	PBS1	AN	—	Touch key input
	AN7	PBS1	AN	—	A/D Converter analog input
PC0/KEY5	PC0	PCPU PCS0	ST	CMOS	General purpose I/O. Register enabled pull-up.
	KEY5	PCS0	AN	—	Touch key input

Pad Name	Function	OPT	I/T	O/T	Description
PC1/KEY6	PC1	PCPU PCS0	ST	CMOS	General purpose I/O. Register enabled pull-up.
	KEY6	PCS0	AN	—	Touch key input
PC2/KEY7	PC2	PCPU PCS0	ST	CMOS	General purpose I/O. Register enabled pull-up.
	KEY7	PCS0	AN	—	Touch key input
PC3/KEY8	PC3	PCPU PCS0	ST	CMOS	General purpose I/O. Register enabled pull-up.
	KEY8	PCS0	AN	—	Touch key input
PC4/KEY9	PC4	PCPU PCS1	ST	CMOS	General purpose I/O. Register enabled pull-up.
	KEY9	PCS1	AN	—	Touch key input
PC5/KEY10	PC5	PCPU PCS1	ST	CMOS	General purpose I/O. Register enabled pull-up.
	KEY10	PCS1	AN	—	Touch key input
PC6/KEY11	PC6	PCPU PCS1	ST	CMOS	General purpose I/O. Register enabled pull-up.
	KEY11	PCS1	AN	—	Touch key input
PC7/KEY12	PC7	PCPU PCS1	ST	CMOS	General purpose I/O. Register enabled pull-up.
	KEY12	PCS1	AN	—	Touch key input
PD0/KEY13/SEG0	PD0	PDP PDS0	ST	CMOS	General purpose I/O. Register enabled pull-up.
	KEY13	PDS0	AN	—	Touch key input
	SEG0	PDS0	—	AN	LCD segment output
PD1/KEY14/SEG1	PD1	PDP PDS0	ST	CMOS	General purpose I/O. Register enabled pull-up.
	KEY14	PDS0	AN	—	Touch key input
	SEG1	PDS0	—	AN	LCD segment output
PD2/KEY15/SEG2	PD2	PDP PDS0	ST	CMOS	General purpose I/O. Register enabled pull-up.
	KEY15	PDS0	AN	—	Touch key input
	SEG2	PDS0	—	AN	LCD segment output
PD3/KEY16/SEG3	PD3	PDP PDS0	ST	CMOS	General purpose I/O. Register enabled pull-up.
	KEY16	PDS0	AN	—	Touch key input
	SEG3	PDS0	—	AN	LCD segment output
PD4/KEY17/SEG4	PD4	PDP PDS1	ST	CMOS	General purpose I/O. Register enabled pull-up.
	KEY17	PDS1	AN	—	Touch key input
	SEG4	PDS1	—	AN	LCD segment output
PD5/KEY18/SEG5	PD5	PDP PDS1	ST	CMOS	General purpose I/O. Register enabled pull-up.
	KEY18	PDS1	AN	—	Touch key input
	SEG5	PDS1	—	AN	LCD segment output
PD6/KEY19/SEG6	PD6	PDP PDS1	ST	CMOS	General purpose I/O. Register enabled pull-up.
	KEY19	PDS1	AN	—	Touch key input
	SEG6	PDS1	—	AN	LCD segment output

Pad Name	Function	OPT	I/T	O/T	Description
PE0/SEG8	PE0	PEPU PES0	ST	CMOS	General purpose I/O. Register enabled pull-up.
	SEG8	PES0	—	AN	LCD segment output
PE1/OSC1/SEG9	PE1	PEPU PES0	ST	CMOS	General purpose I/O. Register enabled pull-up.
	OSC1	PES0	HXT	—	HXT oscillator pin
	SEG9	PES0	—	AN	LCD segment output
PE2/STPI/STP/OSC2/ SEG10	PE2	PEPU PES0	ST	CMOS	General purpose I/O. Register enabled pull-up.
	STPI	PES0 IFS	ST	—	STM capture input
	STP	PES0	—	CMOS	STM output
	OSC2	PES0	—	HXT	HXT oscillator pin
	SEG10	PES0	—	AN	LCD segment output
PE3/STPI/STPB/SEG11	PE3	PEPU PES0	ST	CMOS	General purpose I/O. Register enabled pull-up.
	STPI	PES0 IFS	ST	—	STM capture input
	STPB	PES0	—	CMOS	STM inverted output
	SEG11	PES0	—	AN	LCD segment output
PE4/SEG12	PE4	PEPU PES1	ST	CMOS	General purpose I/O. Register enabled pull-up.
	SEG12	PES1	—	AN	LCD segment output
PE5/CTCK1/SEG13	PE5	PEPU PES1	ST	CMOS	General purpose I/O. Register enabled pull-up.
	CTCK1	PES1	ST	—	CTM1 clock input
	SEG13	PES1	—	AN	LCD segment output
PE6/CTP1/SEG14	PE6	PEPU PES1	ST	CMOS	General purpose I/O. Register enabled pull-up.
	CTP1	PES1	—	CMOS	CTM1 output
	SEG14	PES1	—	AN	LCD segment output
PE7/CTP1B/SEG15	PE7	PEPU PES1	ST	CMOS	General purpose I/O. Register enabled pull-up.
	CTP1B	PES1	—	CMOS	CTM1 inverted output
	SEG15	PES1	—	AN	LCD segment output
SEG16~SEG31	SEGn	LCDC0	—	AN	LCD segment output
COM0~COM3	COMn	LCDC0	—	AN	LCD common output
V1	V1	—	—	AO	LCD voltage pump
PLCD	PLCD	—	PWR	—	LCD power supply
VMAX	VMAX	—	PWR	—	IC maximum voltage, connected to VDD, PLCD or V1.
VDD	VDD	—	PWR	—	Positive power supply
VSS	VSS	—	PWR	—	Negative power supply, ground.

Legend: I/T: Input type

OPT: Optional by register option

ST: Schmitt Trigger input

CMOS: CMOS output

HXT: High frequency crystal oscillator

LXT: Low frequency crystal oscillator

O/T: Output type

PWR: Power

AN: Analog signal

NMOS: NMOS output

BS67F360

Pad Name	Function	OPT	I/T	O/T	Description
PA0/SDO/ICPDA/OCDSDA	PA0	PAWU PAPU PAS0	ST	CMOS	General purpose I/O. Register enabled pull-up and wake-up.
	SDO	PAS0	—	CMOS	SPI data output
	ICPDA	—	ST	CMOS	ICP Data/Address pin
	OCDSDA	—	ST	CMOS	OCDS Data/Address pin, for EV chip only.
PA1/CTP0/V2	PA1	PAWU PAPU PAS0	ST	CMOS	General purpose I/O. Register enabled pull-up and wake-up.
	CTP0	PAS0	—	CMOS	CTM0 output
	V2	PAS0	—	AN	LCD voltage pump
PA2/ $\overline{\text{SCS}}$ /ICPCK/OCDSCK	PA2	PAWU PAPU PAS0	ST	CMOS	General purpose I/O. Register enabled pull-up and wake-up.
	$\overline{\text{SCS}}$	PAS0 IFS	ST	CMOS	SPI slave select
	ICPCK	—	ST	CMOS	ICP Clock pin
	OCDSCK	—	ST	—	OCDS Clock pin, for EV chip only.
PA3/ $\overline{\text{SCS}}$ /XT1	PA3	PAWU PAPU PAS0	ST	CMOS	General purpose I/O. Register enabled pull-up and wake-up.
	$\overline{\text{SCS}}$	PAS0 IFS	ST	CMOS	SPI slave select
	XT1	PAS0	LXT	—	LXT oscillator pin
PA4/SDO/XT2	PA4	PAWU PAPU PAS1	ST	CMOS	General purpose I/O. Register enabled pull-up and wake-up.
	SDO	PAS1	—	CMOS	SPI data output
	XT2	PAS1	—	LXT	LXT oscillator pin
PA5/CTP0B/C1	PA5	PAWU PAPU PAS1	ST	CMOS	General purpose I/O. Register enabled pull-up and wake-up.
	CTP0B	PAS1	—	CMOS	CTM0 inverted output
	C1	PAS1	—	AN	LCD voltage pump
PA6/CTCK0/INT0/C2	PA6	PAWU PAPU PAS1	ST	CMOS	General purpose I/O. Register enabled pull-up and wake-up.
	CTCK0	PAS1	ST	—	CTM0 clock input
	INT0	PAS1 INTEG INTC0	ST	—	External Interrupt 0
	C2	PAS1	—	AN	LCD voltage pump
PA7/KEY20/SEG15	PA7	PAWU PAPU PAS1	ST	CMOS	General purpose I/O. Register enabled pull-up and wake-up.
	KEY20	PAS1	AN	—	Touch key input
	SEG15	PAS1	—	AN	LCD segment output

Pad Name	Function	OPT	I/T	O/T	Description
PB0/SDI/SDA/VREF/AN0	PB0	PBPU PBS0	ST	CMOS	General purpose I/O. Register enabled pull-up.
	SDI	PBS0	ST	—	SPI data input
	SDA	PBS0	ST	NMOS	I ² C data line
	VREF	PBS0	—	AN	A/D Converter reference voltage output
	AN0	PBS0	AN	—	A/D Converter analog input
PB1/SCK/SCL/AN1	PB1	PBPU PBS0	ST	CMOS	General purpose I/O. Register enabled pull-up.
	SCK	PBS0	ST	CMOS	SPI serial clock
	SCL	PBS0	ST	NMOS	I ² C clock line
	AN1	PBS0	AN	—	A/D Converter analog input
PB2/PTPI/TX/PTP/AN2	PB2	PBPU PBS0	ST	CMOS	General purpose I/O. Register enabled pull-up.
	PTPI	PBS0 IFS	ST	—	PTM capture input
	TX	PBS0	—	CMOS	UART TX serial data output
	PTP	PBS0	—	CMOS	PTM output
	AN2	PBS0	AN	—	A/D Converter analog input
PB3/RX/AN3	PB3	PBPU PBS0	ST	CMOS	General purpose I/O. Register enabled pull-up.
	RX	PBS0	ST	—	UART RX serial data input
	AN3	PBS0	AN	—	A/D Converter analog input
PB4/PTPI/PTPB/KEY1/AN4	PB4	PBPU PBS1	ST	CMOS	General purpose I/O. Register enabled pull-up.
	PTPI	PBS1 IFS	ST	—	PTM capture input
	PTPB	PBS1	—	CMOS	PTM inverted output
	KEY1	PBS1	AN	—	Touch key input
	AN4	PBS1	AN	—	A/D Converter analog input
PB5/STCK/KEY2/AN5	PB5	PBPU PBS1	ST	CMOS	General purpose I/O. Register enabled pull-up.
	STCK	PBS1	ST	—	STM clock input
	KEY2	PBS1	AN	—	Touch key input
	AN5	PBS1	AN	—	A/D Converter analog input
PB6/PTCK/KEY3/AN6	PB6	PBPU PBS1	ST	CMOS	General purpose I/O. Register enabled pull-up.
	PTCK	PBS1	ST	—	PTM clock input
	KEY3	PBS1	AN	—	Touch key input
	AN6	PBS1	AN	—	A/D Converter analog input
PB7/INT1/KEY4/AN7	PB7	PBPU PBS1	ST	CMOS	General purpose I/O. Register enabled pull-up.
	INT1	PBS1 INTEG INTC0	ST	—	External Interrupt 1
	KEY4	PBS1	AN	—	Touch key input
	AN7	PBS1	AN	—	A/D Converter analog input
PC0/KEY5/SEG0	PC0	PCPU PCS0	ST	CMOS	General purpose I/O. Register enabled pull-up.
	KEY5	PCS0	AN	—	Touch key input
	SEG0	PCS0	—	AN	LCD segment output

Pad Name	Function	OPT	I/T	O/T	Description
PC1/KEY6/SEG1	PC1	PCPU PCS0	ST	CMOS	General purpose I/O. Register enabled pull-up.
	KEY6	PCS0	AN	—	Touch key input
	SEG1	PCS0	—	AN	LCD segment output
PC2/KEY7/SEG2	PC2	PCPU PCS0	ST	CMOS	General purpose I/O. Register enabled pull-up.
	KEY7	PCS0	AN	—	Touch key input
	SEG2	PCS0	—	AN	LCD segment output
PC3/KEY8/SEG3	PC3	PCPU PCS0	ST	CMOS	General purpose I/O. Register enabled pull-up.
	KEY8	PCS0	AN	—	Touch key input
	SEG3	PCS0	—	AN	LCD segment output
PC4/KEY9/SEG4	PC4	PCPU PCS1	ST	CMOS	General purpose I/O. Register enabled pull-up.
	KEY9	PCS1	AN	—	Touch key input
	SEG4	PCS1	—	AN	LCD segment output
PC5/KEY10/SEG5	PC5	PCPU PCS1	ST	CMOS	General purpose I/O. Register enabled pull-up.
	KEY10	PCS1	AN	—	Touch key input
	SEG5	PCS1	—	AN	LCD segment output
PC6/KEY11/SEG6	PC6	PCPU PCS1	ST	CMOS	General purpose I/O. Register enabled pull-up.
	KEY11	PCS1	AN	—	Touch key input
	SEG6	PCS1	—	AN	LCD segment output
PC7/KEY12/SEG7	PC7	PCPU PCS1	ST	CMOS	General purpose I/O. Register enabled pull-up.
	KEY12	PCS1	AN	—	Touch key input
	SEG7	PCS1	—	AN	LCD segment output
PD0/KEY13/SEG8	PD0	PDP PDS0	ST	CMOS	General purpose I/O. Register enabled pull-up.
	KEY13	PDS0	AN	—	Touch key input
	SEG8	PDS0	—	AN	LCD segment output
PD1/KEY14/SEG9	PD1	PDP PDS0	ST	CMOS	General purpose I/O. Register enabled pull-up.
	KEY14	PDS0	AN	—	Touch key input
	SEG9	PDS0	—	AN	LCD segment output
PD2/KEY15/SEG10	PD2	PDP PDS0	ST	CMOS	General purpose I/O. Register enabled pull-up.
	KEY15	PDS0	AN	—	Touch key input
	SEG10	PDS0	—	AN	LCD segment output
PD3/KEY16/SEG11	PD3	PDP PDS0	ST	CMOS	General purpose I/O. Register enabled pull-up.
	KEY16	PDS0	AN	—	Touch key input
	SEG11	PDS0	—	AN	LCD segment output
PD4/KEY17/SEG12	PD4	PDP PDS1	ST	CMOS	General purpose I/O. Register enabled pull-up.
	KEY17	PDS1	AN	—	Touch key input
	SEG12	PDS1	—	AN	LCD segment output

Pad Name	Function	OPT	I/T	O/T	Description
PD5/KEY18/SEG13	PD5	PDPUPDS1	ST	CMOS	General purpose I/O. Register enabled pull-up.
	KEY18	PDS1	AN	—	Touch key input
	SEG13	PDS1	—	AN	LCD segment output
PD6/KEY19/SEG14	PD6	PDPUPDS1	ST	CMOS	General purpose I/O. Register enabled pull-up.
	KEY19	PDS1	AN	—	Touch key input
	SEG14	PDS1	—	AN	LCD segment output
PE0/KEY21/SEG16	PE0	PEPUPES0	ST	CMOS	General purpose I/O. Register enabled pull-up.
	KEY21	PES0	AN	—	Touch key input
	SEG16	PES0	—	AN	LCD segment output
PE1/KEY22/SEG17	PE1	PEPUPES0	ST	CMOS	General purpose I/O. Register enabled pull-up.
	KEY22	PES0	AN	—	Touch key input
	SEG17	PES0	—	AN	LCD segment output
PE2/STPI/STPB/KEY23/SEG18	PE2	PEPUPES0	ST	CMOS	General purpose I/O. Register enabled pull-up.
	STPI	PES0IFS	ST	—	STM capture input
	STPB	PES0	—	CMOS	STM output
	KEY23	PES0	AN	—	Touch key input
	SEG18	PES0	—	AN	LCD segment output
PE3/STPI/STPB/KEY24/SEG19	PE3	PEPUPES0	ST	CMOS	General purpose I/O. Register enabled pull-up.
	STPI	PES0IFS	ST	—	STM capture input
	STPB	PES0	—	CMOS	STM inverted output
	KEY24	PES0	AN	—	Touch key input
	SEG19	PES0	—	AN	LCD segment output
PE4/KEY25/SEG20	PE4	PEPUPES1	ST	CMOS	General purpose I/O. Register enabled pull-up.
	KEY25	PES1	AN	—	Touch key input
	SEG20	PES1	—	AN	LCD segment output
PE5/CTCK1/KEY26/SEG21	PE5	PEPUPES1	ST	CMOS	General purpose I/O. Register enabled pull-up.
	CTCK1	PES1	ST	—	CTM1 clock input
	KEY26	PES1	AN	—	Touch key input
	SEG21	PES1	—	AN	LCD segment output
PE6/CTP1/KEY27/SEG22	PE6	PEPUPES1	ST	CMOS	General purpose I/O. Register enabled pull-up.
	CTP1	PES1	—	CMOS	CTM1 output
	KEY27	PES1	AN	—	Touch key input
	SEG22	PES1	—	AN	LCD segment output
PE7/CTP1B/KEY28/SEG23	PE7	PEPUPES1	ST	CMOS	General purpose I/O. Register enabled pull-up.
	CTP1B	PES1	—	CMOS	CTM1 inverted output
	KEY28	PES1	AN	—	Touch key input
	SEG23	PES1	—	AN	LCD segment output

Pad Name	Function	OPT	I/T	O/T	Description
PF0/OSC1/SEG28	PF0	PFPUPFS0	ST	CMOS	General purpose I/O. Register enabled pull-up.
	OSC1	PFS0	HXT	—	HXT oscillator pin
	SEG28	PFS0	—	AN	LCD segment output
PF1/OSC2/SEG29	PF1	PFPUPFS0	ST	CMOS	General purpose I/O. Register enabled pull-up.
	OSC2	PFS0	—	HXT	HXT oscillator pin
	SEG29	PFS0	—	AN	LCD segment output
PF2/SEG30	PF2	PFPUPFS0	ST	CMOS	General purpose I/O. Register enabled pull-up.
	SEG30	PFS0	—	AN	LCD segment output
PF3/SEG31	PF3	PFPUPFS0	ST	CMOS	General purpose I/O. Register enabled pull-up.
	SEG31	PFS0	—	AN	LCD segment output
SEG24~SEG27, SEG32~SEG39	SEGN	LCDC0	—	AN	LCD segment output
COM0~COM3	COMn	LCDC0	—	AN	LCD common output
V1	V1	—	—	AO	LCD voltage pump
PLCD	PLCD	—	PWR	—	LCD power supply
VMAX	VMAX	—	PWR	—	IC maximum voltage, connected to VDD, PLCD or V1.
VDD	VDD	—	PWR	—	Positive power supply
VSS	VSS	—	PWR	—	Negative power supply, ground.

Legend: I/T: Input type

OPT: Optional by register option

ST: Schmitt Trigger input

CMOS: CMOS output

HXT: High frequency crystal oscillator

LXT: Low frequency crystal oscillator

O/T: Output type

PWR: Power

AN: Analog signal

NMOS: NMOS output

BS67F370

Pad Name	Function	OPT	I/T	O/T	Description
PA0/SDO/ICPDA/OCDSDA	PA0	PAWU PAPU PAS0	ST	CMOS	General purpose I/O. Register enabled pull-up and wake-up.
	SDO	PAS0	—	CMOS	SPI data output
	ICPDA	—	ST	CMOS	ICP Data/Address pin
	OCDSDA	—	ST	CMOS	OCDS Data/Address pin, for EV chip only.
PA1/CTP0/V2	PA1	PAWU PAPU PAS0	ST	CMOS	General purpose I/O. Register enabled pull-up and wake-up.
	CTP0	PAS0	—	CMOS	CTM0 output
	V2	PAS0	—	AN	LCD voltage pump
PA2/ $\overline{\text{SCS}}$ /ICPCK/OCDSCK	PA2	PAWU PAPU PAS0	ST	CMOS	General purpose I/O. Register enabled pull-up and wake-up.
	$\overline{\text{SCS}}$	PAS0 IFS	ST	CMOS	SPI slave select
	ICPCK	—	ST	CMOS	ICP Clock pin
	OCDSCK	—	ST	—	OCDS Clock pin, for EV chip only.
PA3/ $\overline{\text{SCS}}$ /XT1	PA3	PAWU PAPU PAS0	ST	CMOS	General purpose I/O. Register enabled pull-up and wake-up.
	$\overline{\text{SCS}}$	PAS0 IFS	ST	CMOS	SPI slave select
	XT1	PAS0	LXT	—	LXT oscillator pin
PA4/SDO/XT2	PA4	PAWU PAPU PAS1	ST	CMOS	General purpose I/O. Register enabled pull-up and wake-up.
	SDO	PAS1	—	CMOS	SPI data output
	XT2	PAS1	—	LXT	LXT oscillator pin
PA5/CTP0B/C1	PA5	PAWU PAPU PAS1	ST	CMOS	General purpose I/O. Register enabled pull-up and wake-up.
	CTP0B	PAS1	—	CMOS	CTM0 inverted output
	C1	PAS1	—	AN	LCD voltage pump
PA6/CTCK0/INT0/C2	PA6	PAWU PAPU PAS1	ST	CMOS	General purpose I/O. Register enabled pull-up and wake-up.
	CTCK0	PAS1	ST	—	CTM0 clock input
	INT0	PAS1 INTEG INTC0	ST	—	External Interrupt 0
	C2	PAS1	—	AN	LCD voltage pump
PA7/KEY20/SEG15	PA7	PAWU PAPU PAS1	ST	CMOS	General purpose I/O. Register enabled pull-up and wake-up.
	KEY20	PAS1	AN	—	Touch key input
	SEG15	PAS1	—	AN	LCD segment output

Pad Name	Function	OPT	I/T	O/T	Description
PB0/SDI/SDA/VREF/AN0	PB0	PBPU PBS0	ST	CMOS	General purpose I/O. Register enabled pull-up.
	SDI	PBS0	ST	—	SPI data input
	SDA	PBS0	ST	NMOS	I ² C data line
	VREF	PBS0	—	AN	A/D Converter reference voltage output
	AN0	PBS0	AN	—	A/D Converter analog input
PB1/SCK/SCL/AN1	PB1	PBPU PBS0	ST	CMOS	General purpose I/O. Register enabled pull-up.
	SCK	PBS0	ST	CMOS	SPI serial clock
	SCL	PBS0	ST	NMOS	I ² C clock line
	AN1	PBS0	AN	—	A/D Converter analog input
PB2/PTPI/TX/PTP/AN2	PB2	PBPU PBS0	ST	CMOS	General purpose I/O. Register enabled pull-up.
	PTPI	PBS0 IFS	ST	—	PTM capture input
	TX	PBS0	—	CMOS	UART TX serial data output
	PTP	PBS0	—	CMOS	PTM output
	AN2	PBS0	AN	—	A/D Converter analog input
PB3/RX/AN3	PB3	PBPU PBS0	ST	CMOS	General purpose I/O. Register enabled pull-up.
	RX	PBS0	ST	—	UART RX serial data input
	AN3	PBS0	AN	—	A/D Converter analog input
PB4/PTPI/PTPB/KEY1/AN4	PB4	PBPU PBS1	ST	CMOS	General purpose I/O. Register enabled pull-up.
	PTPI	PBS1 IFS	ST	—	PTM capture input
	PTPB	PBS1	—	CMOS	PTM inverted output
	KEY1	PBS1	AN	—	Touch key input
	AN4	PBS1	AN	—	A/D Converter analog input
PB5/STCK/KEY2/AN5	PB5	PBPU PBS1	ST	CMOS	General purpose I/O. Register enabled pull-up.
	STCK	PBS1	ST	—	STM clock input
	KEY2	PBS1	AN	—	Touch key input
	AN5	PBS1	AN	—	A/D Converter analog input
PB6/PTCK/KEY3/AN6	PB6	PBPU PBS1	ST	CMOS	General purpose I/O. Register enabled pull-up.
	PTCK	PBS1	ST	—	PTM clock input
	KEY3	PBS1	AN	—	Touch key input
	AN6	PBS1	AN	—	A/D Converter analog input
PB7/INT1/KEY4/AN7	PB6	PBPU PBS1	ST	CMOS	General purpose I/O. Register enabled pull-up.
	INT1	PBS1 INTEG INTC0	ST	—	External Interrupt 1
	KEY4	PBS1	AN	—	Touch key input
	AN7	PBS1	AN	—	A/D Converter analog input
PC0/KEY5/SEG0	PC0	PCPU PCS0	ST	CMOS	General purpose I/O. Register enabled pull-up.
	KEY5	PCS0	AN	—	Touch key input
	SEG0	PCS0	—	AN	LCD segment output

Pad Name	Function	OPT	I/T	O/T	Description
PC1/KEY6/SEG1	PC1	PCPU PCS0	ST	CMOS	General purpose I/O. Register enabled pull-up.
	KEY6	PCS0	AN	—	Touch key input
	SEG1	PCS0	—	AN	LCD segment output
PC2/KEY7/SEG2	PC2	PCPU PCS0	ST	CMOS	General purpose I/O. Register enabled pull-up.
	KEY7	PCS0	AN	—	Touch key input
	SEG2	PCS0	—	AN	LCD segment output
PC3/KEY8/SEG3	PC3	PCPU PCS0	ST	CMOS	General purpose I/O. Register enabled pull-up.
	KEY8	PCS0	AN	—	Touch key input
	SEG3	PCS0	—	AN	LCD segment output
PC4/KEY9/SEG4	PC4	PCPU PCS1	ST	CMOS	General purpose I/O. Register enabled pull-up.
	KEY9	PCS1	AN	—	Touch key input
	SEG4	PCS1	—	AN	LCD segment output
PC5/KEY10/SEG5	PC5	PCPU PCS1	ST	CMOS	General purpose I/O. Register enabled pull-up.
	KEY10	PCS1	AN	—	Touch key input
	SEG5	PCS1	—	AN	LCD segment output
PC6/KEY11/SEG6	PC6	PCPU PCS1	ST	CMOS	General purpose I/O. Register enabled pull-up.
	KEY11	PCS1	AN	—	Touch key input
	SEG6	PCS1	—	AN	LCD segment output
PC7/KEY12/SEG7	PC7	PCPU PCS1	ST	CMOS	General purpose I/O. Register enabled pull-up.
	KEY12	PCS1	AN	—	Touch key input
	SEG7	PCS1	—	AN	LCD segment output
PD0/KEY13/SEG8	PD0	PDP PDS0	ST	CMOS	General purpose I/O. Register enabled pull-up.
	KEY13	PDS0	AN	—	Touch key input
	SEG8	PDS0	—	AN	LCD segment output
PD1/KEY14/SEG9	PD1	PDP PDS0	ST	CMOS	General purpose I/O. Register enabled pull-up.
	KEY14	PDS0	AN	—	Touch key input
	SEG9	PDS0	—	AN	LCD segment output
PD2/KEY15/SEG10	PD2	PDP PDS0	ST	CMOS	General purpose I/O. Register enabled pull-up.
	KEY15	PDS0	AN	—	Touch key input
	SEG10	PDS0	—	AN	LCD segment output
PD3/KEY16/SEG11	PD3	PDP PDS0	ST	CMOS	General purpose I/O. Register enabled pull-up.
	KEY16	PDS0	AN	—	Touch key input
	SEG11	PDS0	—	AN	LCD segment output
PD4/KEY17/SEG12	PD4	PDP PDS1	ST	CMOS	General purpose I/O. Register enabled pull-up.
	KEY17	PDS1	AN	—	Touch key input
	SEG12	PDS1	—	AN	LCD segment output

Pad Name	Function	OPT	I/T	O/T	Description
PD5/KEY18/SEG13	PD5	PDPUPDS1	ST	CMOS	General purpose I/O. Register enabled pull-up.
	KEY18	PDS1	AN	—	Touch key input
	SEG13	PDS1	—	AN	LCD segment output
PD6/KEY19/SEG14	PD6	PDPUPDS1	ST	CMOS	General purpose I/O. Register enabled pull-up.
	KEY19	PDS1	AN	—	Touch key input
	SEG14	PDS1	—	AN	LCD segment output
PE0/KEY21/SEG16	PE0	PEPUPES0	ST	CMOS	General purpose I/O. Register enabled pull-up.
	KEY21	PES0	AN	—	Touch key input
	SEG16	PES0	—	AN	LCD segment output
PE1/KEY22/SEG17	PE1	PEPUPES0	ST	CMOS	General purpose I/O. Register enabled pull-up.
	KEY22	PES0	AN	—	Touch key input
	SEG17	PES0	—	AN	LCD segment output
PE2/STPI/STP/KEY23/SEG18	PE2	PEPUPES0	ST	CMOS	General purpose I/O. Register enabled pull-up.
	STPI	PES0IFS	ST	—	STM capture input
	STP	PES0	—	CMOS	STM output
	KEY23	PES0	AN	—	Touch key input
	SEG18	PES0	—	AN	LCD segment output
PE3/STPI/STPB/KEY24/SEG19	PE3	PEPUPES0	ST	CMOS	General purpose I/O. Register enabled pull-up.
	STPI	PES0IFS	ST	—	STM capture input
	STPB	PES0	—	CMOS	STM inverted output
	KEY24	PES0	AN	—	Touch key input
	SEG19	PES0	—	AN	LCD segment output
PE4/KEY25/SEG20	PE4	PEPUPES1	ST	CMOS	General purpose I/O. Register enabled pull-up.
	KEY25	PES1	AN	—	Touch key input
	SEG20	PES1	—	AN	LCD segment output
PE5/CTCK1/KEY26/SEG21	PE5	PEPUPES1	ST	CMOS	General purpose I/O. Register enabled pull-up.
	CTCK1	PES1	ST	—	CTM1 clock input
	KEY26	PES1	AN	—	Touch key input
	SEG21	PES1	—	AN	LCD segment output
PE6/CTP1/KEY27/SEG22	PE6	PEPUPES1	ST	CMOS	General purpose I/O. Register enabled pull-up.
	CTP1	PES1	—	CMOS	CTM1 output
	KEY27	PES1	AN	—	Touch key input
	SEG22	PES1	—	AN	LCD segment output
PE7/CTP1B/KEY28/SEG23	PE7	PEPUPES1	ST	CMOS	General purpose I/O. Register enabled pull-up.
	CTP1B	PES1	—	CMOS	CTM1 inverted output
	KEY28	PES1	AN	—	Touch key input
	SEG23	PES1	—	AN	LCD segment output

Pad Name	Function	OPT	I/T	O/T	Description
PF0/OSC1/SEG28	PF0	PFP0 PFS0	ST	CMOS	General purpose I/O. Register enabled pull-up.
	OSC1	PFS0	HXT	—	HXT oscillator pin
	SEG28	PFS0	—	AN	LCD segment output
PF1/OSC2/SEG29	PF1	PFP0 PFS0	ST	CMOS	General purpose I/O. Register enabled pull-up.
	OSC2	PFS0	—	HXT	HXT oscillator pin
	SEG29	PFS0	—	AN	LCD segment output
PF2/SEG30	PF2	PFP0 PFS0	ST	CMOS	General purpose I/O. Register enabled pull-up.
	SEG30	PFS0	—	AN	LCD segment output
PF3/SEG31	PF3	PFP0 PFS0	ST	CMOS	General purpose I/O. Register enabled pull-up.
	SEG31	PFS0	—	AN	LCD segment output
PG0/SEG24/KEY29	PG0	PGP0 PGS0	ST	CMOS	General purpose I/O. Register enabled pull-up.
	SEG24	PGS0	—	AN	LCD segment output
	KEY29	PGS0	AN	—	Touch key input
PG1/SEG25/KEY30	PG1	PGP0 PGS0	ST	CMOS	General purpose I/O. Register enabled pull-up.
	SEG25	PGS0	—	AN	LCD segment output
	KEY30	PGS0	AN	—	Touch key input
PG2/SEG26/KEY31	PG2	PGP0 PGS0	ST	CMOS	General purpose I/O. Register enabled pull-up.
	SEG26	PGS0	—	AN	LCD segment output
	KEY31	PGS0	AN	—	Touch key input
PG3/SEG27/KEY32	PG3	PGP0 PGS0	ST	CMOS	General purpose I/O. Register enabled pull-up.
	SEG27	PGS0	—	AN	LCD segment output
	KEY32	PGS0	AN	—	Touch key input
PG4/KEY33	PG4	PGP0 PGS1	ST	CMOS	General purpose I/O. Register enabled pull-up.
	KEY33	PGS1	AN	—	Touch key input
PG5/KEY34	PG5	PGP0 PGS1	ST	CMOS	General purpose I/O. Register enabled pull-up.
	KEY34	PGS1	AN	—	Touch key input
PG6/KEY35	PG6	PGP0 PGS1	ST	CMOS	General purpose I/O. Register enabled pull-up.
	KEY35	PGS1	AN	—	Touch key input
PG7/KEY36	PG7	PGP0 PGS1	ST	CMOS	General purpose I/O. Register enabled pull-up.
	KEY36	PGS1	AN	—	Touch key input
PH0/SEG40	PH0	PHP0 PHS0	ST	CMOS	General purpose I/O. Register enabled pull-up.
	SEG40	PHS0	—	AN	LCD segment output
PH1/SEG41	PH1	PHP0 PHS0	ST	CMOS	General purpose I/O. Register enabled pull-up.
	SEG41	PHS0	—	AN	LCD segment output
PH2/SEG42	PH2	PHP0 PHS0	ST	CMOS	General purpose I/O. Register enabled pull-up.
	SEG42	PHS0	—	AN	LCD segment output

Pad Name	Function	OPT	I/T	O/T	Description
PH3/SEG43	PH3	PHPU PHS0	ST	CMOS	General purpose I/O. Register enabled pull-up.
	SEG43	PHS0	—	AN	LCD segment output
PH4/SEG44	PH4	PHPU PHS1	ST	CMOS	General purpose I/O. Register enabled pull-up.
	SEG44	PHS1	—	AN	LCD segment output
PH5/SEG45	PH5	PHPU PHS1	ST	CMOS	General purpose I/O. Register enabled pull-up.
	SEG45	PHS1	—	AN	LCD segment output
PH6/SEG46	PH6	PHPU PHS1	ST	CMOS	General purpose I/O. Register enabled pull-up.
	SEG46	PHS1	—	AN	LCD segment output
PH7/SEG47	PH7	PHPU PHS1	ST	CMOS	General purpose I/O. Register enabled pull-up.
	SEG47	PHS1	—	AN	LCD segment output
SEG32~SEG39	SEGN	—	—	AN	LCD segment output
COM0~COM3	COMn	LCDC0	—	AN	LCD common output
V1	V1	—	—	AO	LCD voltage pump
PLCD	PLCD	—	PWR	—	LCD power supply
VMAX	VMAX	—	PWR	—	IC maximum voltage, connected to VDD, PLCD or V1.
VDD, VDD1	VDD	—	PWR	—	Positive power supply
VSS, VSS1	VSS	—	PWR	—	Negative power supply, ground.
NC	—	—	—	—	No Connection

Legend: I/T: Input type

OPT: Optional by register option

ST: Schmitt Trigger input

CMOS: CMOS output

HXT: High frequency crystal oscillator

LXT: Low frequency crystal oscillator

O/T: Output type

PWR: Power

AN: Analog signal

NMOS: NMOS output

Absolute Maximum Ratings

Supply Voltage $V_{SS}-0.3V$ to $V_{SS}+6.0V$

Input Voltage $V_{SS}-0.3V$ to $V_{DD}+0.3V$

Storage Temperature..... $-60^{\circ}C$ to $150^{\circ}C$

Operating Temperature..... $-40^{\circ}C$ to $85^{\circ}C$

I_{OH} Total $-80mA$

I_{OL} Total $80mA$

Total Power Dissipation $500mW$

Note: These are stress ratings only. Stresses exceeding the range specified under “Absolute Maximum Ratings” may cause substantial damage to these devices. Functional operation of these devices at other conditions beyond those listed in the specification is not implied and prolonged exposure to extreme conditions may affect devices reliability.

D.C. Characteristics

Ta=25°C

Symbol	Parameter	Test Conditions		Min.		Max.	Unit
		V _{DD}	Conditions				
V _{DD}	Operating Voltage (HXT)	—	f _{sys} =8MHz	2.2	—	5.5	V
			f _{sys} =12MHz	2.7	—	5.5	V
			f _{sys} =16MHz	3.3	—	5.5	V
	Operating Voltage (HIRC)	—	f _{sys} =8MHz	2.2	—	5.5	V
			f _{sys} =12MHz	2.7	—	5.5	V
			f _{sys} =16MHz	3.3	—	5.5	V
I _{DD}	Operating Current (HXT)	3V	f _{sys} =f _H =4MHz	—	500	750	μA
		5V	No load, all peripherals off	—	1.0	1.5	mA
		3V	f _{sys} =f _H =8MHz	—	1.0	1.5	mA
		5V	No load, all peripherals off	—	2.0	3.0	mA
		3V	f _{sys} =f _H =12MHz	—	1.5	2.75	mA
		5V	No load, all peripherals off	—	3.0	4.5	mA
		5V	f _{sys} =f _H =16MHz no load, all peripherals off	—	3.6	5.4	mA
	Operating Current (HIRC)	3V	f _{sys} =f _H =8MHz	—	0.8	1.2	mA
		5V	No load, all peripherals off	—	1.6	2.4	mA
		3V	f _{sys} =f _H =12MHz	—	1.2	1.8	mA
		5V	No load, all peripherals off	—	2.4	3.6	mA
		5V	f _{sys} =f _H =16MHz no load, all peripherals off	—	3.2	4.8	mA
	Operating Current (LXT)	3V	f _{sys} =f _{SUB} =f _{LXT} =32.768kHz	—	10	20	μA
		5V	No load, all peripherals off	—	30	50	μA
	Operating Current (LIRC)	3V	f _{sys} =f _{SUB} =f _{LIRC} =32kHz	—	10	20	μA
		5V	No load, all peripherals off	—	30	50	μA
I _{STB}	Standby Current (IDLE0 Mode)	3V	f _{sys} off, f _{SUB} on, No load, all peripherals off, WDT enabled	—	1.3	3.0	μA
		5V		—	2.4	5.0	μA
	Standby Current (IDLE1 Mode)	3V	f _{sys} =12MHz on, f _{SUB} on, No load, all peripherals off, WDT enabled	—	0.9	1.4	mA
		5V		—	1.4	2.1	mA
	Standby Current (SLEEP Mode)	3V	f _{sys} off, f _{SUB} off, No load, all peripherals off, WDT enabled	—	1.2	1.8	μA
		5V		—	1.8	2.7	μA
V _{IL}	Input Low Voltage for I/O Ports or Input Pins	5V	—	0	—	1.5	V
		—	—	0	—	0.2V _{DD}	V
V _{IH}	Input High Voltage for I/O Ports or Input Pins	5V	—	3.5	—	5.0	V
		—	—	0.8V _{DD}	—	V _{DD}	V
I _{OL}	Sink Current for I/O Port	3V	V _{OL} =0.1V _{DD}	17	34	—	mA
		5V		34	68	—	mA
I _{OH}	Source Current for I/O Port	3V	V _{OH} =0.9V _{DD}	-5.5	-11.0	—	mA
		5V		-11.0	-22.0	—	mA
R _{PH}	Pull-high Resistance for I/O Ports	3V	—	20	60	100	kΩ
		5V	—	10	30	50	kΩ

A.C. Characteristics

Ta=25°C

Symbol	Parameter	Test Condition		Min.		Max.	Unit
		V _{DD}	Condition				
f _{SYS}	System Clock (HXT)	2.2V~5.5V	f _{SYS} =f _{HXT} =8MHz	—	8	—	MHz
		2.7V~5.5V	f _{SYS} =f _{HXT} =12MHz	—	12	—	MHz
		3.3V~5.5V	f _{SYS} =f _{HXT} =16MHz	—	16	—	MHz
	System Clock (HIRC)	2.2V~5.5V	f _{SYS} =f _{HIRC} =8MHz	—	8	—	MHz
		2.7V~5.5V	f _{SYS} =f _{HIRC} =12MHz	—	12	—	MHz
		3.3V~5.5V	f _{SYS} =f _{HIRC} =16MHz	—	16	—	MHz
	System Clock (LXT)	2.2V~5.5V	f _{SYS} =f _{LXT} =32.768kHz	—	32.768	—	kHz
	System Clock (LIRC)	2.2V~5.5V	f _{SYS} =f _{LIRC} =32kHz	—	32	—	kHz
f _{HIRC}	High Speed Internal RC oscillator (HIRC) (12MHz trim at VDD=3V)	3V	Ta=25°C	-2%	12	+2%	MHz
		3V±0.1V	Ta=0°C to 70°C	-5%	12	+5%	MHz
		2.7V~5.5V	Ta=0°C to 70°C	-7%	12	+7%	MHz
		2.7V~5.5V	Ta=-40°C to 85°C	-10%	12	+10%	MHz
		3V	Ta=25°C	-20%	8	+20%	MHz
		3V	Ta=25°C	-20%	16	+20%	MHz
	High Speed Internal RC oscillator (HIRC) (12MHz trim at VDD=5V)	5V	Ta=25°C	-2%	12	+2%	MHz
		5V±0.1V	Ta=0°C to 70°C	-5%	12	+5%	MHz
		2.7V~5.5V	Ta=0°C to 70°C	-7%	12	+7%	MHz
		2.7V~5.5V	Ta=-40°C to 85°C	-10%	12	+10%	MHz
		5V	Ta=25°C	-20%	8	+20%	MHz
		5V	Ta=25°C	-20%	16	+20%	MHz
f _{LIRC}	Low Speed Internal RC Oscillator (LIRC)	5V	Ta=25°C	-10%	32	+10%	kHz
		2.2V~5.5V	Ta= -40°C to 85°C	-40%	32	+40%	kHz
t _{TPI}	CTPnI, STPI, PTPI Pin Minimum Input Pulse Width	—	—	0.3	—	—	μs
t _{TCK}	CTCKn, STCK, PTCK Pin Minimum Input Pulse Width	—	—	0.3	—	—	μs
t _{INT}	Interrupt Pin Minimum Input Pulse Width	—	—	10	—	—	μs
t _{SST}	System Start-up Timer Period (Wake-up from power down mode and f _{SYS} off)	—	f _{SYS} =f _H =f _{HXT} ~ f _{HXT} /64	128	—	—	t _{HXT}
		—	f _{SYS} =f _H =f _{HIRC} ~ f _{HIRC} /64	16	—	—	t _{HIRC}
		—	f _{SYS} =f _{SUB} =f _{LXT}	1024	—	—	t _{LXT}
		—	f _{SYS} =f _{SUB} =f _{LIRC}	2	—	—	t _{LIRC}
	System Start-up Timer Period (Wake-up from power down mode and f _{SYS} on)	—	f _{SYS} =f _H ~ f _H /64, f _H =f _{HXT} or f _{HIRC}	2	—	—	t _H
		—	f _{SYS} =f _{SUB} =f _{LXT} or f _{LIRC}	2	—	—	t _{SUB}
	System Start-up Timer period (SLOW mode → NORMAL mode) (NORMAL mode → SLOW mode)	—	f _{HXT} off → on (HXTF=1)	1024	—	—	t _{HXT}
		—	f _{HIRC} off → on (HIRCF=1)	16	—	—	t _{HIRC}
		—	f _{LXT} off → on (LXTF=1)	1024	—	—	t _{LXT}
	System Start-up Timer Period (WDT hardware reset)	—	—	0	—	—	t _{SYS}
t _{RSTD}	System Reset Delay Time (Power-on reset, LVR hardware reset, LVRC/WDTC/RSTC software reset)	—	—	25	50	100	ms
	System Reset Delay Time (WDT Hardware Reset)	—	—	8.3	16.7	33.3	ms
t _{EERD}	EEPROM Read Time	—	—	—	—	4	t _{SYS}
t _{EEWR}	EEPROM Write Time	—	—	—	4	6	ms

Note: t_{SYS}= 1/f_{SYS}

A/D Converter Characteristics

Operating Temperature: -40°C~85°C, unless otherwise specified.

Symbol	Parameter	Test Conditions		Min.		Max.	Unit
		V _{DD}	Conditions				
V _{DD}	Operating Voltage	—	—	2.7	—	5.5	V
V _{ADI}	Input Voltage	—	—	0	—	V _{REF}	V
V _{REF}	Reference Voltage	—	—	2	—	V _{DD}	V
DNL	Differential Non-linearity	3V	V _{REF} =V _{DD} , t _{ADCK} =0.5μs or 10μs	—	—	±3	LSB
		5V					
INL	Integral Non-linearity	3V	V _{REF} =V _{DD} , t _{ADCK} =0.5μs or 10μs	—	—	±4	LSB
		5V					
I _{ADC}	Additional Current Consumption for A/D Converter Enable	3V	No load, t _{ADCK} =0.5μs	—	1.0	2.0	mA
		5V		—	1.5	3.0	mA
t _{ADCK}	Clock Period	—	AN≠Temperature sensor output	0.5	—	10	μs
		—	AN≠Temperature sensor output	1	—	2	μs
t _{ADC}	Conversion Time (Including A/D Sample and Hold Time)	—	AN≠Temperature sensor output	—	16	—	t _{ADCK}
		—	AN≠Temperature sensor output	—	56	—	t _{ADCK}
t _{ON2ST}	A/D Converter On-to-Start Time	—	—	4	—	—	μs

Temperature Sensor Electrical Characteristics

T_a=25°C, Operating Temperature: -40°C~85°C, unless otherwise specified.

Symbol	Parameter	Test Conditions		Min.		Max.	Unit
		V _{DD}	Conditions				
V _{DD}	Operating Voltage	—	—	2.7	—	5.5	V
V _{TSVREF}	Temperature Sensor Reference Voltage	3V	T _a =25°C, Trim @ V _{DD} =3V K_VPTAT=0, K_REFO=0	-5%	2.01	+5%	V
		5V					
Code _{TS}	A/D Conversion Code Range	3V	T _a =25°C, V _{REF} =V _{TSVREF} , G5XEN=1, AN = Temperature sensor output	1990	2250	2600	LSB
		5V					
		3V	T _a =90°C, V _{REF} =V _{TSVREF} , G5XEN=1, AN = Temperature sensor output	3400	3850	4250	LSB
		5V					
t _{TSS}	Temperature Sensor Turn on Stable Time	3V	T _a =-40°C, V _{REF} =V _{TSVREF} , G5XEN=1, AN = Temperature sensor output	550	720	995	LSB
		5V					

LVD/LVR Electrical Characteristics

T_a=25°C

Symbol	Parameter	Test Conditions		Min.		Max.	Unit
		V _{DD}	Conditions				
V _{LVR}	Low Voltage Reset Voltage	—	LVR Enable, voltage select 2.1V	- 5%	2.1	+ 5%	V
			LVR Enable, voltage select 2.55V		2.55		
			LVR Enable, voltage select 3.15V		3.15		
			LVR Enable, voltage select 3.8V		3.8		

Symbol	Parameter	Test Conditions		Min.		Max.	Unit
		V _{DD}	Conditions				
V _{LVD}	Low Voltage Detector Voltage	—	LVD Enable, voltage select 2.0V	- 5%	2.0	+ 5%	V
			LVD Enable, voltage select 2.2V				
			LVD Enable, voltage select 2.4V				
			LVD Enable, voltage select 2.7V				
			LVD Enable, voltage select 3.0V				
			LVD Enable, voltage select 3.3V				
			LVD Enable, voltage select 3.6V				
			LVD Enable, voltage select 4.0V				
V _{BG}	Bandgap Reference Voltage	—	—	- 5%	1.04	+ 5%	V
I _{OP}	LVD/LVR Operating Current	5V	LVD/LVR Enable, VBGEN=0	—	20	25	μA
		5V	LVD/LVR Enable, VBGEN=1	—	25	30	μA
t _{BGS}	V _{BG} Turn on Stable Time	—	No load	—	—	150	μs
t _{LVDS}	LVDO Stable Time	—	For LVR enable, VBGEN=0, LVD off→on	—	—	15	μs
		—	For LVR disable, VBGEN=0, LVD off→on	—	—	150	μs
t _{LVR}	Minimum Low Voltage Width to Reset	—	—	120	240	480	μs
t _{LVD}	Minimum Low Voltage Width to Interrupt	—	—	60	120	240	μs

LCD Driver Electrical Characteristics

Ta=25°C

Symbol	Parameter	Test Conditions		Min.		Max.	Unit
		V _{DD}	Conditions				
V _{IN}	LCD Operating Voltage	—	R type, power supply from PLCD pin, PLCD[3:0]=1xxxB	3.0	—	5.5	V
		—	C type, power supply from PLCD pin	2.0	—	3.7	V
		—	C type, power supply from V1 pin	3.0	—	5.5	V
		—	C type, power supply from V2 pin	1.0	—	1.8	V
		—	C type, power supply from VA	3.0	—	5.5	V
		—	C type, power supply from VB	2.0	—	3.7	V
		—	C type, power supply from VC	2.2	—	5.5	V
I _{LCD}	Additional Current Consumption for LCD Driver enable (R type)	3V	R _T =1170kΩ, V _A =PLCD=V _{DD} ,	—	—	12.5	μA
		5V	1/3 bias, no load	—	—	25	μA
		3V	R _T =225kΩ, V _A =PLCD=V _{DD} ,	—	—	25	μA
		5V	1/3 bias, no load	—	—	50	μA
		3V	R _T =60kΩ, V _A =PLCD=V _{DD} ,	—	—	100	μA
		5V	1/3 bias, no load	—	—	160	μA
	Additional Current Consumption for LCD Driver Enable (C type)	3V	No load, C type	—	—	2	μA
		5V		—	—	2.6	μA
I _{LCDOL}	LCD Common and Segment Sink Current	3V	V _{OL} =0.1V _{DD}	210	420	—	μA
		5V		350	700	—	μA
I _{LCDOH}	LCD Common and Segment Source Current	3V	V _{OL} =0.9V _{DD}	-80	-160	—	μA
		5V		-180	-360	—	μA

Touch Key Electrical Characteristics

Ta=25°C

Touch Key RC Oscillator 500kHz Mode Selected

Symbol	Parameter	Test Conditions		Min.		Max.	Unit
		V _{DD}	Conditions				
I _{KEYOSC}	Only Sensor (KEY) Oscillator Operating Current	3V	*f _{SENO} SC=500kHz	—	30	60	μA
		5V		—	60	120	
I _{REFOSC}	Only Reference Oscillator Operating Current	3V	*f _{REFOSC} =500kHz, MnTSS=0	—	30	60	μA
		5V		—	60	120	
		3V	*f _{REFOSC} =500kHz, MnTSS=1	—	30	60	μA
		5V		—	60	120	
C _{KEYOSC}	Sensor (KEY) Oscillator External Capacitor	3V	*f _{SENO} SC=500kHz	3	10	30	pF
		5V		5	10	20	pF
C _{REFOSC}	Reference Oscillator Internal Capacitor	3V	*f _{SENO} SC=500kHz	3	10	30	pF
		5V		5	10	20	pF
f _{KEYOSC}	Sensor (KEY) Oscillator Operating Frequency	3V	* C _{EXT} =7, 8, 9, 10, 11, 12, 13, 14, 15, ... 50pF	100	500	1000	kHz
		5V		100	500	1000	kHz
f _{REFOSC}	Reference Oscillator Operating Frequency	3V	* C _{INT} =7, 8, 9, 10, 11, 12, 13, 14, 15, ... 50pF	100	500	1000	kHz
		5V		100	500	1000	kHz

Note: 1. f_{SENO}SC=500kHz: Adjust KEYn external capacitor to make sure that the Sensor oscillator frequency is equal to 500kHz.

2. f_{REFOSC}=500kHz: Adjust Reference oscillator internal capacitor to make sure that the reference oscillator frequency is equal to 500kHz.

Touch Key RC Oscillator 1000kHz Mode Selected

Symbol	Parameter	Test Conditions		Min.		Max.	Unit
		V _{DD}	Conditions				
I _{KEYOSC}	Only Sensor (KEY) Oscillator Operating Current	3V	*f _{SENO} SC=1000kHz	—	40	80	μA
		5V		—	80	160	
I _{REFOSC}	Only Reference Oscillator Operating Current	3V	*f _{REFOSC} =1000kHz, MnTSS=0	—	40	80	μA
		5V		—	80	160	
		3V	*f _{REFOSC} =1000kHz, MnTSS=1	—	40	80	μA
		5V		—	80	160	
C _{KEYOSC}	Sensor (KEY) Oscillator External Capacitor	3V	*f _{SENO} SC=1000kHz	3	10	25	pF
		5V		5	10	20	pF
C _{REFOSC}	Reference Oscillator Internal Capacitor	3V	*f _{SENO} SC=1000kHz	3	10	25	pF
		5V		5	10	20	pF
f _{KEYOSC}	Sensor (KEY) Oscillator Operating Frequency	3V	* C _{EXT} =3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, ... 50pF	150	1000	2000	kHz
		5V		150	1000	2000	kHz
f _{REFOSC}	Reference Oscillator Operating Frequency	3V	* C _{INT} =3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, ... 50pF	150	1000	2000	kHz
		5V		150	1000	2000	kHz

Note: 1. f_{SENO}SC=1000kHz: Adjust KEYn external capacitor to make sure that the Sensor oscillator frequency is equal to 1000kHz.

2. f_{REFOSC}=1000kHz: Adjust Reference oscillator internal capacitor to make sure that the reference oscillator frequency is equal to 1000kHz.

Touch Key RC Oscillator 1500kHz Mode Selected

Symbol	Parameter	Test Conditions		Min.		Max.	Unit
		V _{DD}	Conditions				
I _{KEYOSC}	Only Sensor (KEY) Oscillator Operating Current	3V	*f _{SENOsc} =1500kHz	—	60	120	μA
		5V		—	120	240	
I _{REFOSC}	Only Reference Oscillator Operating Current	3V	*f _{REFOSC} =1500kHz, MnTSS=0	—	60	120	μA
		5V		—	120	240	
		3V	*f _{REFOSC} =1500kHz, MnTSS=1	—	60	120	μA
		5V		—	120	240	
C _{KEYOSC}	Sensor (KEY) Oscillator External Capacitor	3V	*f _{SENOsc} =1500kHz	4	8	20	pF
		5V		5	10	20	pF
C _{REFOSC}	Reference Oscillator Internal Capacitor	3V	*f _{SENOsc} =1500kHz	4	8	20	pF
		5V		5	10	20	pF
f _{KEYOSC}	Sensor (KEY) Oscillator Operating Frequency	3V	* C _{EXT} =3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, ...	150	1500	3000	kHz
		5V	50pF	150	1500	3000	kHz
f _{REFOSC}	Reference Oscillator Operating Frequency	3V	* C _{EXT} =3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, ...	150	1500	3000	kHz
		5V	50pF	150	1500	3000	kHz

Note: 1. f_{SENOsc}=1500kHz: Adjust KEYn external capacitor to make sure that the Sensor oscillator frequency is equal to 1500kHz.
2. f_{REFOSC}=1500kHz: Adjust Reference oscillator internal capacitor to make sure that the reference oscillator frequency is equal to 1500kHz.

Touch Key RC Oscillator 2000kHz Mode Selected

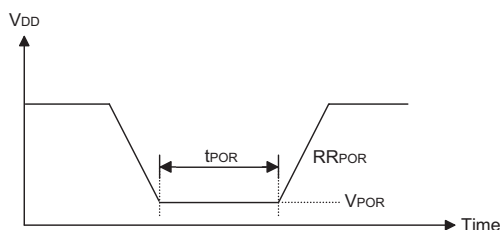
Symbol	Parameter	Test Conditions		Min.		Max.	Unit
		V _{DD}	Conditions				
I _{KEYOSC}	Only Sensor (KEY) Oscillator Operating Current	3V	*f _{SENOsc} =2000kHz	—	80	160	μA
		5V		—	160	320	
I _{REFOSC}	Only Reference Oscillator Operating Current	3V	*f _{REFOSC} =2000kHz, MnTSS=0	—	80	160	μA
		5V		—	160	320	
		3V	*f _{REFOSC} =2000kHz, MnTSS=1	—	80	160	μA
		5V		—	160	320	
C _{KEYOSC}	Sensor (KEY) Oscillator External Capacitor	3V	*f _{SENOsc} =2000kHz	4	8	20	pF
		5V		5	10	20	pF
C _{REFOSC}	Reference Oscillator Internal Capacitor	3V	*f _{SENOsc} =2000kHz	4	8	20	pF
		5V		5	10	20	pF
f _{KEYOSC}	Sensor (KEY) Oscillator Operating Frequency	3V	* C _{EXT} =3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, ...	150	2000	4000	kHz
		5V	50pF	150	2000	4000	kHz
f _{REFOSC}	Reference Oscillator Operating Frequency	3V	* C _{EXT} =3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, ...	150	2000	4000	kHz
		5V	50pF	150	2000	4000	kHz

Note: 1. f_{SENOsc}=2000kHz: Adjust KEYn external capacitor to make sure that the Sensor oscillator frequency is equal to 2000kHz.
2. f_{REFOSC}=2000kHz: Adjust Reference oscillator internal capacitor to make sure that the reference oscillator frequency is equal to 2000kHz.

Power-on Reset Characteristics

Ta=25°C

Symbol	Parameter	Test Conditions		Min.		Max.	Unit
		V _{DD}	Conditions				
V _{POR}	V _{DD} Start Voltage to Ensure Power-on Reset	—	—	—	—	100	mV
RR _{POR}	V _{DD} Rising Rate to Ensure Power-on Reset	—	—	0.035	—	—	V/ms
t _{POR}	Minimum Time for V _{DD} Stays at V _{POR} to Ensure Power-on Reset	—	—	1	—	—	ms



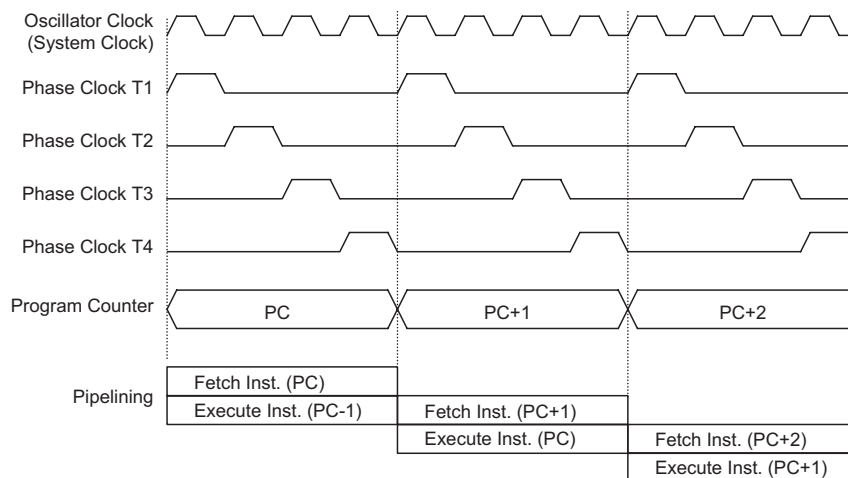
System Architecture

A key factor in the high-performance features of the Holtek range of microcontrollers is attributed to their internal system architecture. The range of devices take advantage of the usual features found within RISC microcontrollers providing increased speed of operation and enhanced performance. The pipelining scheme is implemented in such a way that instruction fetching and instruction execution are overlapped, hence instructions are effectively executed in one or two cycles for most of the standard or extended instructions respectively, with the exception of branch or call instructions which need one more cycle. An 8-bit wide ALU is used in practically all instruction set operations, which carries out arithmetic operations, logic operations, rotation, increment, decrement, branch decisions, etc. The internal data path is simplified by moving data through the Accumulator and the ALU. Certain internal registers are implemented in the Data Memory and can be directly or indirectly addressed. The simple addressing methods of these registers along with additional architectural features ensure that a minimum of external components is required to provide a functional I/O and A/D control system with maximum reliability and flexibility. This makes these devices suitable for low-cost, high-volume production for controller applications.

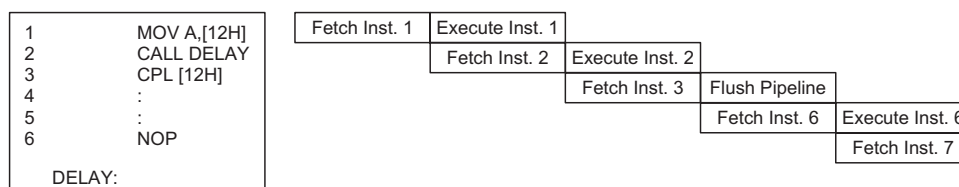
Clocking and Pipelining

The main system clock, derived from either a HXT, LXT, HIRC or LIRC oscillator is subdivided into four internally generated non-overlapping clocks, T1~T4. The Program Counter is incremented at the beginning of the T1 clock during which time a new instruction is fetched. The remaining T2~T4 clocks carry out the decoding and execution functions. In this way, one T1~T4 clock cycle forms one instruction cycle. Although the fetching and execution of instructions takes place in consecutive instruction cycles, the pipelining structure of the microcontroller ensures that instructions are effectively executed in one instruction cycle. The exception to this are instructions where the contents of the Program Counter are changed, such as subroutine calls or jumps, in which case the instruction will take one more instruction cycle to execute.

For instructions involving branches, such as jump or call instructions, two machine cycles are required to complete instruction execution. An extra cycle is required as the program takes one cycle to first obtain the actual jump or call address and then another cycle to actually execute the branch. The requirement for this extra cycle should be taken into account by programmers in timing sensitive applications.



System Clocking and Pipelining



Instruction Fetching

Program Counter

During program execution, the Program Counter is used to keep track of the address of the next instruction to be executed. It is automatically incremented by one each time an instruction is executed except for instructions, such as “JMP” or “CALL” that demand a jump to a non-consecutive Program Memory address. For the device whose memory capacity is greater than 8K words the Program Memory address may be located in a certain program memory bank which is selected by the program memory bank pointer bit(s), PBP0 or PBP1~PBP0, depending on the selected device. Only the lower 8 bits, known as the Program Counter Low Register, are directly addressable by the application program.

When executing instructions requiring jumps to non-consecutive addresses such as a jump instruction, a subroutine call, interrupt or reset, etc., the microcontroller manages program control by loading the required address into the Program Counter. For conditional skip instructions, once the condition has been met, the next instruction, which has already been fetched during the present instruction execution, is discarded and a dummy cycle takes its place while the correct instruction is obtained.

Device	Program Counter	
	High Byte	Low Byte (PCL)
BS67F340	PC11~PC8	PC7~PC0
BS67F350	PC12~PC8	PC7~PC0
BS67F360	PBP0, PC12~PC8	PC7~PC0
BS67F370	PBP1~PBP0, PC12~PC8	PC7~PC0

Program Counter

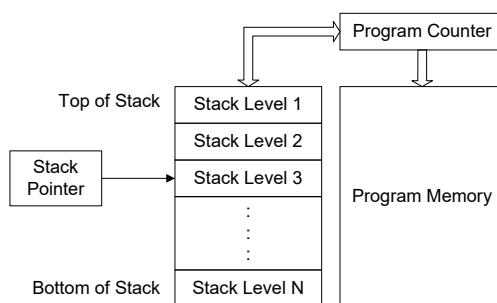
The lower byte of the Program Counter, known as the Program Counter Low register or PCL, is available for program control and is a readable and writeable register. By transferring data directly into this register, a short program jump can be executed directly; however, as only this low byte is available for manipulation, the jumps are limited to the present page of memory that is 256 locations. When such program jumps are executed it should also be noted that a dummy cycle will be inserted. Manipulating the PCL register may cause program branching, so an extra cycle is needed to pre-fetch.

Stack

This is a special part of the memory which is used to save the contents of the Program Counter only. The stack has multiple levels and is neither part of the data nor part of the program space, and is neither readable nor writeable. The activated level is indexed by the Stack Pointer, and is neither readable nor writeable. At a subroutine call or interrupt acknowledge signal, the contents of the Program Counter are pushed onto the stack. At the end of a subroutine or an interrupt routine, signaled by a return instruction, RET or RETI, the Program Counter is restored to its previous value from the stack. After a device reset, the Stack Pointer will point to the top of the stack.

If the stack is full and an enabled interrupt takes place, the interrupt request flag will be recorded but the acknowledge signal will be inhibited. When the Stack Pointer is decremented, by RET or RETI, the interrupt will be serviced. This feature prevents stack overflow allowing the programmer to use the structure more easily. However, when the stack is full, a CALL subroutine instruction can still be executed which will result in a stack overflow. Precautions should be taken to avoid such cases which might cause unpredictable program branching.

If the stack is overflow, the first Program Counter save in the stack will be lost.



Note: N=8 for BS67F340/BS67F350, N=12 for BS67F360, N=16 for BS67F370

Arithmetic and Logic Unit – ALU

The arithmetic-logic unit or ALU is a critical area of the microcontroller that carries out arithmetic and logic operations of the instruction set. Connected to the main microcontroller data bus, the ALU receives related instruction codes and performs the required arithmetic or logical operations after which the result will be placed in the specified register. As these ALU calculation or operations may result in carry, borrow or other status changes, the status register will be correspondingly updated to reflect these changes. The ALU supports the following functions:

- Arithmetic operations
 ADD, ADDM, ADC, ADCM, SUB, SUBM, SBC, SBCM, DAA
 LADD, LADDM, LADC, LADCM, LSUB, LSUBM, LSBC, LSBCM, LDAA
- Logic operations
 AND, OR, XOR, ANDM, ORM, XORM, CPL, CPLA
 LAND, LOR, LXOR, LANDM, LORM, LXORM, LCPL, LCPLA
- Rotation
 RRA, RR, RRCA, RRC, RLA, RL, RLCA, RLC
 LRR, LRR, LRRCA, LRR, LRLA, LRL, LRLCA, LRLC

- Increment and Decrement
INCA, INC, DECA, DEC
LINCA, LINC, LDECA, LDEC
- Branch decision
JMP, SZ, SZA, SNZ, SIZ, SDZ, SIZA, SDZA, CALL, RET, RETI
LSZ, LSZA, LSNZ, LSIZ, LSDZ, LSIZA, LSDZA

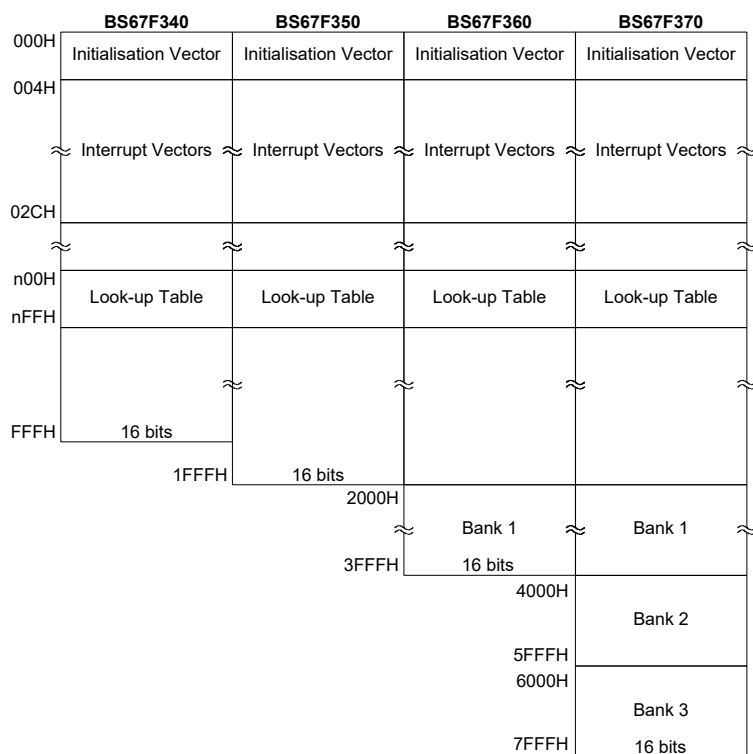
Flash Program Memory

The Program Memory is the location where the user code or program is stored. For these devices series the Program Memory are Flash type, which means it can be programmed and re-programmed a large number of times, allowing the user the convenience of code modification on the same device. By using the appropriate programming tools, these Flash devices offer users the flexibility to conveniently debug and develop their applications while also offering a means of field programming and updating.

Device	Capacity	Banks
BS67F340	4K × 16	—
BS67F350	8K × 16	—
BS67F360	16K × 16	0~1
BS67F370	32K × 16	0~3

Structure

The Program Memory has a capacity of 4K×16 to 16K×16 bits. The Program Memory is addressed by the Program Counter and also contains data, table information and interrupt entries. Table data, which can be setup in any location within the Program Memory, is addressed by a separate table pointer registers.



Program Memory Structure

Special Vectors

Within the Program Memory, certain locations are reserved for the reset and interrupts. The location 000H is reserved for use by these devices reset for program initialisation. After a device reset is initiated, the program will jump to this location and begin execution.

Look-up Table

Any location within the Program Memory can be defined as a look-up table where programmers can store fixed data. To use the look-up table, the table pointer must first be setup by placing the address of the look up data to be retrieved in the table pointer register, TBLP and TBHP. These registers define the total address of the look-up table.

After setting up the table pointer, the table data can be retrieved from the Program Memory using the “TABRD [m]” or “TABRDL [m]” instructions respectively when the memory [m] is located in sector 0. If the memory [m] is located in other sectors except sector 0, the data can be retrieved from the program memory using the corresponding extended table read instruction such as “LTABRD [m]” or “LTABRDL [m]” respectively. When the instruction is executed, the lower order table byte from the Program Memory will be transferred to the user defined Data Memory register [m] as specified in the instruction. The higher order table data byte from the Program Memory will be transferred to the TBLH special register. Any unused bits in this transferred higher order byte will be read as “0”.

The accompanying diagram illustrates the addressing data flow of the look-up table.

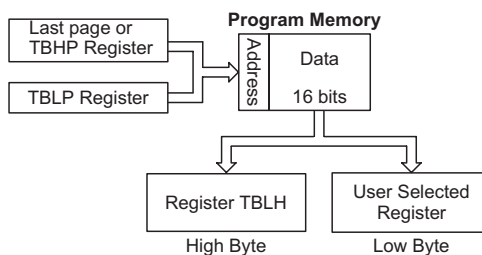


Table Program Example

The accompanying example shows how the table pointer and table data is defined and retrieved from the device. This example uses raw table data located in the last page which is stored there using the ORG statement. The value at this ORG statement is “0F00H” which refers to the start address of the last page within the 4K Program Memory of the BS67F340. The table pointer low byte register is setup here to have an initial value of “06H”. This will ensure that the first data read from the data table will be at the Program Memory address “0F06H” or 6 locations after the start of the last page. Note that the value for the table pointer is referenced to the first address of the present page pointed by the TBHP register if the “TABRD [m]” instruction is being used. The high byte of the table data which in this case is equal to zero will be transferred to the TBLH register automatically when the “TABRD [m]” instruction is executed.

Because the TBLH register is a read/write register and can be restored, care should be taken to ensure its protection if both the main routine and Interrupt Service Routine use table read instructions. If using the table read instructions, the Interrupt Service Routines may change the value of the TBLH and subsequently cause errors if used again by the main routine. As a rule it is recommended that simultaneous use of the table read instructions should be avoided. However, in situations where simultaneous use cannot be avoided, the interrupts should be disabled prior to the execution of any main routine table-read instructions. Note that all table related instructions require two instruction cycles to complete their operation.

Table Read Program Example

```

tempreg1 db ?      ; temporary register #1
tempreg2 db ?      ; temporary register #2
:
mov  a,06h          ; initialise low table pointer - note that this address is referenced
mov  tblp,a          ; to the last page or the page that tbhp pointed
mov  a,0fh           ; initialise high table pointer
mov  tbhp,a
:
tabrd  tempreg1      ; transfers value in table referenced by table pointer, data at program
                    ; memory address "0F06H" transferred to tempreg1 and TBLH
dec  tblp            ; reduce value of table pointer by one
tabrd  tempreg2      ; transfers value in table referenced by table pointer data, at program
                    ; memory address "0F05H" transferred to tempreg2 and TBLH, in this
                    ; example the data "1AH" is transferred to tempreg1 and data "0FH" to
                    ; register tempreg2
:
org  0F00h           ; sets initial address of program memory
dc    00Ah, 00Bh, 00Ch, 00Dh, 00Eh, 00Fh, 01Ah, 01Bh
:

```

In Circuit Programming – ICP

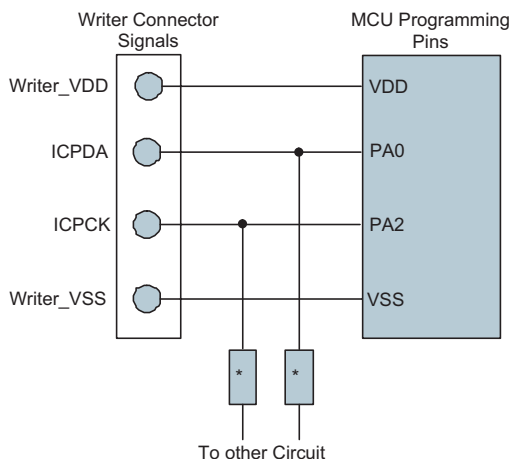
The provision of Flash type Program Memory provides the user with a means of convenient and easy upgrades and modifications to their programs on the same device.

As an additional convenience, Holtek has provided a means of programming the microcontroller in-circuit using a 4-pin interface. This provides manufacturers with the possibility of manufacturing their circuit boards complete with a programmed or un-programmed microcontroller, and then programming or upgrading the program at a later stage. This enables product manufacturers to easily keep their manufactured products supplied with the latest program releases without removal and re-insertion of the device.

Holtek Writer Pins	MCU Programming Pins	Pin Description
ICPDA	PA0	Programming Serial Data/Address
ICPCK	PA2	Programming Clock
VDD	VDD	Power Supply
VSS	VSS	Ground

The Program Memory and EEPROM data memory can be programmed serially in-circuit using this 4-wire interface. Data is downloaded and uploaded serially on a single pin with an additional line for the clock. Two additional lines are required for the power supply. The technical details regarding the in-circuit programming of the device are beyond the scope of this document and will be supplied in supplementary literature.

During the programming process, the user must take care of the ICPDA and ICPCK pins for data and clock programming purposes to ensure that no other outputs are connected to these two pins.



Note: * may be resistor or capacitor. The resistance of * must be greater than 1kΩ or the capacitance of * must be less than 1nF.

On-Chip Debug Support – OCDS

There is an EV chip named BS67V3x0 which is used to emulate the real MCU device named BS67F3x0. The EV chip device also provides the “On-Chip Debug” function to debug the real MCU device during development process. The EV chip and real MCU devices, BS67V3x0 and BS67F3x0, are almost functional compatible except the “On-Chip Debug” function. Users can use the EV chip device to emulate the real MCU device behaviors by connecting the OCSDSA and OCDSCK pins to the Holtek HT-IDE development tools. The OCSDSA pin is the OCDS Data/Address input/output pin while the OCDSCK pin is the OCDS clock input pin. When users use the EV chip device for debugging, the corresponding pin functions shared with the OCSDSA and OCDSCK pins in the real MCU device will have no effect in the EV chip. However, the two OCDS pins which are pin-shared with the ICP programming pins are still used as the Flash Memory programming pins for ICP. For more detailed OCDS information, refer to the corresponding document named “Holtek e-Link for 8-bit MCU OCDS User’s Guide”.

Holtek e-Link Pins	EV Chip OCDS Pins	Pin Description
OCSDSA	OCSDSA	On-Chip Debug Support Data/Address input/output
OCDSCK	OCDSCK	On-Chip Debug Support Clock input
VDD	VDD	Power Supply
VSS	VSS	Ground

In Application Programming – IAP

These devices offer IAP function to update data or application program to flash ROM. Users can define any ROM location for IAP, but there are some features which user must notice in using IAP function. Note that the BS67F340 device supports the “Block Erase” function instead of the “Page Erase” function.

BS67F340 Configurations		BS67F350 Configurations		BS67F360/370 Configurations	
Erase Block	256 words/block	Erase Page	32 words/page	Erase Page	64 words/page
Writing Word	4 words / time	Writing Word	32 words/time	Writing Word	64 words/time
Reading Word	1 word / time	Reading Word	1 word / time	Reading Word	1 word / time

In Application Programming Control Registers

The Address register, FARL and FARH, the Data registers, FD0L/FD0H, FD1L/FD1H, FD2L/FD2H and FD3L/FD3H, and the Control registers, FC0, FC1 and FC2, are the corresponding Flash access

registers located in Data Memory sector 0 for IAP. If using the indirect addressing method to access the FC0, FC1 and FC2 registers, all read and write operations to the registers must be performed using the Indirect Addressing Register, IAR1 or IAR2, and the Memory Pointer pair, MP1L/MP1H or MP2L/MP2H. Because the FC0, FC1 and FC2 control registers are located at the address of 50H~52H in Data Memory sector 0, the desired value ranged from 50H to 52H must first be written into the MP1L or MP2L Memory Pointer low byte and the value “00H” must also be written into the MP1H or MP2H Memory Pointer high byte.

Register Name	Bit							
	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
FC0	CFWEN	FMOD2	FMOD1	FMOD0	FWPEN	FWT	FRDEN	FRD
FC1	D7	D6	D5	D4	D3	D2	D1	D0
FC2 (BS67F350/360/370)	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	CLWB
FARL	A7	A6	A5	A4	A3	A2	A1	A0
FARH (BS67F340)	—	—	—	—	A11	A10	A9	A8
FARH (BS67F350)	—	—	—	A12	A11	A10	A9	A8
FARH (BS67F360)	—	—	A13	A12	A11	A10	A9	A8
FARH (BS67F370)	—	A14	A13	A12	A11	A10	A9	A8
FD0L	D7	D6	D5	D4	D3	D2	D1	D0
FD0H	D15	D14	D13	D12	D11	D10	D9	D8
FD1L	D7	D6	D5	D4	D3	D2	D1	D0
FD1H	D15	D14	D13	D12	D11	D10	D9	D8
FD2L	D7	D6	D5	D4	D3	D2	D1	D0
FD2H	D15	D14	D13	D12	D11	D10	D9	D8
FD3L	D7	D6	D5	D4	D3	D2	D1	D0
FD3H	D15	D14	D13	D12	D11	D10	D9	D8

IAP Registers List

• **FC0 Register**

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Name	CFWEN	FMOD2	FMOD1	FMOD0	FWPEN	FWT	FRDEN	FRD
R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W
POR	0	1	1	1	0	0	0	0

Bit 7

CFWEN: Flash Memory Write enable control

0: Flash memory write function is disabled

1: Flash memory write function has been successfully enabled

When this bit is cleared to 0 by application program, the Flash memory write function is disabled. Note that writing a “1” into this bit results in no action. This bit is used to indicate that the Flash memory write function status. When this bit is set to 1 by hardware, it means that the Flash memory write function is enabled successfully. Otherwise, the Flash memory write function is disabled as the bit content is zero.

Bit 6~4

FMOD2~FMOD0: Mode selection

000: Write program memory

001: Block/Page erase program memory

010: Reserved

011: Read program memory

10x: Reserved

110: FWEN mode – Flash memory Write function Enabled mode

111: Reserved

When these bits are set to “001”, the “Block erase” mode is selected for BS67F340 while the “Page erase” mode is selected for BS67F350/BS67F360/BS67F370.

- Bit 3 **FWPEN**: Flash memory Write Procedure Enable control
0: Disable
1: Enable
When this bit is set to 1 and the FMODE field is set to “110”, the IAP controller will execute the “Flash memory write function enable” procedure. Once the Flash memory write function is successfully enabled, it is not necessary to set the FWPEN bit any more.
- Bit 2 **FWT**: Flash memory Write Initiate control
0: Do not initiate Flash memory write or Flash memory write process is completed
1: Initiate Flash memory write process
This bit is set by software and cleared by hardware when the Flash memory write process is completed.
- Bit 1 **FRDEN**: Flash memory Read Enable control
0: Flash memory read disable
1: Flash memory read enable
- Bit 0 **FRD**: Flash memory Read Initiate control
0: Do not initiate Flash memory read or Flash memory read process is completed
1: Initiate Flash memory read process
This bit is set by software and cleared by hardware when the Flash memory read process is completed.

• **FC1 Register**

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Name	D7	D6	D5	D4	D3	D2	D1	D0
R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W
POR	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

- Bit 7~0 **D7~D0**: Whole chip reset pattern
When user writes a specific value of “55H” to this register, it will generate a reset signal to reset whole chip.

• **FC2 Register – BS67F350/BS67F360/BS67F370**

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Name	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	CLWB
R/W	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	R/W
POR	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	0

- Bit 7~1 Unimplemented, read as 0
- Bit 0 **CLWB**: Flash memory Write Buffer Clear control
0: Do not initiate Write Buffer Clear process or Write Buffer Clear process is completed
1: Initiate Write Buffer Clear process
This bit is set by software and cleared by hardware when the Write Buffer Clear process is completed.

• **FARL Register**

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Name	A7	A6	A5	A4	A3	A2	A1	A0
R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W
POR	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

- Bit 7~0 Flash Memory Address bit 7 ~ bit 0

• **FARH Register – BS67F340**

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Name	—	—	—	—	A11	A10	A9	A8
R/W	—	—	—	—	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W
POR	—	—	—	—	0	0	0	0

Bit 7~4 Unimplemented, read as 0.

Bit 3~0 Flash Memory Address bit 11 ~ bit 8

• **FARH Register – BS67F350**

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Name	—	—	—	A12	A11	A10	A9	A8
R/W	—	—	—	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W
POR	—	—	—	0	0	0	0	0

Bit 7~5 Unimplemented, read as 0.

Bit 4~0 Flash Memory Address bit 12 ~ bit 8

• **FARH Register – BS67F360**

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Name	—	—	A13	A12	A11	A10	A9	A8
R/W	—	—	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W
POR	—	—	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit 7~6 Unimplemented, read as 0.

Bit 5~0 Flash Memory Address bit 13 ~ bit 8

• **FARH Register – BS67F370**

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Name	—	A14	A13	A12	A11	A10	A9	A8
R/W	—	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W
POR	—	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit 7 Unimplemented, read as 0.

Bit 6~0 Flash Memory Address bit 14 ~ bit 8

• **FD0L Register**

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Name	D7	D6	D5	D4	D3	D2	D1	D0
R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W
POR	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit 7~0 The first Flash Memory data bit 7 ~ bit 0

• **FD0H Register**

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Name	D15	D14	D13	D12	D11	D10	D9	D8
R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W
POR	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit 7~0 The first Flash Memory data bit 15 ~ bit 8

• **FD1L Register**

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Name	D7	D6	D5	D4	D3	D2	D1	D0
R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W
POR	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit 7~0 The second Flash Memory data bit 7 ~ bit 0

• **FD1H Register**

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Name	D15	D14	D13	D12	D11	D10	D9	D8
R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W
POR	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit 7~0 The second Flash Memory data bit 15 ~ bit 8

• **FD2L Register**

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Name	D7	D6	D5	D4	D3	D2	D1	D0
R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W
POR	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit 7~0 The third Flash Memory data bit 7 ~ bit 0

• **FD2H Register**

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Name	D15	D14	D13	D12	D11	D10	D9	D8
R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W
POR	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit 7~0 The third Flash Memory data bit 15 ~ bit 8

• **FD3L Register**

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Name	D7	D6	D5	D4	D3	D2	D1	D0
R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W
POR	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit 7~0 The fourth Flash Memory data bit 7 ~ bit 0

• **FD3H Register**

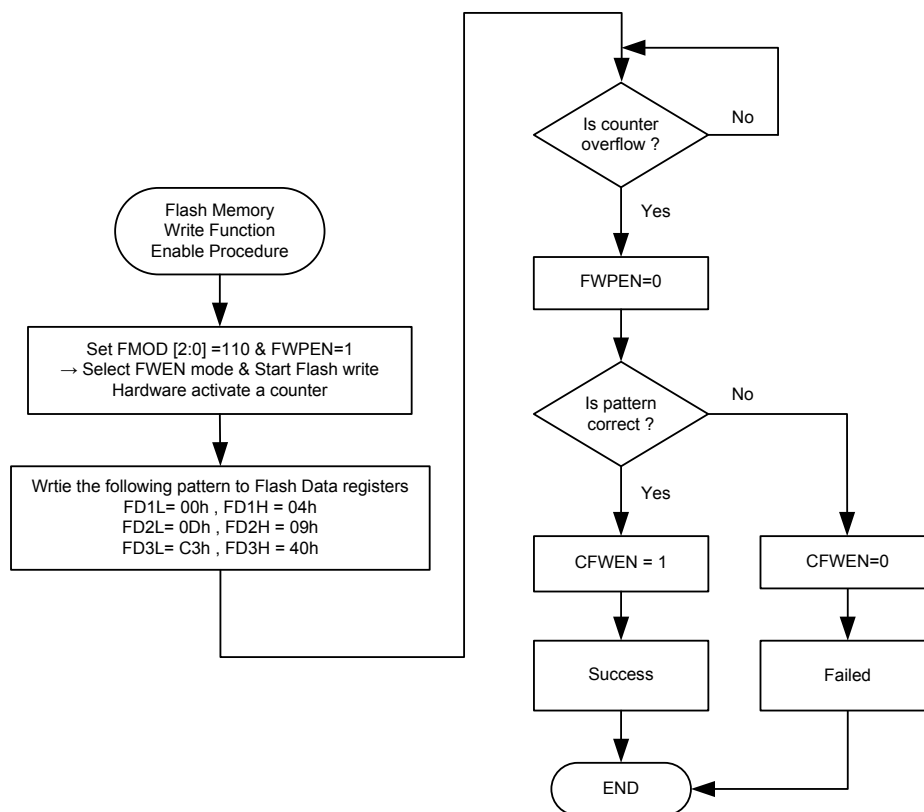
Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Name	D15	D14	D13	D12	D11	D10	D9	D8
R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W
POR	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit 7~0 The fourth Flash Memory data bit 15 ~ bit 8

Flash Memory Write Function Enable Procedure

In order to allow users to change the Flash memory data through the IAP control registers, users must first enable the Flash memory write operation by the following procedure:

1. Write “110” into the FMOD2~FMOD0 bits to select the FWEN mode.
2. Set the FWPEN bit to “1”. The step 1 and step 2 can be executed simultaneously.
3. The pattern data with a sequence of 00H, 04H, 0DH, 09H, C3H and 40H must be written into the FD1L, FD1H, FD2L, FD2H, FD3L and FD3H registers respectively.
4. A counter with a time-out period of 300μs will be activated to allow users writing the correct pattern data into the FD1L/FD1H ~ FD3L/FD3H register pairs. The counter clock is derived from LIRC oscillator.
5. If the counter overflows or the pattern data is incorrect, the Flash memory write operation will not be enabled and users must again repeat the above procedure. Then the FWPEN bit will automatically be cleared to 0 by hardware.
6. If the pattern data is correct before the counter overflows, the Flash memory write operation will be enabled and the FWPEN bit will automatically be cleared to 0 by hardware. The CFWEN bit will also be set to 1 by hardware to indicate that the Flash memory write operation is successfully enabled.
7. Once the Flash memory write operation is enabled, the user can change the Flash ROM data through the Flash control register.
8. To disable the Flash memory write operation, the user can clear the CFWEN bit to 0.



Flash Memory Write Function Enable Procedure

Flash Memory Read/Write Procedure

After the Flash memory write function is successfully enabled through the preceding IAP procedure, users must first erase the corresponding Flash memory block or page and then initiate the Flash memory write operation. For the BS67F340 device the number of the block erase operation is 256 words per block, the available block erase address is only specified by FARH register and the content in the FARL register is not used to specify the block address. For the BS67F350 and BS67F360/370 devices the number of the page erase operation is 32 and 64 words per page respectively, the available page erase address is specified by FARH register and the content of FARL [7:5] and FARL [7:6] bit field respectively.

Erase Block	FARH [3:0]	FARL [7:0]
0	0000	xxxx xxxx
1	0001	xxxx xxxx
2	0010	xxxx xxxx
3	0011	xxxx xxxx
4	0100	xxxx xxxx
5	0101	xxxx xxxx
6	0110	xxxx xxxx
7	0111	xxxx xxxx
8	1000	xxxx xxxx
9	1001	xxxx xxxx
10	1010	xxxx xxxx
11	1011	xxxx xxxx
12	1100	xxxx xxxx
13	1101	xxxx xxxx
14	1110	xxxx xxxx
15	1111	xxxx xxxx

“x”: don't care

BS67F340 Erase Block Number and Selection

Erase Page	FARH	FARL [7:5]	FARL [4:0]
0	0000 0000	000	x xxxx
1	0000 0000	001	x xxxx
2	0000 0000	010	x xxxx
3	0000 0000	011	x xxxx
4	0000 0000	100	x xxxx
5	0000 0000	101	x xxxx
6	0000 0000	110	x xxxx
7	0000 0000	111	x xxxx
8	0000 0001	000	x xxxx
9	0000 0001	001	x xxxx
:	:	:	:
:	:	:	:
126	0000 1111	110	x xxxx
127	0000 1111	111	x xxxx
128	0001 0000	000	x xxxx
129	0001 0000	001	x xxxx
:	:	:	:
:	:	:	:
254	0001 1111	110	x xxxx
255	0001 1111	111	x xxxx

“x”: don't care

BS67F350 Erase Page Number and Selection

Erase Page	FARH	FARL [7:6]	FARL [5:0]
0	0000 0000	00	xx xxxx
1	0000 0000	01	xx xxxx
2	0000 0000	10	xx xxxx
3	0000 0000	11	xx xxxx
4	0000 0001	00	xx xxxx
5	0000 0001	01	xx xxxx
:	:	:	:
:	:	:	:
126	0001 1111	10	xx xxxx
127	0001 1111	11	xx xxxx
128	0010 0000	00	xx xxxx
129	0010 0000	01	xx xxxx
:	:	:	:
:	:	:	:
254	0011 1111	10	xx xxxx
255	0011 1111	11	xx xxxx

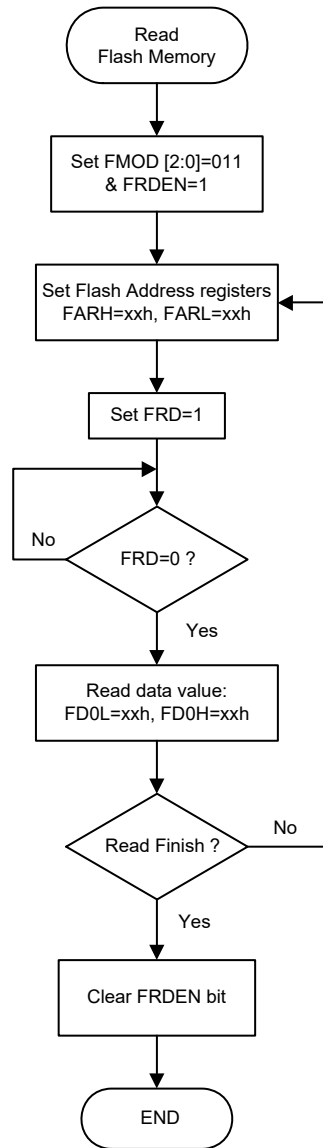
“x”: don't care

BS67F360 Erase Page Number and Selection

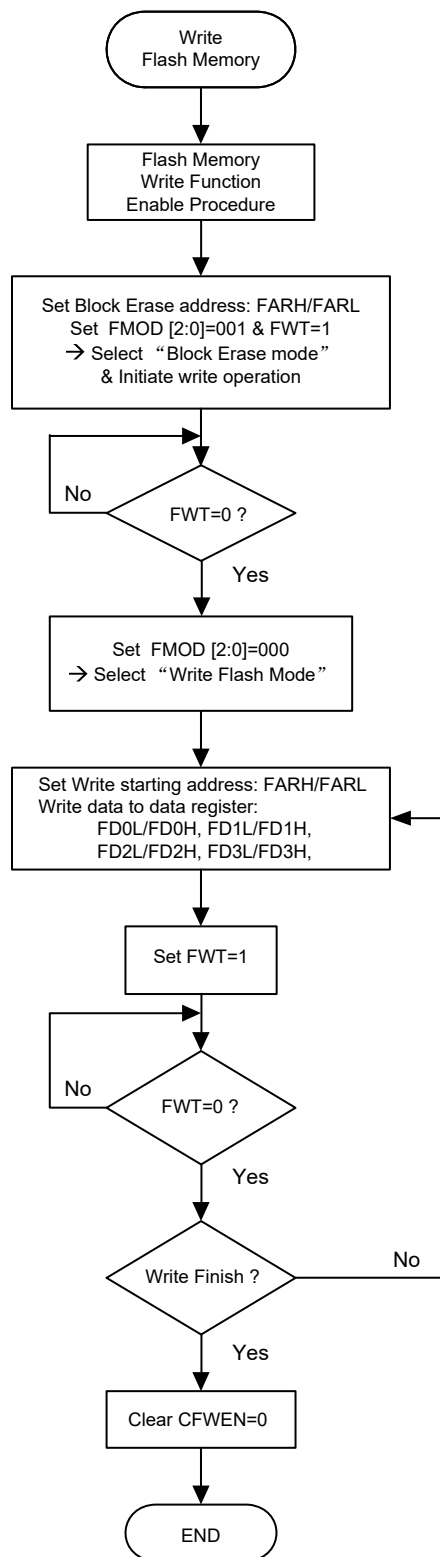
Page Eerase	FARH	FARL[7:6]	FARL[5:0]
0	0000 0000	00	xx xxxx
1	0000 0000	01	xx xxxx
2	0000 0000	10	xx xxxx
3	0000 0000	11	xx xxxx
4	0000 0001	00	xx xxxx
5	0000 0001	01	xx xxxx
:	:	:	:
:	:	:	:
126	0001 1111	10	xx xxxx
127	0001 1111	11	xx xxxx
128	0010 0000	00	xx xxxx
129	0010 0000	01	xx xxxx
:	:	:	:
:	:	:	:
254	0011 1111	10	xx xxxx
255	0011 1111	11	xx xxxx
:	:	:	:
:	:	:	:
510	0111 1111	10	xx xxxx
511	0111 1111	11	xx xxxx

“x”: don't care

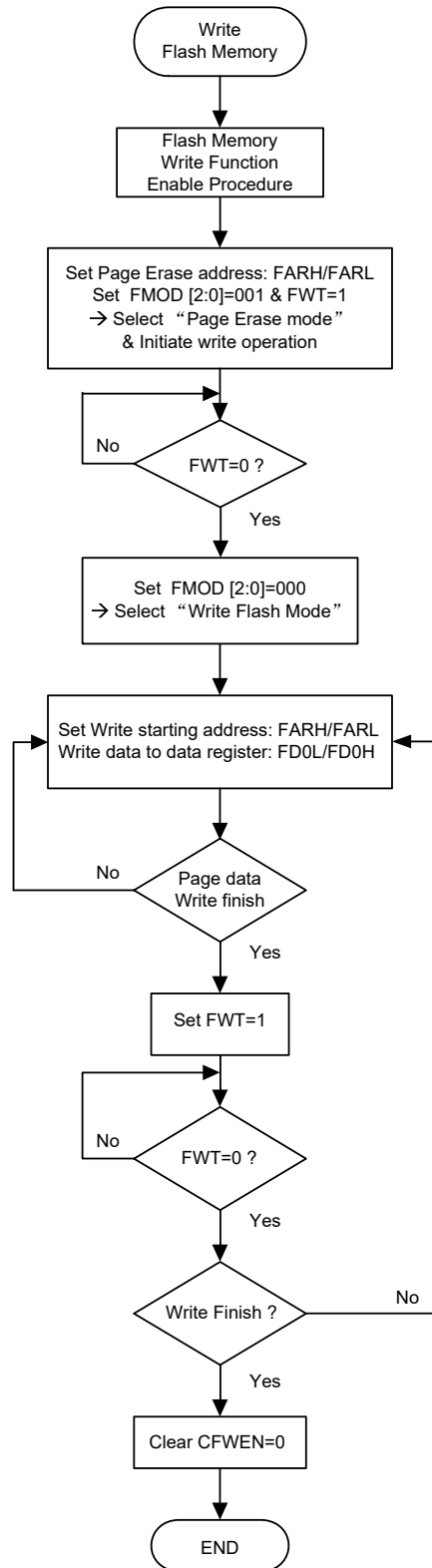
BS67F370 Erase Page Number and Selection



Read Flash Memory Procedure



Write Flash Memory Procedure – BS67F340



Write Flash Memory Procedure – BS67F350/BS67F360/BS67F370

Note: When the FWT or FRD bit is set to 1, the MCU is stopped.

Data Memory

The Data Memory is an 8-bit wide RAM internal memory and is the location where temporary information is stored.

Divided into two types, the first of Data Memory is an area of RAM where special function registers are located. These registers have fixed locations and are necessary for correct operation of the device. Many of these registers can be read from and written to directly under program control, however, some remain protected from user manipulation. The second area of Data Memory is reserved for general purpose use. All locations within this area are read and write accessible under program control.

Switching between the different Data Memory sectors is achieved by properly setting the Memory Pointers to correct value.

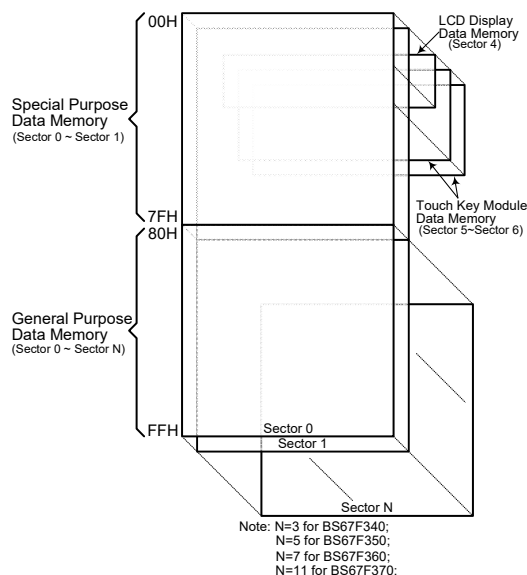
Structure

The Data Memory is subdivided into several sectors, all of which are implemented in 8-bit wide Memory. Each of the Data Memory sectors is categorized into two types, the Special Purpose Data Memory and the General Purpose Data Memory.

The address range of the Special Purpose Data Memory for the device is from 00H to 7FH. The General Purpose Data Memory address range is from 80H to FFH except the LCD Display and Touch Key Module Data Memory. The LCD Data Memory is located in sector 4 with a start address of 00H. The Touch Key Modul Data Memory is located in sector 5 and sector 6 respectively with a start address of 00H.

Device	Special Purpose Data Memory	General Purpose Data Memory		LCD Display Data Memory	Touch Key Module Data Memory
	Located Sectors	Capacity	Sector : Address	Sector : Address	Sector : Address
BS67F340	0, 1	512×8	0: 80H~FFH 1: 80H~FFH 2: 80H~FFH 3: 80H~FFH	4: 00H~17H	5: 00H~1FH 6: 00H~1FH
BS67F350	0, 1	768×8	0: 80H~FFH 1: 80H~FFH : 5: 80H~FFH	4: 00H~1FH	5: 00H~27H 6: 00H~27H
BS67F360	0, 1	1024×8	0: 80H~FFH 1: 80H~FFH : 7: 80H~FFH	4: 00H~27H	5: 00H~37H 6: 00H~37H
BS67F370	0, 1	1536×8	0: 80H~FFH 1: 80H~FFH : 11: 80H~FFH	4: 00H~2FH	5: 00H~47H 6: 00H~47H

Data Memory Summary



Data Memory Structure

Data Memory Addressing

For these devices that support the extended instructions, there is no Bank Pointer for Data Memory. The Bank Pointer, PBP, is only available for Program Memory. For Data Memory the desired Sector is pointed by the MP1H or MP2H register and the certain Data Memory address in the selected sector is specified by the MP1L or MP2L register when using indirect addressing access.

Direct Addressing can be used in all sectors using the corresponding instruction which can address all available data memory space. For the accessed data memory which is located in any data memory sectors except sector 0, the extended instructions can be used to access the data memory instead of using the indirect addressing access. The main difference between standard instructions and extended instructions is that the data memory address “m” in the extended instructions can be from 10 bits to 12 bits depending upon which device is selected, the high byte indicates a sector and the low byte indicates a specific address.

General Purpose Data Memory

All microcontroller programs require an area of read/write memory where temporary data can be stored and retrieved for use later. It is this area of RAM memory that is known as General Purpose Data Memory. This area of Data Memory is fully accessible by the user programing for both reading and writing operations. By using the bit operation instructions individual bits can be set or reset under program control giving the user a large range of flexibility for bit manipulation in the Data Memory.

Special Purpose Data Memory

This area of Data Memory is where registers, necessary for the correct operation of the microcontroller, are stored. Most of the registers are both readable and writeable but some are protected and are readable only, the details of which are located under the relevant Special Function Register section. Note that for locations that are unused, any read instruction to these addresses will return the value “00H”.

	Sector 0	Sector 1		Sector 0	Sector 1
00H	IAR0	TKTMR	40H		EEC
01H	MP0	TKC0	41H	EEA	
02H	IAR1	TK16DL	42H		
03H	MP1L	TK16DH	43H	EED	
04H	MP1H	TKC1	44H	PSCR1	IFS
05H	ACC	TKM016DL	45H		PAS0
06H	PCL	TKM016DH	46H	LCDC0	PAS1
07H	TBLP	TKM0ROL	47H	LCDC1	PBS0
08H	TBLH	TKM0ROH	48H	PTMC0	PBS1
09H	TBHP	TKM0C0	49H	PTMC1	PCS0
0AH	STATUS	TKM0C1	4AH	PTMDL	
0BH		TKM0C2	4BH	PTMDH	
0CH	IAR2	TKM116DL	4CH	PTMAL	PDS1
0DH	MP2L	TKM116DH	4DH	PTMAH	PES0
0EH	MP2H	TKM1ROL	4EH	PTMRPL	PES1
0FH	RSTFC	TKM1ROH	4FH	PTMRPH	
10H	INTC0	TKM1C0	50H	FC0	
11H	INTC1	TKM1C1	51H	FC1	
12H	INTC2	TKM1C2	52H		
13H		TKM216DL	53H	FARL	
14H	PA	TKM216DH	54H	FARH	
15H	PAC	TKM2ROL	55H	FD0L	
16H	PAPU	TKM2ROH	56H	FD0H	
17H	PAWU	TKM2C0	57H	FD1L	
18H	PB	TKM2C1	58H	FD1H	
19H	PBC	TKM2C2	59H	FD2L	
1AH	PBPU	TKM316DL	5AH	FD2H	
1BH	INTEG	TKM316DH	5BH	FD3L	
1CH	SCC	TKM3ROL	5CH	FD3H	
1DH	HIRCC	TKM3ROH	5DH	STMC0	
1EH	HXTC	TKM3C0	5EH	STMC1	
1FH	LXTC	TKM3C1	5FH	STMDL	
20H	LVDC	TKM3C2	60H	STMDH	
21H	LVRC		61H	STMAL	
22H	WDT		62H	STMAH	
23H	RSTC		63H	STMRP	
24H	PC		64H	CTM1C0	
25H	PCC		65H	CTM1C1	
26H	PCPU		66H	CTM1DL	
27H	PD		67H	CTM1DH	
28H	PDC		68H	CTM1AL	
29H	PDPU		69H	CTM1AH	
2AH	MF10		6AH	TSC0	
2BH	MF11		6BH	TSC1	
2CH	MF12		6CH	TSC2	
2DH	MF13		6DH	TSC3	
2EH	ADRL		6EH		
2FH	ADRH		6FH		
30H	ADCR0		70H	PE	
31H	ADCR1		71H	PEC	
32H	PSCR0		72H	PEPU	
33H	TB0C		73H		
34H	TB1C		74H		
35H	SIMTOC		75H		
36H	SIMC0		76H	USR	
37H	SIMC1		77H	UCR1	
38H	SIMD		78H	UCR2	
39H	SIMA/SIMC2		79H	TXR_RXR	
3AH	CTM0C0		7AH	BRG	
3BH	CTM0C1		7BH		
3CH	CTM0DL				
3DH	CTM0DH				
3EH	CTM0AL				
3FH	CTM0AH				

□ : Unused, read as 00H

Special Purpose Data Memory Structure – BS67F340

	Sector 0	Sector 1		Sector 0	Sector 1
00H	IAR0	TKTMR	40H	EEA	EEC
01H	MP0	TKC0	41H		
02H	IAR1	TK16DL	42H		
03H	MP1L	TK16DH	43H	EED	
04H	MP1H	TKC1	44H	PSCR1	IFS
05H	ACC	TKM016DL	45H		PAS0
06H	PCL	TKM016DH	46H	LCDC0	PAS1
07H	TBLP	TKM0ROL	47H	LCDC1	PBS0
08H	TBLH	TKM0ROH	48H	PTMC0	PBS1
09H	TBHP	TKM0C0	49H	PTMC1	PCS0
0AH	STATUS	TKM0C1	4AH	PTMDL	PCS1
0BH		TKM0C2	4BH	PTMDH	PDS0
0CH	IAR2	TKM116DL	4CH	PTMAL	PDS1
0DH	MP2L	TKM116DH	4DH	PTMAH	PES0
0EH	MP2H	TKM1ROL	4EH	PTMRPL	PES1
0FH	RSTFC	TKM1ROH	4FH	PTMRPH	
10H	INTC0	TKM1C0	50H	FC0	
11H	INTC1	TKM1C1	51H	FC1	
12H	INTC2	TKM1C2	52H	FC2	
13H		TKM216DL	53H	FARL	
14H	PA	TKM216DH	54H	FARH	
15H	PAC	TKM2ROL	55H	FD0L	
16H	PAPU	TKM2ROH	56H	FD0H	
17H	PAWU	TKM2C0	57H	FD1L	
18H	PB	TKM2C1	58H	FD1H	
19H	PBC	TKM2C2	59H	FD2L	
1AH	PBPU	TKM316DL	5AH	FD2H	
1BH	INTEG	TKM316DH	5BH	FD3L	
1CH	SCC	TKM3ROL	5CH	FD3H	
1DH	HIRCC	TKM3ROH	5DH	STMC0	
1EH	HXTC	TKM3C0	5EH	STMC1	
1FH	LXTC	TKM3C1	5FH	STMDL	
20H	LVDC	TKM3C2	60H	STMDH	
21H	LVRC	TKM416DL	61H	STMAL	
22H	WDT	TKM416DH	62H	STMAH	
23H	RSTC	TKM4ROL	63H	STMRP	
24H	PC	TKM4ROH	64H	CTM1C0	
25H	PCC	TKM4C0	65H	CTM1C1	
26H	PCPU	TKM4C1	66H	CTM1DL	
27H	PD	TKM4C2	67H	CTM1DH	
28H	PDC		68H	CTM1AL	
29H	PDPU		69H	CTM1AH	
2AH	MF10		6AH	TSC0	
2BH	MF11		6BH	TSC1	
2CH	MF12		6CH	TSC2	
2DH	MF13		6DH	TSC3	
2EH	ADRL		6EH		
2FH	ADRH		6FH		
30H	ADCR0		70H	PE	
31H	ADCR1		71H	PEC	
32H	PSCR0		72H	PEPU	
33H	TB0C		73H		
34H	TB1C		74H		
35H	SIMTOC		75H		
36H	SIMC0		76H	USR	
37H	SIMC1		77H	UCR1	
38H	SIMD		78H	UCR2	
39H	SIMA/SIMC2		79H	TXR_RXR	
3AH	CTM0C0		7AH	BRG	
3BH	CTM0C1		7BH		
3CH	CTM0DL				
3DH	CTM0DH				
3EH	CTM0AL				
3FH	CTM0AH				

□ : Unused, read as 00H

Special Purpose Data Memory Structure – BS67F350

	Sector 0	Sector 1		Sector 0	Sector 1
00H	IAR0	TKTMR	40H		EEC
01H	MP0	TKC0	41H	EEA	
02H	IAR1	TK16DL	42H		
03H	MP1L	TK16DH	43H	EED	
04H	MP1H	TKC1	44H	PSCR1	IFS
05H	ACC	TKM016DL	45H		PAS0
06H	PCL	TKM016DH	46H	LCDC0	PAS1
07H	TBLP	TKM0ROL	47H	LCDC1	PBS0
08H	TBLH	TKM0ROH	48H	PTMC0	PBS1
09H	TBHP	TKM0C0	49H	PTMC1	PCS0
0AH	STATUS	TKM0C1	4AH	PTMDL	PCS1
0BH	PBP	TKM0C2	4BH	PTMDH	PDS0
0CH	IAR2	TKM116DL	4CH	PTMAL	PDS1
0DH	MP2L	TKM116DH	4DH	PTMAH	PES0
0EH	MP2H	TKM1ROL	4EH	PTMRPL	PES1
0FH	RSTFC	TKM1ROH	4FH	PTMRPH	PFS0
10H	INTC0	TKM1C0	50H	FC0	
11H	INTC1	TKM1C1	51H	FC1	
12H	INTC2	TKM1C2	52H	FC2	
13H		TKM216DL	53H	FARL	
14H	PA	TKM216DH	54H	FARH	
15H	PAC	TKM2ROL	55H	FD0L	
16H	PAPU	TKM2ROH	56H	FD0H	
17H	PAWU	TKM2C0	57H	FD1L	
18H	PB	TKM2C1	58H	FD1H	
19H	PBC	TKM2C2	59H	FD2L	
1AH	PBPU	TKM316DL	5AH	FD2H	
1BH	INTEG	TKM316DH	5BH	FD3L	
1CH	SCC	TKM3ROL	5CH	FD3H	
1DH	HIRCC	TKM3ROH	5DH	STMC0	
1EH	HXTC	TKM3C0	5EH	STMC1	
1FH	LXTC	TKM3C1	5FH	STMDL	
20H	LVDC	TKM3C2	60H	STMDH	
21H	LVRC	TKM416DL	61H	STMAL	
22H	WDT	TKM416DH	62H	STMAH	
23H	RSTC	TKM4ROL	63H	STMRP	
24H	PC	TKM4ROH	64H	CTM1C0	
25H	PCC	TKM4C0	65H	CTM1C1	
26H	PCPU	TKM4C1	66H	CTM1DL	
27H	PD	TKM4C2	67H	CTM1DH	
28H	PDC	TKM516DL	68H	CTM1AL	
29H	PDPU	TKM516DH	69H	CTM1AH	
2AH	MF10	TKM5ROL	6AH	TSC0	
2BH	MF11	TKM5ROH	6BH	TSC1	
2CH	MF12	TKM5C0	6CH	TSC2	
2DH	MF13	TKM5C1	6DH	TSC3	
2EH	ADRL	TKM5C2	6EH		
2FH	ADRH	TKM616DL	6FH		
30H	ADCR0	TKM616DH	70H	PE	
31H	ADCR1	TKM6ROL	71H	PEC	
32H	PSCR0	TKM6ROH	72H	PEPU	
33H	TB0C	TKM6C0	73H	PF	
34H	TB1C	TKM6C1	74H	PFC	
35H	SIMTOC	TKM6C2	75H	PFPU	
36H	SIMC0		76H	USR	
37H	SIMC1		77H	UCR1	
38H	SIMD		78H	UCR2	
39H	SIMA/SIMC2		79H	TXR_RXR	
3AH	CTM0C0		7AH	BRG	
3BH	CTM0C1		7BH		
3CH	CTM0DL				
3DH	CTM0DH				
3EH	CTM0AL				
3FH	CTM0AH				

□ : Unused, read as 00H

Special Purpose Data Memory Structure – BS67F360

	Sector 0	Sector 1		Sector 0	Sector 1
00H	IAR0	TKTMR	40H		EEC
01H	MP0	TKC0	41H	EEA	
02H	IAR1	TK16DL	42H		
03H	MP1L	TK16DH	43H	EED	
04H	MP1H	TKC1	44H	PSCR1	IFS
05H	ACC	TKM016DL	45H		PAS0
06H	PCL	TKM016DH	46H	LCDC0	PAS1
07H	TBLP	TKM0ROL	47H	LCDC1	PBS0
08H	TBLH	TKM0ROH	48H	PTMC0	PBS1
09H	TBHP	TKM0C0	49H	PTMC1	PCS0
0AH	STATUS	TKM0C1	4AH	PTMDL	PCS1
0BH	PBP	TKM0C2	4BH	PTMDH	PDS0
0CH	IAR2	TKM116DL	4CH	PTMAL	PDS1
0DH	MP2L	TKM116DH	4DH	PTMAH	PES0
0EH	MP2H	TKM1ROL	4EH	PTMRPL	PES1
0FH	RSTFC	TKM1ROH	4FH	PTMRPH	PFS0
10H	INTC0	TKM1C0	50H	FC0	
11H	INTC1	TKM1C1	51H	FC1	PGS0
12H	INTC2	TKM1C2	52H	FC2	PGS1
13H		TKM216DL	53H	FARL	PHS0
14H	PA	TKM216DH	54H	FARH	PHS1
15H	PAC	TKM2ROL	55H	FD0L	
16H	PAPU	TKM2ROH	56H	FD0H	
17H	PAWU	TKM2C0	57H	FD1L	
18H	PB	TKM2C1	58H	FD1H	
19H	PBC	TKM2C2	59H	FD2L	
1AH	PBPU	TKM316DL	5AH	FD2H	
1BH	INTEG	TKM316DH	5BH	FD3L	
1CH	SCC	TKM3ROL	5CH	FD3H	PH
1DH	HIRCC	TKM3ROH	5DH	STMC0	PHC
1EH	HXTC	TKM3C0	5EH	STMC1	PHPU
1FH	LXTC	TKM3C1	5FH	STMDL	
20H	LVDC	TKM3C2	60H	STMDH	TKM816DL
21H	LVRC	TKM416DL	61H	STMAL	TKM816DH
22H	WDTC	TKM416DH	62H	STMAH	TKM8ROL
23H	RSTC	TKM4ROL	63H	STMRP	TKM8ROH
24H	PC	TKM4ROH	64H	CTM1C0	TKM8C0
25H	PCC	TKM4C0	65H	CTM1C1	TKM8C1
26H	PCPU	TKM4C1	66H	CTM1DL	TKM8C2
27H	PD	TKM4C2	67H	CTM1DH	
28H	PDC	TKM516DL	68H	CTM1AL	
29H	PDPU	TKM516DH	69H	CTM1AH	
2AH	MFIO	TKM5ROL	6AH	TSC0	
2BH	MF11	TKM5ROH	6BH	TSC1	
2CH	MF12	TKM5C0	6CH	TSC2	
2DH	MF13	TKM5C1	6DH	TSC3	
2EH	ADRL	TKM5C2	6EH		
2FH	ADRH	TKM616DL	6FH		
30H	ADCR0	TKM616DH	70H	PE	
31H	ADCR1	TKM6ROL	71H	PEC	
32H	PSCR0	TKM6ROH	72H	PEPU	≈
33H	TB0C	TKM6C0	73H	PF	
34H	TB1C	TKM6C1	74H	PFC	
35H	SIMTOC	TKM6C2	75H	PFPU	
36H	SIMC0	TKM716DL	76H	USR	
37H	SIMC1	TKM716DH	77H	UCR1	
38H	SIMD	TKM7ROL	78H	UCR2	
39H	SIMA/SIMC2	TKM7ROH	79H	TXR_RXR	
3AH	CTM0C0	TKM7C0	7AH	BRG	
3BH	CTM0C1	TKM7C1	7BH	PG	
3CH	CTM0DL	TKM7C2	7CH	PGC	
3DH	CTM0DH		7DH	PGPU	
3EH	CTM0AL		7EH		
3FH	CTM0AH		7FH		

□ : Unused, read as 00H

Special Purpose Data Memory Structure – BS67F370

Special Function Register Description

Most of the Special Function Register details will be described in the relevant functional section. However, several registers require a separate description in this section.

Indirect Addressing Registers – IAR0, IAR1, IAR2

The Indirect Addressing Registers, IAR0, IAR1 and IAR2, although having their locations in normal RAM register space, do not actually physically exist as normal registers. The method of indirect addressing for RAM data manipulation uses these Indirect Addressing Registers and Memory Pointers, in contrast to direct memory addressing, where the actual memory address is specified. Actions on the IAR0, IAR1 and IAR2 registers will result in no actual read or write operation to these registers but rather to the memory location specified by their corresponding Memory Pointers, MP0, MP1L/MP1H or MP2L/MP2H. Acting as a pair, IAR0 and MP0 can together access data only from Sector 0 while the IAR1 register together with MP1L/MP1H register pair and IAR2 register together with MP2L/MP2H register pair can access data from any Data Memory sector. As the Indirect Addressing Registers are not physically implemented, reading the Indirect Addressing Registers indirectly will return a result of “00H” and writing to the registers indirectly will result in no operation.

Memory Pointers – MP0, MP1H/MP1L, MP2H/MP2L

Five Memory Pointers, known as MP0, MP1L, MP1H, MP2L and MP2H, are provided. These Memory Pointers are physically implemented in the Data Memory and can be manipulated in the same way as normal registers providing a convenient way with which to address and track data. When any operation to the relevant Indirect Addressing Registers is carried out, the actual address that the microcontroller is directed to is the address specified by the related Memory Pointer. MP0, together with Indirect Addressing Register, IAR0, are used to access data from Sector 0, while MP1L/MP1H together with IAR1 and MP2L/MP2H together with IAR2 are used to access data from all data sectors according to the corresponding MP1H or MP2H register. Direct Addressing can be used in all data sectors using the corresponding instruction which can address all available data memory space.

Indirect Addressing Program Example

Example 1

```
data .section 'data'
adres1  db ?
adres2  db ?
adres3  db ?
adres4  db ?
block   db ?
code .section at 0 code
org 00h
start:
mov a,04h                ; setup size of block
mov block,a
mov a,offset adres1      ; Accumulator loaded with first RAM address
mov mp0,a                ; setup memory pointer with first RAM address
loop:
clr IAR0                 ; clear the data at address defined by MP0
inc mp0                  ; increment memory pointer
sdz block                ; check if last memory location has been cleared
jmp loop
continue:
:
```

Example 2

```
data .section 'data'
adres1 db ?
adres2 db ?
adres3 db ?
adres4 db ?
block db ?
code .section at 0 'code'
org 00h
start:
mov a,04h ; setup size of block
mov block,a
mov a,01h ; setup the memory sector
mov mp1h,a
mov a,offset adres1 ; Accumulator loaded with first RAM address
mov mp1l,a ; setup memory pointer with first RAM address
loop:
clr IAR1 ; clear the data at address defined by MP1L
inc mp1l ; increment memory pointer MP1L
sdz block ; check if last memory location has been cleared
jmp loop
continue:
:
```

The important point to note here is that in the example shown above, no reference is made to specific RAM addresses.

Direct Addressing Program Example using extended instructions

```
data .section 'data'
temp db ?
code .section at 0 code
org 00h
start:
lmov a,[m] ; move [m] data to acc
lsub a,[m+1] ; compare [m] and [m+1] data
snz c ; [m]>[m+1]?
jmp continue ; no
lmov a,[m] ; yes, exchange [m] and [m+1] data
mov temp,a
lmov a,[m+1]
lmov [m],a
mov a,temp
lmov [m+1],a
continue:
:
```

Note: Here “m” is a data memory address located in any data memory sectors. For example, m=1F0H, it indicates address 0F0H in Sector 1.

Program Memory Bank Pointer – PBP

For the BS67F360/BS67F370 devices the Program Memory is divided into several banks. Selecting the required Program Memory area is achieved using the Program Memory Bank Pointer, PBP. The PBP register should be properly configured before the device executes the “Branch” operation using the “JMP” or “CALL” instruction. After that a jump to a non-consecutive Program Memory address which is located in a certain bank selected by the program memory bank pointer bits will occur.

• PBP Register – BS67F360

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Name	D7	D6	D5	D4	D3	D2	D1	PBP0
R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W
POR	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit 7~1 **D7~D1**: General data bits and can be read or written.

Bit 0 **PBP0**: Program Memory Bank Point bit 0
 0: Bank 0
 1: Bank 1

• PBP Register – BS67F370

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Name	D7	D6	D5	D4	D3	D2	PBP1	PBP0
R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W
POR	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit 7~2 **D7~D2**: General data bits and can be read or written.

Bit 1~0 **PBP1~PBP0**: Program Memory Bank Point bit 1~ bit 0
 00: Bank 0
 01: Bank 1
 10: Bank 2
 11: Bank 3

Accumulator – ACC

The Accumulator is central to the operation of any microcontroller and is closely related with operations carried out by the ALU. The Accumulator is the place where all intermediate results from the ALU are stored. Without the Accumulator it would be necessary to write the result of each calculation or logical operation such as addition, subtraction, shift, etc., to the Data Memory resulting in higher programming and timing overheads. Data transfer operations usually involve the temporary storage function of the Accumulator; for example, when transferring data between one user defined register and another, it is necessary to do this by passing the data through the Accumulator as no direct transfer between two registers is permitted.

Program Counter Low Register – PCL

To provide additional program control functions, the low byte of the Program Counter is made accessible to programmers by locating it within the Special Purpose area of the Data Memory. By manipulating this register, direct jumps to other program locations are easily implemented. Loading a value directly into this PCL register will cause a jump to the specified Program Memory location, however, as the register is only 8-bit wide, only jumps within the current Program Memory page are permitted. When such operations are used, note that a dummy cycle will be inserted.

Look-up Table Registers – TBLP, TBHP, TBLH

These three special function registers are used to control operation of the look-up table which is stored in the Program Memory. TBLP and TBHP are the table pointer and indicates the location where the table data is located. Their value must be setup before any table read commands are executed. Their value can be changed, for example using the “INC” or “DEC” instructions, allowing for easy table data pointing and reading. TBLH is the location where the high order byte of the table data is stored after a table read data instruction has been executed. Note that the lower order table data byte is transferred to a user defined location.

Status Register – STATUS

This 8-bit register contains the zero flag (Z), carry flag (C), auxiliary carry flag (AC), overflow flag (OV), SC flag, CZ flag, power down flag (PDF), and watchdog time-out flag (TO). These arithmetic/logical operation and system management flags are used to record the status and operation of the microcontroller.

With the exception of the TO and PDF flags, bits in the status register can be altered by instructions like most other registers. Any data written into the status register will not change the TO or PDF flag. In addition, operations related to the status register may give different results due to the different instruction operations. The TO flag can be affected only by a system power-up, a WDT time-out or by executing the “CLR WDT” or “HALT” instruction. The PDF flag is affected only by executing the “HALT” or “CLR WDT” instruction or during a system power-up.

The Z, OV, AC, C, SC and CZ flags generally reflect the status of the latest operations.

- **C** is set if an operation results in a carry during an addition operation or if a borrow does not take place during a subtraction operation; otherwise C is cleared. C is also affected by a rotate through carry instruction.
- **AC** is set if an operation results in a carry out of the low nibbles in addition, or no borrow from the high nibble into the low nibble in subtraction; otherwise AC is cleared.
- **Z** is set if the result of an arithmetic or logical operation is zero; otherwise Z is cleared.
- **OV** is set if an operation results in a carry into the highest-order bit but not a carry out of the highest-order bit, or vice versa; otherwise OV is cleared.
- **PDF** is cleared by a system power-up or executing the “CLR WDT” instruction. PDF is set by executing the “HALT” instruction.
- **TO** is cleared by a system power-up or executing the “CLR WDT” or “HALT” instruction. TO is set by a WDT time-out.
- **SC** is the result of the “XOR” operation which is performed by the OV flag and the MSB of the current instruction operation result.
- **CZ** is the operational result of different flags for different instructions. Refer to register definitions for more details.

In addition, on entering an interrupt sequence or executing a subroutine call, the status register will not be pushed onto the stack automatically. If the contents of the status registers are important and if the subroutine can corrupt the status register, precautions must be taken to correctly save it.

• **STATUS Register**

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Name	SC	CZ	TO	PDF	OV	Z	AC	C
R/W	R	R	R	R	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W
POR	x	x	0	0	x	x	x	x

“x”: unknown

- Bit 7 **SC**: The result of the “XOR” operation which is performed by the OV flag and the MSB of the instruction operation result.
- Bit 6 **CZ**: The the operational result of different flags for different instuctions.
For SUB/SUBM/LSUB/LSUBM instructions, the CZ flag is equal to the Z flag.
For SBC/ SBCM/ LSBC/ LSBCM instructions, the CZ flag is the “AND” operation result which is performed by the previous operation CZ flag and current operation zero flag. For other instructions, the CZ flag willl not be affected.
- Bit 5 **TO**: Watchdog Time-out flag
0: After power up ow executing the “CLR WDT” or “HALT” instruction
1: A watchdog time-out occurred
- Bit 4 **PDF**: Power down flag
0: After power up ow executing the “CLR WDT” instruction
1: By executing the “HALT” instructin
- Bit 3 **OV**: Overflow flag
0: No overflow
1: An operation results in a carry into the highest-order bit but not a carry out of the highest-order bit or vice versa
- Bit 2 **Z**: Zero flag
0: The result of an arithmetic or logical operation is not zero
1: The result of an arithmetic or logical operation is zero
- Bit 1 **AC**: Auxiliary flag
0: No auxiliary carry
1: An operation results in a carry out of the low nibbles, in addition, or no borrow from the high nibble into the low nibble in subtraction
- Bit 0 **C**: Carry flag
0: No carry-out
1: An operation results in a carry during an addition operation or if a borrow does not take place during a subtraction operation
The “C” flag is also affected by a rotate through carry instruction.

EEPROM Data Memory

These devices contain an area of internal EEPROM Data Memory. EEPROM, which stands for Electrically Erasable Programmable Read Only Memory, is by its nature a non-volatile form of re-programmable memory, with data retention even when its power supply is removed. By incorporating this kind of data memory, a whole new host of application possibilities are made available to the designer. The availability of EEPROM storage allows information such as product identification numbers, calibration values, specific user data, system setup data or other product information to be stored directly within the product microcontroller. The process of reading and writing data to the EEPROM memory has been reduced to a very trivial affair.

Device	Capacity	Address
BS67F340	128×8	00H ~ 7FH
BS67F350		
BS67F360		
BS67F370		

EEPROM Data Memory Structure

The EEPROM Data Memory capacity is 128×8 bits for the series of devices. Unlike the Program Memory and RAM Data Memory, the EEPROM Data Memory is not directly mapped into memory space and is therefore not directly addressable in the same way as the other types of memory. Read and Write operations to the EEPROM are carried out in single byte operations using an address and data register in sector 0 and a single control register in sector 1.

EEPROM Registers

Three registers control the overall operation of the internal EEPROM Data Memory. These are the address register, EEA, the data register, EED and a single control register, EEC. As both the EEA and EED registers are located in sector 0, they can be directly accessed in the same way as any other Special Function Register. The EEC register, however, being located in sector 1, can be read from or written to indirectly using the MP1H/MP1L or MP2H/MP2L Memory Pointer pair and Indirect Addressing Register, IAR1 or IAR2. Because the EEC control register is located at address 40H in sector 1, the Memory Pointer low byte register, MP1L or MP2L, must first be set to the value 40H and the Memory Pointer high byte register, MP1H or MP2H, set to the value, 01H, before any operations on the EEC register are executed.

Register Name	Bit							
	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
EEA	—	EEA6	EEA5	EEA4	EEA3	EEA2	EEA1	EEA0
EED	D7	D6	D5	D4	D3	D2	D1	D0
EEC	—	—	—	—	WREN	WR	RDEN	RD

EEPROM Registers List

• EEA Register

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Name	—	EEA6	EEA5	EEA4	EEA3	EEA2	EEA1	EEA0
R/W	—	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W
POR	—	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit 7 Unimplemented, read as 0.

Bit 6~0 **EEA6~EEA0**: Data EEPROM address bit 6 ~ bit 0

• **EED Register**

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Name	D7	D6	D5	D4	D3	D2	D1	D0
R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W
POR	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit 7~0 **D7~D0**: Data EEPROM data bit 7~bit 0

• **EEC Register**

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Name	—	—	—	—	WREN	WR	RDEN	RD
R/W	—	—	—	—	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W
POR	—	—	—	—	0	0	0	0

Bit 7~4 Unimplemented, read as 0

Bit 3 **WREN**: Data EEPROM write enable
 0: Disable
 1: Enable

This is the Data EEPROM Write Enable Bit which must be set high before Data EEPROM write operations are carried out. Clearing this bit to zero will inhibit Data EEPROM write operations.

Bit 2 **WR**: EEPROM write control
 0: Write cycle has finished
 1: Activate a write cycle

This is the Data EEPROM Write Control Bit and when set high by the application program will activate a write cycle. This bit will be automatically reset to zero by the hardware after the write cycle has finished. Setting this bit high will have no effect if the WREN has not first been set high.

Bit 1 **RDEN**: Data EEPROM read enable
 0: Disable
 1: Enable

This is the Data EEPROM Read Enable Bit which must be set high before Data EEPROM read operations are carried out. Clearing this bit to zero will inhibit Data EEPROM read operations.

Bit 0 **RD**: EEPROM read control
 0: Read cycle has finished
 1: Activate a read cycle

This is the Data EEPROM Read Control Bit and when set high by the application program will activate a read cycle. This bit will be automatically reset to zero by the hardware after the read cycle has finished. Setting this bit high will have no effect if the RDEN has not first been set high.

Note: The WREN, WR, RDEN and RD can not be set to “1” at the same time in one instruction. The WR and RD can not be set to “1” at the same time.

Reading Data from the EEPROM

To read data from the EEPROM, the read enable bit, RDEN, in the EEC register must first be set high to enable the read function. The EEPROM address of the data to be read must then be placed in the EEA register. If the RD bit in the EEC register is now set high, a read cycle will be initiated. Setting the RD bit high will not initiate a read operation if the RDEN bit has not been set. When the read cycle terminates, the RD bit will be automatically cleared to zero, after which the data can be read from the EED register. The data will remain in the EED register until another read or write operation is executed. The application program can poll the RD bit to determine when the data is valid for reading.

Writing Data to the EEPROM

To write data to the EEPROM, the EEPROM address of the data to be written must first be placed in the EEA register and the data placed in the EED register. Then the write enable bit, WREN, in the EEC register must first be set high to enable the write function. After this, the WR bit in the EEC register must be immediately set high to initiate a write cycle. These two instructions must be executed consecutively. The global interrupt bit EMI should also first be cleared before implementing any write operations, and then set again after the write cycle has started. Note that setting the WR bit high will not initiate a write cycle if the WREN bit has not been set. As the EEPROM write cycle is controlled using an internal timer whose operation is asynchronous to microcontroller system clock, a certain time will elapse before the data will have been written into the EEPROM. Detecting when the write cycle has finished can be implemented either by polling the WR bit in the EEC register or by using the EEPROM interrupt. When the write cycle terminates, the WR bit will be automatically cleared to zero by the microcontroller, informing the user that the data has been written to the EEPROM. The application program can therefore poll the WR bit to determine when the write cycle has ended.

Write Protection

Protection against inadvertent write operation is provided in several ways. After the device is powered on, the Write Enable bit in the control register will be cleared preventing any write operations. Also at power-on the Memory Pointer high byte register, MP1H or MP2H, will be reset to zero, which means that Data Memory sector 0 will be selected. As the EEPROM control register is located in sector 1, this adds a further measure of protection against spurious write operations. During normal program operation, ensuring that the Write Enable bit in the control register is cleared will safeguard against incorrect write operations.

EEPROM Interrupt

The EEPROM write interrupt is generated when an EEPROM write cycle has ended. The EEPROM interrupt must first be enabled by setting the DEE bit in the relevant interrupt register. However, as the EEPROM is contained within a Multi-function Interrupt, the associated multi-function interrupt enable bit must also be set. When an EEPROM write cycle ends, the DEF request flag and its associated multi-function interrupt request flag will both be set. If the global, EEPROM and Multi-function interrupts are enabled and the stack is not full, a jump to the associated Multi-function Interrupt vector will take place. When the interrupt is serviced only the Multi-function interrupt flag will be automatically reset, the EEPROM interrupt flag must be manually reset by the application program.

Programming Considerations

Care must be taken that data is not inadvertently written to the EEPROM. Protection can be Periodic by ensuring that the Write Enable bit is normally cleared to zero when not writing. Also the Memory Pointer high byte register could be normally cleared to zero as this would inhibit access to sector 1 where the EEPROM control register exist. Although certainly not necessary, consideration might be given in the application program to the checking of the validity of new write data by a simple read back process. When writing data the WR bit must be set high immediately after the WREN bit has been set high, to ensure the write cycle executes correctly. The global interrupt bit EMI should also be cleared before a write cycle is executed and then re-enabled after the write cycle starts. Note that the device should not enter the IDLE or SLEEP mode until the EEPROM read or write operation is totally complete. Otherwise, the EEPROM read or write operation will fail.

Programming Example

Reading data from the EEPROM – polling method

```
MOV A, EEPROM_ADRES      ; user defined address
MOV EEA, A
MOV A, 040H               ; setup memory pointer low byte MP1L
MOV MP1L, A               ; MP1L points to EEC register
MOV A, 01H                ; setup Memory Pointer high byte MP1H
MOV MP1H, A
SET IAR1.1                ; set RDEN bit, enable read operations
SET IAR1.0                ; start Read Cycle - set RD bit
BACK:
SZ IAR1.0                 ; check for read cycle end
JMP BACK
CLR IAR1                  ; disable EEPROM write
CLR MP1H
MOV A, EED                ; move read data to register
MOV READ_DATA, A
```

Writing Data to the EEPROM – polling method

```
MOV A, EEPROM_ADRES      ; user defined address
MOV EEA, A
MOV A, EEPROM_DATA        ; user defined data
MOV EED, A
MOV A, 040H               ; setup memory pointer low byte MP1L
MOV MP1L, A               ; MP1L points to EEC register
MOV A, 01H                ; setup Memory Pointer high byte MP1H
MOV MP1H, A
CLR EMI
SET IAR1.3                ; set WREN bit, enable write operations
SET IAR1.2                ; start Write Cycle - set WR bit
SET EMI
BACK:
SZ IAR1.2                 ; check for write cycle end
JMP BACK
CLR IAR1                  ; disable EEPROM write
CLR MP1H
```

Oscillators

Various oscillator types offer the user a wide range of functions according to their various application requirements. The flexible features of the oscillator functions ensure that the best optimisation can be achieved in terms of speed and power saving. Oscillator selections and operation are selected through a combination of application program and relevant control registers.

Oscillator Overview

In addition to being the source of the main system clock the oscillators also provide clock sources for the Watchdog Timer and Time Base Interrupts. External oscillators requiring some external components as well as fully integrated internal oscillators, requiring no external components, are provided to form a wide range of both fast and slow system oscillators. All oscillator options are selected through register programming. The higher frequency oscillators provide higher performance but carry with it the disadvantage of higher power requirements, while the opposite is of course true for the lower frequency oscillators. With the capability of dynamically switching between fast and slow system clock, each device has the flexibility to optimize the performance/power ratio, a feature especially important in power sensitive portable applications.

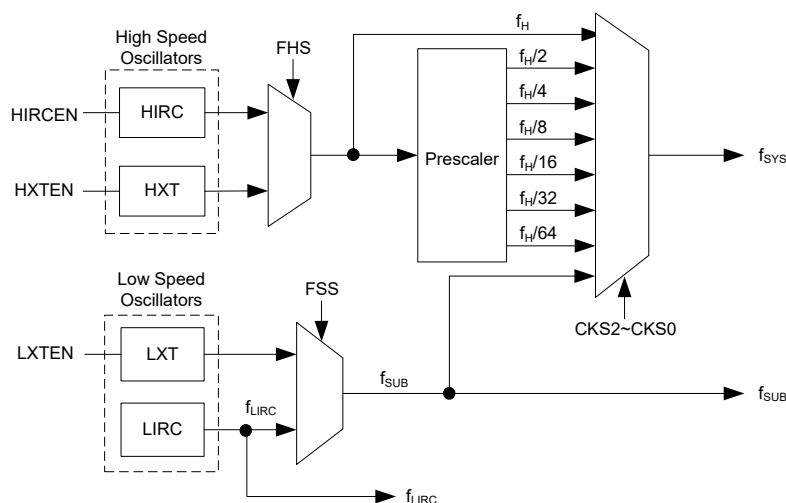
Type	Name	Frequency	Pins
External High Speed Crystal	HXT	400kHz~16MHz	OSC1/OSC2
Internal High Speed RC	HIRC	8/12/16MHz	—
External Low Speed Crystal	LXT	32.768kHz	XT1/XT2
Internal Low Speed RC	LIRC	32kHz	—

Oscillator Types

System Clock Configurations

There are four methods of generating the system clock, two high speed oscillators for all devices and two low speed oscillators. The high speed oscillator is the external crystal/ceramic oscillator, HXT, and the internal 8/12/16MHz RC oscillator, HIRC. The two low speed oscillators are the internal 32kHz RC oscillator, LIRC, and the external 32.768 kHz crystal oscillator, LXT. Selecting whether the low or high speed oscillator is used as the system oscillator is implemented using the CKS2~CKS0 bits in the SCC register and as the system clock can be dynamically selected.

The actual source clock used for the low speed oscillators is chosen via the FSS bit in the SCC register while for the high speed oscillator the source clock is selected by the FHS bit in the SCC register. The frequency of the slow speed or high speed system clock is determined using the CKS2~CKS0 bits in the SCC register. Note that two oscillator selections must be made namely one high speed and one low speed system oscillators. It is not possible to choose a no-oscillator selection for either the high or low speed oscillator.

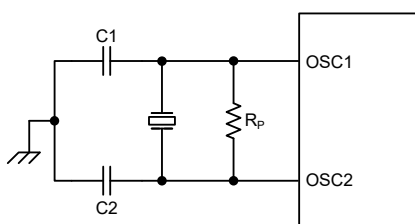


System Clock Configurations

External Crystal/Ceramic Oscillator – HXT

The External Crystal/Ceramic System Oscillator is the high frequency oscillator, which is the default oscillator clock source after power on. For most crystal oscillator configurations, the simple connection of a crystal across OSC1 and OSC2 will create the necessary phase shift and feedback for oscillation, without requiring external capacitors. However, for some crystal types and frequencies, to ensure oscillation, it may be necessary to add two small value capacitors, C1 and C2. Using a ceramic resonator will usually require two small value capacitors, C1 and C2, to be connected as shown for oscillation to occur. The values of C1 and C2 should be selected in consultation with the crystal or resonator manufacturer's specification.

For oscillator stability and to minimise the effects of noise and crosstalk, it is important to ensure that the crystal and any associated resistors and capacitors along with interconnecting lines are all located as close to the MCU as possible.



- Note: 1. R_p is normally not required. C1 and C2 are required.
 2. Although not shown OSC1/OSC2 pins have a parasitic capacitance of around 7pF.

Crystal/Resonator Oscillator

HXT Oscillator C1 and C2 Values		
Crystal Frequency	C1	C2
12MHz	0 pF	0 pF
8MHz	0 pF	0 pF
4MHz	0 pF	0 pF
1MHz	100 pF	100 pF

Note: C1 and C2 values are for guidance only.

Crystal Recommended Capacitor Values

Internal High Speed RC Oscillator – HIRC

The internal RC oscillator is a fully integrated system oscillator requiring no external components. The internal RC oscillator has a fixed frequency of 8/12/16 MHz. Device trimming during the manufacturing process and the inclusion of internal frequency compensation circuits are used to ensure that the influence of the power supply voltage, temperature and process variations on the oscillation frequency are minimised. As a result, at a power supply of 3V or 5V and at a temperature of 25°C degrees, the fixed oscillation frequency of 12MHz will have a tolerance within 2%. Note that if this internal system clock option is selected, as it requires no external pins for its operation, I/O pins are free for use as normal I/O pins.

External 32.768 kHz Crystal Oscillator – LXT

The External 32.768 kHz Crystal System Oscillator is one of the low frequency oscillator choices, which is selected via a software control bit, FSS. This clock source has a fixed frequency of 32.768kHz and requires a 32.768 kHz crystal to be connected between pins XT1 and XT2. The external resistor and capacitor components connected to the 32.768 kHz crystal are necessary to provide oscillation. For applications where precise frequencies are essential, these components may be required to provide frequency compensation due to different crystal manufacturing tolerances. After the LXT oscillator is enabled by setting the LXTEN bit to 1, there is a time delay associated with the LXT oscillator waiting for it to start-up.

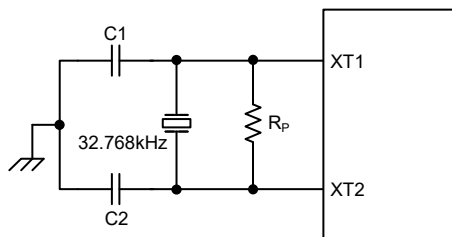
When the microcontroller enters the SLEEP or IDLE Mode, the system clock is switched off to stop microcontroller activity and to conserve power. However, in many microcontroller applications it may be necessary to keep the internal timers operational even when the microcontroller is in the SLEEP or IDLE Mode. To do this, another clock, independent of the system clock, must be provided.

However, for some crystals, to ensure oscillation and accurate frequency generation, it is necessary to add two small value external capacitors, C1 and C2. The exact values of C1 and C2 should be selected in consultation with the crystal or resonator manufacturer's specification. The external parallel feedback resistor, R_p, is required.

The pin-shared software control bits determine if the XT1/XT2 pins are used for the LXT oscillator or as I/O or other pin-shared functional pins.

- If the LXT oscillator is not used for any clock source, the XT1/XT2 pins can be used as normal I/O or other pin-shared functional pins.
- If the LXT oscillator is used for any clock source, the 32.768 kHz crystal should be connected to the XT1/XT2 pins.

For oscillator stability and to minimise the effects of noise and crosstalk, it is important to ensure that the crystal and any associated resistors and capacitors along with interconnecting lines are all located as close to the MCU as possible.



- Note: 1. R_p, C1 and C2 are required.
 2. Although not shown XT1/XT2 pins have a parasitic capacitance of around 7pF.

External LXT Oscillator

LXT Oscillator Low Power Function

The LXT oscillator can function in one of two modes, the Speed-Up Mode and the Low-Power Mode. The mode selection is executed using the LXTSP bit in the LXTC register.

LXTSP	LXT Operating Mode
0	Low-Power
1	Speed-Up

When the LXTSP bit is set to high, the LXT Quick Start Mode will be enabled. In the Speed-Up Mode the LXT oscillator will power up and stabilise quickly. However, after the LXT oscillator has fully powered up, it can be placed into the Low-Power Mode by clearing the LXTSP bit to zero and the oscillator will continue to run but with reduced current consumption. It is important to note that the LXT operating mode switching must be properly controlled before the LXT oscillator clock is selected as the system clock source. Once the LXT oscillator clock is selected as the system clock source using the CKS bit field and FSS bit in the SCC register, the LXT oscillator operating mode can not be changed.

It should be note that no matter what condition the LXTSP is set to the LXT oscillator will always function normally. The only difference is that it will take more time to start up if in the Low Power Mode.

Internal 32kHz Oscillator – LIRC

The Internal 32 kHz System Oscillator is one of the low frequency oscillator choices, which is selected via a software control bit, FSS. It is a fully integrated RC oscillator with a typical frequency of 32 kHz at 5V, requiring no external components for its implementation. Device trimming during the manufacturing process and the inclusion of internal frequency compensation circuits are used to ensure that the influence of the power supply voltage, temperature and process variations on the oscillation frequency are minimised. As a result, at a power supply of 5V and at a temperature of 25°C degrees, the fixed oscillation frequency of 32 kHz will have a tolerance within 10%.

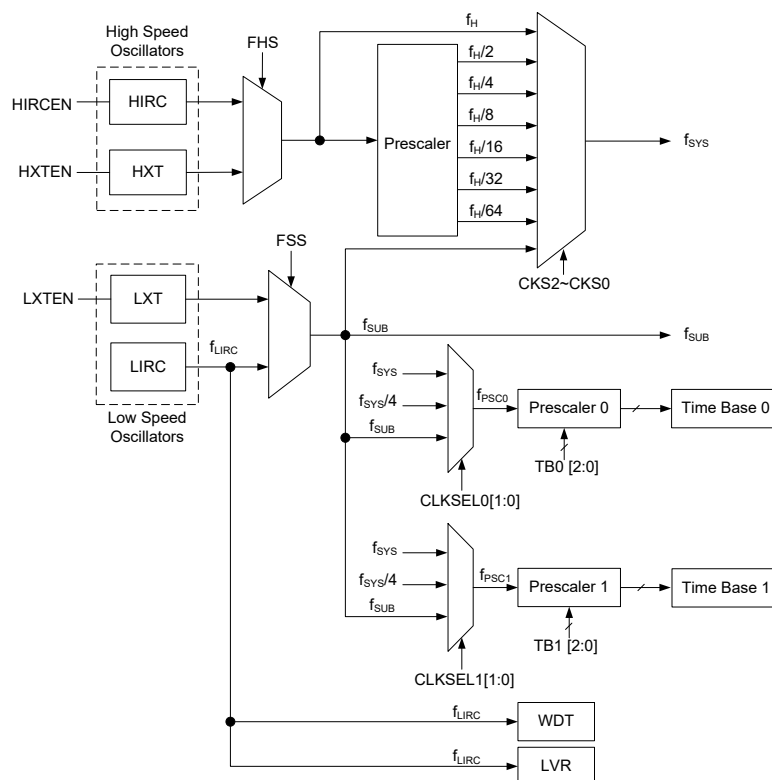
Operating Modes and System Clocks

Present day applications require that their microcontrollers have high performance but often still demand that they consume as little power as possible, conflicting requirements that are especially true in battery powered portable applications. The fast clocks required for high performance will by their nature increase current consumption and of course vice-versa, lower speed clocks reduce current consumption. As Holtek has provided these devices with both high and low speed clock sources and the means to switch between them dynamically, the user can optimise the operation of their microcontroller to achieve the best performance/power ratio.

System Clocks

Each device has different clock sources for both the CPU and peripheral function operation. By providing the user with a wide range of clock selections using register programming, a clock system can be configured to obtain maximum application performance.

The main system clock, can come from either a high frequency, f_H , or low frequency, f_{SUB} , source, and is selected using the CKS2~CKS0 bits in the SCC register. The high speed system clock is sourced from an HXT or HIRC oscillator, selected via configuring the FHS bit in the SCC register. The low speed system clock source can be sourced from the internal clock f_{SUB} . If f_{SUB} is selected then it can be sourced by either the LXT or LIRC oscillators, selected via configuring the FSS bit in the SCC register. The other choice, which is a divided version of the high speed system oscillator has a range of $f_H/2 \sim f_H/64$.



Device Clock Configurations

Note: When the system clock source f_{SYS} is switched to f_{SUB} from f_H , the high speed oscillation can be stopped to conserve the power or continue to oscillate to provide the clock source, $f_H \sim f_H/64$, for peripheral circuit to use, which is determined by configuring the corresponding high speed oscillator enable control bit.

System Operation Modes

There are six different modes of operation for the microcontroller, each one with its own special characteristics and which can be chosen according to the specific performance and power requirements of the application. There are two modes allowing normal operation of the microcontroller, the NORMAL Mode and SLOW Mode. The remaining four modes, the SLEEP, IDLE0, IDLE1 and IDLE2 Mode are used when the microcontroller CPU is switched off to conserve power.

Operation Mode	CPU	Register Setting			f_{SYS}	f_H	f_{SUB}	f_{LIRC}
		FHIDEN	FSIDEN	CKS2~CKS0				
NORMAL	On	x	x	000~110	$f_H \sim f_H/64$	On	On	On
SLOW	On	x	x	111	f_{SUB}	On/Off ⁽¹⁾	On	On
IDLE0	Off	0	1	000~110	Off	Off	On	On
				111	On			
IDLE1	Off	1	1	xxx	On	On	On	On
IDLE2	Off	1	0	000~110	On	On	Off	On
				111	Off			
SLEEP	Off	0	0	xxx	Off	Off	Off	On ⁽²⁾

Note: 1. The f_H clock will be switched on or off by configuring the corresponding oscillator enable bit in the SLOW mode.

2. The f_{LIRC} clock will be switched on since the WDT function is always enabled.

NORMAL Mode

As the name suggests this is one of the main operating modes where the microcontroller has all of its functions operational and where the system clock is provided by one of the high speed oscillators. This mode operates allowing the microcontroller to operate normally with a clock source will come from one of the high speed oscillators, either the HXT or HIRC oscillators. The high speed oscillator will however first be divided by a ratio ranging from 1 to 64, the actual ratio being selected by the CKS2~CKS0 bits in the SCC register. Although a high speed oscillator is used, running the microcontroller at a divided clock ratio reduces the operating current.

SLOW Mode

This is also a mode where the microcontroller operates normally although now with a slower speed clock source. The clock source used will be from f_{SUB} . The f_{SUB} clock is derived from either the LIRC or LXT oscillator.

SLEEP Mode

The SLEEP Mode is entered when an HALT instruction is executed and when the FHIDEN and FSIDEN bit are low. In the SLEEP mode the CPU will be stopped. However the f_{LIRC} clock still continues to operate since the WDT function is always enabled.

IDLE0 Mode

The IDLE0 Mode is entered when an HALT instruction is executed and when the FHIDEN bit in the SCC register is low and the FSIDEN bit in the SCC register is high. In the IDLE0 Mode the CPU will be switched off but the low speed oscillator will be turned on to drive some peripheral functions.

IDLE1 Mode

The IDLE1 Mode is entered when an HALT instruction is executed and when the FHIDEN bit in the SCC register is high and the FSIDEN bit in the SCC register is high. In the IDLE1 Mode the CPU will be switched off but both the high and low speed oscillators will be turned on to provide a clock source to keep some peripheral functions operational.

IDLE2 Mode

The IDLE2 Mode is entered when an HALT instruction is executed and when the FHIDEN bit in the SCC register is high and the FSIDEN bit in the SCC register is low. In the IDLE2 Mode the CPU will be switched off but the high speed oscillator will be turned on to provide a clock source to keep some peripheral functions operational.

Control Registers

The registers, SCC, HIRCC, HXTC and LXTC, are used to control the system clock and the corresponding oscillator configurations.

Register Name	Bit							
	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
SCC	CKS2	CKS1	CKS0	—	FHS	FSS	FHIDEN	FSIDEN
HIRCC	—	—	—	—	HIRC1	HIRC0	HIRCF	HIRCEN
HXTC	—	—	—	—	—	HXTM	HXTF	HXTEN
LXTC	—	—	—	—	—	LXTSP	LXTF	LXTEN

System Operating Mode Control Registers List

• **SCC Register**

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Name	CKS2	CKS1	CKS0	—	FHS	FSS	FHIDEN	FSIDEN
R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	—	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W
POR	0	0	0	—	0	0	0	0

Bit 7~5 **CKS2~CKS0**: System clock selection

000: f_H
001: $f_H/2$
010: $f_H/4$
011: $f_H/8$
100: $f_H/16$
101: $f_H/32$
110: $f_H/64$
111: f_{SUB}

These three bits are used to select which clock is used as the system clock source. In addition to the system clock source directly derived from f_H or f_{SUB} , a divided version of the high speed system oscillator can also be chosen as the system clock source.

Bit 4 Unimplemented, read as 0.

Bit 3 **FHS**: High Frequency clock selection

0: HIRC
1: HXT

Bit 2 **FSS**: Low Frequency clock selection

0: LIRC
1: LXT

Bit 1 **FHIDEN**: High Frequency oscillator control when CPU is switched off

0: Disable
1: Enable

This bit is used to control whether the high speed oscillator is activated or stopped when the CPU is switched off by executing an “HALT” instruction.

Bit 0 **FSIDEN**: Low Frequency oscillator control when CPU is switched off

0: Disable
1: Enable

This bit is used to control whether the low speed oscillator is activated or stopped when the CPU is switched off by executing an “HALT” instruction. The LIRC oscillator is controlled by this bit together with the WDT function enable control when the LIRC is selected to be the low speed oscillator clock source or the WDT function is enabled respectively. If this bit is cleared to 0 but the WDT function is enabled, the LIRC oscillator will also be enabled.

• **HIRCC Register**

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Name	—	—	—	—	HIRC1	HIRC0	HIRCF	HIRCEN
R/W	—	—	—	—	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W
POR	—	—	—	—	0	0	0	1

Bit 7~4 Unimplemented, read as 0.

Bit 3~2 **HIRC1~HIRC0**: HIRC frequency selection

00: 8 MHz
01: 12 MHz
10: 16 MHz
11: 8 MHz

When the HIRC oscillator is enabled or the HIRC frequency selection is changed by application program, the clock frequency will automatically be changed after the HIRCF flag is set to 1.

- Bit 1 **HIRCF**: HIRC oscillator stable flag
 0: HIRC unstable
 1: HIRC stable
 This bit is used to indicate whether the HIRC oscillator is stable or not. When the HIRCEN bit is set to 1 to enable the HIRC oscillator or the HIRC frequency selection is changed by application program, the HIRCF bit will first be cleared to 0 and then set to 1 after the HIRC oscillator is stable.
- Bit 0 **HIRCEN**: HIRC oscillator enable control
 0: Disable
 1: Enable

• **HXTC Register**

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Name	—	—	—	—	—	HXTM	HXTF	HXTEN
R/W	—	—	—	—	—	R/W	R	R/W
POR	—	—	—	—	—	0	0	0

- Bit 7~3 Unimplemented, read as 0.
- Bit 2 **HXTM**: HXT mode selection
 0: HXT frequency ≤ 10 MHz
 1: HXT frequency >10 MHz
 This bit is used to select the HXT oscillator operating mode. Note that this bit must be properly configured before the HXT is enabled. When the HXTEN bit is set to 1 to enable the HXT oscillator, it is invalid to change the value of this bit.
- Bit 1 **HXTF**: HXT oscillator stable flag
 0: HXT unstable
 1: HXT stable
 This bit is used to indicate whether the HXT oscillator is stable or not. When the HXTEN bit is set to 1 to enable the HXT oscillator, the HXTF bit will first be cleared to 0 and then set to 1 after the HXT oscillator is stable.
- Bit 0 **HXTEN**: HXT oscillator enable control
 0: Disable
 1: Enable

• **LXTC Register**

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Name	—	—	—	—	—	LXTSP	LXTF	LXTEN
R/W	—	—	—	—	—	RW	R	R/W
POR	—	—	—	—	—	0	0	0

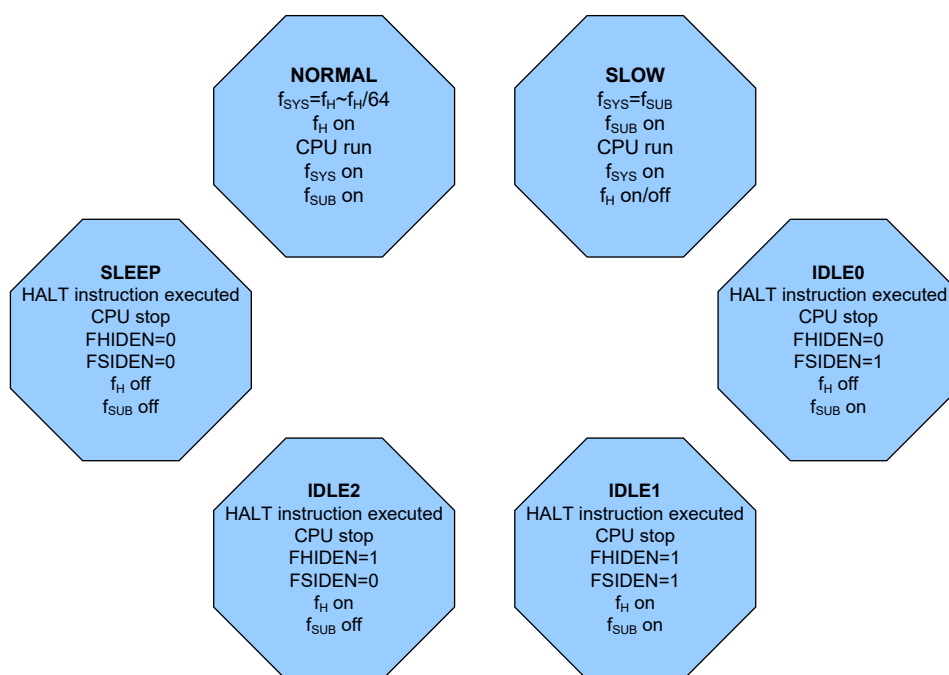
- Bit 7~3 Unimplemented, read as 0.
- Bit 2 **LXTSP**: LXT oscillator speed-up control
 0: Disable – Low power
 1: Enable – Speed up
 This bit is used to control whether the LXT oscillator is operating in the low power or quick start mode. When the LXTSP bit is set to 1, the LXT oscillator will oscillate quickly but consume more power. If the LXTSP bit is cleared to 0, the LXT oscillator will consume less power but take longer time to stabilise. It is important to note that this bit can not be changed after the LXT oscillator is selected as the system clock source using the CKS2~CKS0 and FSS bits in the SCC register.
- Bit 1 **LXTF**: LXT oscillator stable flag
 0: LXT unstable
 1: LXT stable
 This bit is used to indicate whether the LXT oscillator is stable or not. When the LXTEN bit is set to 1 to enable the LXT oscillator, the LXTF bit will first be cleared to 0 and then set to 1 after the LXT oscillator is stable.

Bit 0 **LXTEN**: LXT oscillator enable control
 0: Disable
 1: Enable

Operating Mode Switching

These devices can switch between operating modes dynamically allowing the user to select the best performance/power ratio for the present task in hand. In this way microcontroller operations that do not require high performance can be executed using slower clocks thus requiring less operating current and prolonging battery life in portable applications.

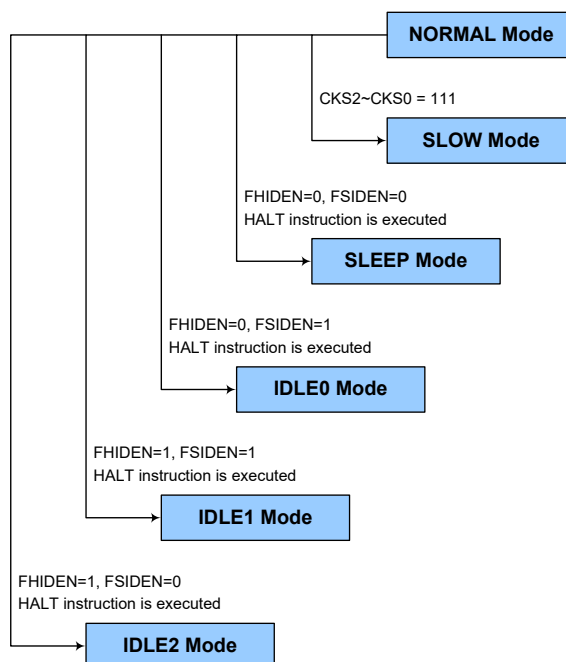
In simple terms, Mode Switching between the NORMAL Mode and SLOW Mode is executed using the CKS2~CKS0 bits in the SCC register while Mode Switching from the NORMAL/SLOW Modes to the SLEEP/IDLE Modes is executed via the HALT instruction. When an HALT instruction is executed, whether the device enters the IDLE Mode or the SLEEP Mode is determined by the condition of the FHIDEN and FSIDEN bits in the SCC register.



NORMAL Mode to SLOW Mode Switching

When running in the NORMAL Mode, which uses the high speed system oscillator, and therefore consumes more power, the system clock can switch to run in the SLOW Mode by set the CKS2~CKS0 bits to “111” in the SCC register. This will then use the low speed system oscillator which will consume less power. Users may decide to do this for certain operations which do not require high performance and can subsequently reduce power consumption.

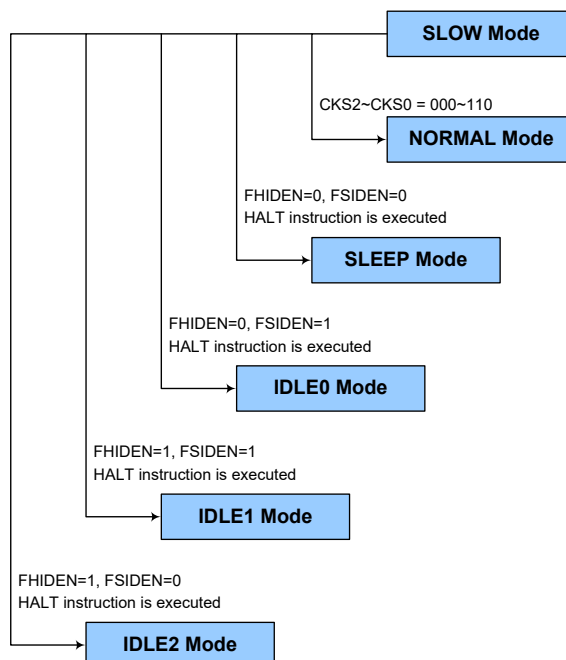
The SLOW Mode is sourced from the LXT or LIRC oscillator determined by the FSS bit in the SCC register and therefore requires this oscillator to be stable before full mode switching occurs.



SLOW Mode to NORMAL Mode Switching

In SLOW mode the system clock is derived from f_{SUB} . When system clock is switched back to the NORMAL mode from f_{SUB} , the CKS2~CKS0 bits should be set to “000” ~ “110” and then the system clock will respectively be switched to $f_H \sim f_H/64$.

However, if f_H is not used in SLOW mode and thus switched off, it will take some time to re-oscillate and stabilise when switching to the NORMAL mode from the SLOW Mode. This is monitored using the HXTF bit in the HXTC register or the HIRCF bit in the HIRCC register. The time duration required for the high speed system oscillator stabilization is specified in the A.C. characteristics.



Entering the SLEEP Mode

There is only one way for the device to enter the SLEEP Mode and that is to execute the “HALT” instruction in the application program with both the FHIDEN and FSIDEN bits in the SCC register equal to “0”. In this mode all the clocks and functions will be switched off except the WDT function. When this instruction is executed under the conditions described above, the following will occur:

- The system clock will be stopped and the application program will stop at the "HALT" instruction.
- The Data Memory contents and registers will maintain their present condition.
- The I/O ports will maintain their present conditions.
- In the status register, the Power Down flag PDF will be set, and WDT timeout flag TO will be cleared.
- The WDT will be cleared and resume counting as the WDT function is always enabled.

Entering the IDLE0 Mode

There is only one way for the device to enter the IDLE0 Mode and that is to execute the “HALT” instruction in the application program with the FHIDEN bit in the SCC register equal to “0” and the FSIDEN bit in the SCC register equal to “1”. When this instruction is executed under the conditions described above, the following will occur:

- The f_H clock will be stopped and the application program will stop at the “HALT” instruction, but the f_{SUB} clock will be on.
- The Data Memory contents and registers will maintain their present condition.
- The I/O ports will maintain their present conditions.
- In the status register, the Power Down flag PDF will be set, and WDT timeout flag TO will be cleared.
- The WDT will be cleared and resume counting as the WDT function is always enabled.

Entering the IDLE1 Mode

There is only one way for the device to enter the IDLE1 Mode and that is to execute the “HALT” instruction in the application program with both the FHIDEN and FSIDEN bits in the SCC register equal to “1”. When this instruction is executed under the conditions described above, the following will occur:

- The f_H and f_{SUB} clocks will be on but the application program will stop at the “HALT” instruction.
- The Data Memory contents and registers will maintain their present condition.
- The I/O ports will maintain their present conditions.
- In the status register, the Power Down flag PDF will be set, and WDT timeout flag TO will be cleared.
- The WDT will be cleared and resume counting as the WDT function is always enabled.

Entering the IDLE2 Mode

There is only one way for the device to enter the IDLE2 Mode and that is to execute the “HALT” instruction in the application program with the FHIDEN bit in the SCC register equal to “1” and the FSIDEN bit in the SCC register equal to “0”. When this instruction is executed under the conditions described above, the following will occur:

- The f_H clock will be on but the f_{SUB} clock will be off and the application program will stop at the “HALT” instruction.
- The Data Memory contents and registers will maintain their present condition.

- The I/O ports will maintain their present conditions.
- In the status register, the Power Down flag PDF will be set, and WDT timeout flag TO will be cleared.
- The WDT will be cleared and resume counting as the WDT function is always enabled.

Standby Current Considerations

As the main reason for entering the SLEEP or IDLE Mode is to keep the current consumption of the device to as low a value as possible, perhaps only in the order of several micro-amps except in the IDLE1 and IDLE2 Mode, there are other considerations which must also be taken into account by the circuit designer if the power consumption is to be minimised. Special attention must be made to the I/O pins on the device. All high-impedance input pins must be connected to either a fixed high or low level as any floating input pins could create internal oscillations and result in increased current consumption. This also applies to devices which have different package types, as there may be unbonded pins. These must either be setup as outputs or if setup as inputs must have pull-high resistors connected.

Care must also be taken with the loads, which are connected to I/O pins, which are setup as outputs. These should be placed in a condition in which minimum current is drawn or connected only to external circuits that do not draw current, such as other CMOS inputs. Also note that additional standby current will also be required if the LIRC oscillator has enabled.

In the IDLE1 and IDLE 2 Mode the high speed oscillator is on, if the peripheral function clock source is derived from the high speed oscillator, the additional standby current will also be perhaps in the order of several hundred micro-amps.

Wake-up

To minimise power consumption the device can enter the SLEEP or any IDLE Mode, where the CPU will be switched off. However, when the device is woken up again, it will take a considerable time for the original system oscillator to restart, stabilise and allow normal operation to resume.

After the system enters the SLEEP or IDLE Mode, it can be woken up from one of various sources listed as follows:

- An external falling edge on Port A
- A system interrupt
- A WDT overflow

When the device executes the “HALT” instruction, the PDF flag will be set to 1. The PDF flag will be cleared to 0 if the device experiences a system power-up or executes the clear Watchdog Timer instruction. If the system is woken up by a WDT overflow, a Watchdog Timer reset will be initiated and the TO flag will be set to 1. The TO flag is set if a WDT time-out occurs and causes a wake-up that only resets the Program Counter and Stack Pointer, other flags remain in their original status.

Each pin on Port A can be setup using the PAWU register to permit a negative transition on the pin to wake up the system. When a Port A pin wake-up occurs, the program will resume execution at the instruction following the “HALT” instruction. If the system is woken up by an interrupt, then two possible situations may occur. The first is where the related interrupt is disabled or the interrupt is enabled but the stack is full, in which case the program will resume execution at the instruction following the “HALT” instruction. In this situation, the interrupt which woke up the device will not be immediately serviced, but will rather be serviced later when the related interrupt is finally enabled or when a stack level becomes free. The other situation is where the related interrupt is enabled and the stack is not full, in which case the regular interrupt response takes place. If an interrupt request flag is set high before entering the SLEEP or IDLE Mode, the wake-up function of the related interrupt will be disabled.

Watchdog Timer

The Watchdog Timer is provided to prevent program malfunctions or sequences from jumping to unknown locations, due to certain uncontrollable external events such as electrical noise.

Watchdog Timer Clock Source

The Watchdog Timer clock source is provided by the internal RC oscillator, f_{LIRC} . The LIRC internal oscillator has an approximate frequency of 32 kHz and this specified internal clock period can vary with V_{DD} , temperature and process variations. The Watchdog Timer source clock is then subdivided by a ratio of 2^8 to 2^{18} to give longer timeouts, the actual value being chosen using the WS2~WS0 bits in the WDTC register.

Watchdog Timer Control Register

A single register, WDTC, controls the required timeout period as well as the enable/disable operation. This register controls the overall operation of the Watchdog Timer.

• WDTC Register

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Name	WE4	WE3	WE2	WE1	WE0	WS2	WS1	WS0
R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W
POR	0	1	0	1	0	0	1	1

Bit 7~3 **WE4~WE0**: WDT function enable control

10101 or 01010: Enabled

Other values: Reset MCU

If these bits are changed due to adverse environmental conditions, the microcontroller will be reset. The reset operation will be activated after 2~3 LIRC clock cycles and the WRF bit in the RSTFC register will be set to 1.

Bit 2~0 **WS2~WS0**: WDT time-out period selection

000: $2^8/f_{LIRC}$

001: $2^{10}/f_{LIRC}$

010: $2^{12}/f_{LIRC}$

011: $2^{14}/f_{LIRC}$

100: $2^{15}/f_{LIRC}$

101: $2^{16}/f_{LIRC}$

110: $2^{17}/f_{LIRC}$

111: $2^{18}/f_{LIRC}$

These three bits determine the division ratio of the watchdog timer source clock, which in turn determines the time-out period.

• RSTFC Register

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Name	—	—	—	—	RSTF	LVRF	LRF	WRF
R/W	—	—	—	—	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W
POR	—	—	—	—	0	x	0	0

“x”: unknown

Bit 7~4 Unimplemented, read as “0”

Bit 3 **RSTF**: Reset control register software reset flag

Described elsewhere.

Bit 2 **LVRF**: LVR function reset flag

Described elsewhere.

- Bit 1 **LRF**: LVR control register software reset flag
Described elsewhere.
- Bit 0 **WRF**: WDT control register software reset flag
0: Not occurred
1: Occurred
- This bit is set to 1 by the WDT control register software reset and cleared by the application program. Note that this bit can only be cleared to 0 by the application program.

Watchdog Timer Operation

The Watchdog Timer operates by providing a device reset when its timer overflows. This means that in the application program and during normal operation the user has to strategically clear the Watchdog Timer before it overflows to prevent the Watchdog Timer from executing a reset. This is done using the clear watchdog instruction. If the program malfunctions for whatever reason, jumps to an unknown location, or enters an endless loop, the clear instruction will not be executed in the correct manner, in which case the Watchdog Timer will overflow and reset the device. With regard to the Watchdog Timer enable/disable function, there are five bits, WE4~WE0, in the WDTC register to offer the enable/disable control and reset control of the Watchdog Timer. The WDT function will be enabled when the WE4~WE0 bits are set to a value of 01010B or 10101B. If the WE4~WE0 bits are set to any other values, other than 01010B and 10101B, it will reset the device after 2~3 f_{LIRC} clock cycles. After power on these bits will have a value of 01010B.

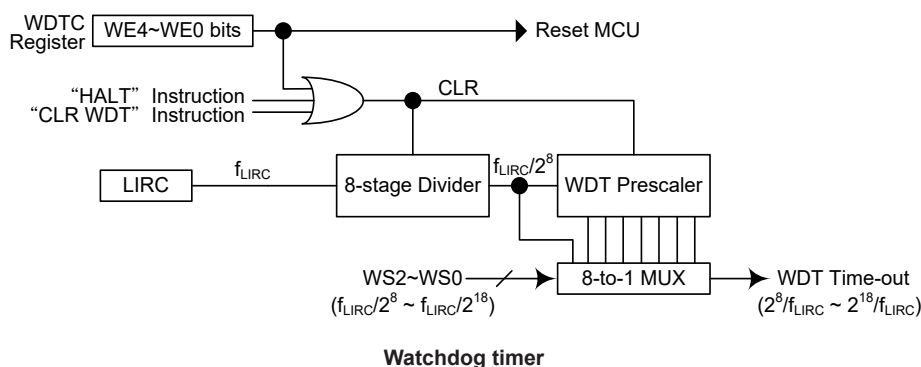
WE4 ~ WE0 Bits	WDT Function
10101B or 01010B	Enable
Any other value	Reset MCU

Watchdog Timer Enable/Disable Control

Under normal program operation, a Watchdog Timer time-out will initialise a device reset and set the status bit TO. However, if the system is in the SLEEP or IDLE Mode, when a Watchdog Timer time-out occurs, the TO bit in the status register will be set and only the Program Counter and Stack Pointer will be reset. Three methods can be adopted to clear the contents of the Watchdog Timer. The first is a WDT reset, which means a certain value except 01010B and 10101B written into the WE4~WE0 field, the second is using the Watchdog Timer software clear instruction and the third is via a HALT instruction.

There is only one method of using software instruction to clear the Watchdog Timer. That is to use the single “CLR WDT” instruction to clear the WDT contents.

The maximum time out period is when the 2^{18} division ratio is selected. As an example, with a 32 kHz LIRC oscillator as its source clock, this will give a maximum watchdog period of around 8 second for the 2^{18} division ratio and a minimum timeout of 7.8ms for the 2^8 division ration.



Reset and Initialisation

A reset function is a fundamental part of any microcontroller ensuring that the device can be set to some predetermined condition irrespective of outside parameters. The most important reset condition is after power is first applied to the microcontroller. In this case, internal circuitry will ensure that the microcontroller, after a short delay, will be in a well defined state and ready to execute the first program instruction. After this power-on reset, certain important internal registers will be set to defined states before the program commences. One of these registers is the Program Counter, which will be reset to zero forcing the microcontroller to begin program execution from the lowest Program Memory address.

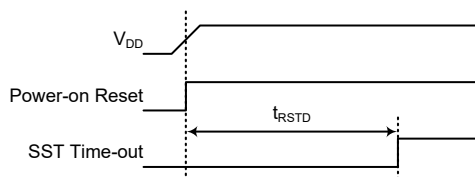
In addition to the power-on reset, another reset exists in the form of a Low Voltage Reset, LVR, where a full reset is implemented in situations where the power supply voltage falls below a certain threshold. Another type of reset is when the Watchdog Timer overflows and resets the microcontroller. All types of reset operations result in different register conditions being setup.

Reset Functions

There are five ways in which a microcontroller reset can occur, through events occurring both internally and externally.

Power-on Reset

The most fundamental and unavoidable reset is the one that occurs after power is first applied to the microcontroller. As well as ensuring that the Program Memory begins execution from the first memory address, a power-on reset also ensures that certain other registers are preset to known conditions. All the I/O port and port control registers will power up in a high condition ensuring that all pins will be first set to inputs.



Note: t_{RSTD} is power-on delay with typical time=50 ms

Power-On Reset Timing Chart

Internal Reset Control

There is an internal reset control register, RSTC, which is used to provide a reset when the device operates abnormally due to the environmental noise interference. If the content of the RSTC register is set to any value other than 01010101B or 10101010B, it will reset the device after 2~3 f_{LIRC} clock cycles. After power on the register will have a value of 01010101B.

RSTC7 ~ RSTC0 Bits	Reset Function
01010101B	No operation
10101010B	No operation
Any other value	Reset MCU

Internal Reset Function Control

• **RSTC Register**

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Name	RSTC7	RSTC6	RSTC5	RSTC4	RSTC3	RSTC2	RSTC1	RSTC0
R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W
POR	0	1	0	1	0	1	0	1

Bit 7~0 **RSTC7~RSTC0**: Reset function control

01010101: No operation

10101010: No operation

Other values: Reset MCU

If these bits are changed due to adverse environmental conditions, the microcontroller will be reset. The reset operation will be activated after 2~3 LIRC clock cycles and the RSTF bit in the RSTFC register will be set to 1.

• **RSTFC Register**

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Name	—	—	—	—	RSTF	LVRF	LRF	WRF
R/W	—	—	—	—	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W
POR	—	—	—	—	0	x	0	0

"x": unknown

Bit 7~4 Unimplemented, read as "0"

Bit 3 **RSTF**: Reset control register software reset flag

0: Not occurred

1: Occurred

This bit is set to 1 by the RSTC control register software reset and cleared by the application program. Note that this bit can only be cleared to 0 by the application program.

Bit 2 **LVRF**: LVR function reset flag

Described elsewhere.

Bit 1 **LRF**: LVR control register software reset flag

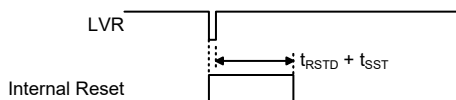
Described elsewhere.

Bit 0 **WRF**: WDT control register software reset flag

Described elsewhere.

Low Voltage Reset – LVR

The microcontroller contains a low voltage reset circuit in order to monitor the supply voltage of the device. The LVR function is always enabled with a specific LVR voltage, V_{LVR} . If the supply voltage of the device drops to within a range of $0.9V \sim V_{LVR}$ such as might occur when changing the battery, the LVR will automatically reset the device internally and the LVRF bit in the RSTFC register will also be set to 1. For a valid LVR signal, a low supply voltage, i.e., a voltage in the range between $0.9V \sim V_{LVR}$ must exist for a time greater than that specified by t_{LVR} in the LVD/LVR characteristics. If the low supply voltage state does not exceed this value, the LVR will ignore the low supply voltage and will not perform a reset function. The actual V_{LVR} value can be selected by the LVS bits in the LVRC register. If the LVS7~LVS0 bits have any other value, which may perhaps occur due to adverse environmental conditions such as noise, the LVR will reset the device after 2~3 f_{LIRC} clock cycles. When this happens, the LRF bit in the RSTFC register will be set to 1. After power on the register will have the value of 01010101B. Note that the LVR function will be automatically disabled when the device enters the power down mode.



Note: t_{RSTD} is power-on delay with typical time=50 ms

Low Voltage Reset Timing Chart

• **LVRC Register**

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Name	LVS7	LVS6	LVS5	LVS4	LVS3	LVS2	LVS1	LVS0
R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W
POR	0	1	0	1	0	1	0	1

Bit 7~0 **LVS7~LVS0**: LVR voltage select

01010101: 2.1V

00110011: 2.55V

10011001: 3.15V

10101010: 3.8V

Other values: Generates a MCU reset – register is reset to POR value

When an actual low voltage condition occurs, as specified by one of the four defined LVR voltage value above, an MCU reset will be generated. The reset operation will be activated after 2~3 f_{LIRC} clock cycles. In this situation the register contents will remain the same after such a reset occurs.

Any register value, other than the four defined register values above, will also result in the generation of an MCU reset. The reset operation will be activated after 2~3 f_{LIRC} clock cycles. However in this situation the register contents will be reset to the POR value.

• **RSTFC Register**

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Name	—	—	—	—	RSTF	LVRF	LRF	WRF
R/W	—	—	—	—	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W
POR	—	—	—	—	0	x	0	0

“x”: unknown

Bit 7~4 Unimplemented, read as “0”

Bit 3 **RSTF**: Reset control register software reset flag

Described elsewhere.

Bit 2 **LVRF**: LVR function reset flag

0: Not occurred

1: Occurred

This bit is set to 1 when a specific low voltage reset condition occurs. Note that this bit can only be cleared to 0 by the application program.

Bit 1 **LRF**: LVR control register software reset flag

0: Not occurred

1: Occurred

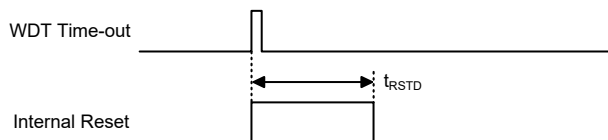
This bit is set to 1 by the LVRC control register contains any undefined LVR voltage register values. This in effect acts like a software-reset function. Note that this bit can only be cleared to 0 by the application program.

Bit 0 **WRF**: WDT control register software reset flag

Described elsewhere.

Watchdog Time-out Reset during Normal Operation

The Watchdog time-out Reset during normal operation is the same as the hardware Low Voltage Reset except that the Watchdog time-out flag TO will be set to “1”.

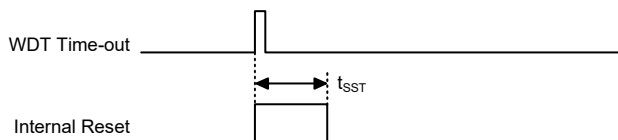


Note: t_{RSTD} is power-on delay with typical time=16.7 ms

WDT Time-out Reset during NORMAL Operation Timing Chart

Watchdog Time-out Reset during SLEEP or IDLE Mode

The Watchdog time-out Reset during SLEEP or IDLE Mode is a little different from other kinds of reset. Most of the conditions remain unchanged except that the Program Counter and the Stack Pointer will be cleared to “0” and the TO flag will be set to “1”. Refer to the A.C. Characteristics for t_{SST} details.



WDT Time-out Reset during SLEEP or IDLE Mode Timing Chart

Reset Initial Conditions

The different types of reset described affect the reset flags in different ways. These flags, known as PDF and TO are located in the status register and are controlled by various microcontroller operations, such as the SLEEP or IDLE Mode function or Watchdog Timer. The reset flags are shown in the table:

TO	PDF	Reset Function
0	0	Power-on reset
u	u	LVR reset during NORMAL or SLOW Mode operation
1	u	WDT time-out reset during NORMAL or SLOW Mode operation
1	1	WDT time-out reset during IDLE or SLEEP Mode operation

“u” stands for unchanged

The following table indicates the way in which the various components of the microcontroller are affected after a power-on reset occurs.

Item	Reset Function
Program Counter	Reset to zero
Interrupts	All interrupts will be disabled
WDT, Time Base	Clear after reset, WDT begins counting
Timer Modules	Timer Modules will be turned off
Input/Output Ports	I/O ports will be setup as inputs
Stack pointer	Stack pointer will point to the top of the stack

The different kinds of resets all affect the internal registers of the microcontroller in different ways. To ensure reliable continuation of normal program execution after a reset occurs, it is important to know what condition the microcontroller is in after a particular reset occurs. The following table describes how each type of reset affects the microcontroller internal registers.

Register	BS67F340	BS67F350	BS67F360	BS67F370	Reset (Power On)	LVR Reset (Normal Operation)	WDT Time-out (Normal Operation)	WDT Time-out (IDLE or SLEEP)*
IAR0	•	•	•	•	0000 0000	0000 0000	0000 0000	uuuu uuuu
MP0	•	•	•	•	0000 0000	0000 0000	0000 0000	uuuu uuuu
IAR1	•	•	•	•	0000 0000	0000 0000	0000 0000	uuuu uuuu
MP1L	•	•	•	•	0000 0000	0000 0000	0000 0000	uuuu uuuu
MP1H	•	•	•	•	0000 0000	0000 0000	0000 0000	uuuu uuuu
ACC	•	•	•	•	xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu	uuuu uuuu	uuuu uuuu
PCL	•	•	•	•	0000 0000	0000 0000	0000 0000	0000 0000
TBLP	•	•	•	•	xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu	uuuu uuuu	uuuu uuuu
TBLH	•	•	•	•	xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu	uuuu uuuu	uuuu uuuu
TBHP	•				---- xxxx	---- uuuu	---- uuuu	---- uuuu
		•			---x xxxx	---u uuuu	---u uuuu	---u uuuu
			•		--xx xxxx	--uu uuuu	--uu uuuu	--uu uuuu
				•	-xxx xxxx	-uuu uuuu	-uuu uuuu	-uuu uuuu
STATUS	•	•	•	•	xx00 xxxx	uuuu uuuu	xx1u uuuu	uu11 uuuu
PBP			•		---- --0	---- --0	---- --0	---- --u
				•	---- --00	---- --00	---- --00	---- --uu
IAR2	•	•	•	•	0000 0000	0000 0000	0000 0000	uuuu uuuu
MP2L	•	•	•	•	0000 0000	0000 0000	0000 0000	uuuu uuuu
MP2H	•	•	•	•	0000 0000	0000 0000	0000 0000	uuuu uuuu
RSTFC	•	•	•	•	---- 0x00	---- u1uu	---- uuuu	---- uuuu
INTC0	•	•	•	•	-000 0000	-000 0000	-000 0000	-uuu uuuu
INTC1	•	•	•	•	0000 0000	0000 0000	0000 0000	uuuu uuuu
INTC2	•	•	•	•	0000 0000	0000 0000	0000 0000	uuuu uuuu
PA	•	•	•	•	1111 1111	1111 1111	1111 1111	uuuu uuuu
PAC	•	•	•	•	1111 1111	1111 1111	1111 1111	uuuu uuuu
PAPU	•	•	•	•	0000 0000	0000 0000	0000 0000	uuuu uuuu
PAWU	•	•	•	•	0000 0000	0000 0000	0000 0000	uuuu uuuu
PB	•	•	•	•	1111 1111	1111 1111	1111 1111	uuuu uuuu
PBC	•	•	•	•	1111 1111	1111 1111	1111 1111	uuuu uuuu
PBPU	•	•	•	•	0000 0000	0000 0000	0000 0000	uuuu uuuu
INTEG	•	•	•	•	---- 0000	---- 0000	---- 0000	---- uuuu
SCC	•	•	•	•	000- 0000	000- 0000	000- 0000	uuu- uuuu
HIRCC	•	•	•	•	---- 0001	---- 0001	---- 0001	---- uuuu
HXTC	•	•	•	•	---- -000	---- -000	---- -000	---- -uuu
LXTC	•	•	•	•	---- -000	---- -000	---- -000	---- -uuu
LVDC	•	•	•	•	--00 0000	--00 0000	--00 0000	--uu uuuu
LVRC	•	•	•	•	0101 0101	0101 0101	0101 0101	uuuu uuuu
WDTC	•	•	•	•	0101 0011	0101 0011	0101 0011	uuuu uuuu
RSTC	•	•	•	•	0101 0101	0101 0101	0101 0101	uuuu uuuu
PC	•				---- 1111	---- 1111	---- 1111	---- uuuu
		•	•	•	1111 1111	1111 1111	1111 1111	uuuu uuuu
PCC	•				---- 1111	---- 1111	---- 1111	---- uuuu
		•	•	•	1111 1111	1111 1111	1111 1111	uuuu uuuu
PCPU	•				---- 0000	---- 0000	---- 0000	---- uuuu
		•	•	•	0000 0000	0000 0000	0000 0000	uuuu uuuu

Register	BS67F340	BS67F350	BS67F360	BS67F370	Reset (Power On)	LVR Reset (Normal Operation)	WDT Time-out (Normal Operation)	WDT Time-out (IDLE or SLEEP)*
PD	•				- 111 ----	- 111 ----	- 111 ----	- uuu ----
		•	•	•	- 111 1111	- 111 1111	- 111 1111	- uuu uuuu
PDC	•				- 111 ----	- 111 ----	- 111 ----	- uuu ----
		•	•	•	- 111 1111	- 111 1111	- 111 1111	- uuu uuuu
PDPU	•				- 000 ----	- 000 ----	- 000 ----	- uuu ----
		•	•	•	- 000 0000	- 000 0000	- 000 0000	- uuu uuuu
MF10	•	•	•	•	-- 00 -- 00	-- 00 -- 00	-- 00 -- 00	-- uu -- uu
MF11	•	•	•	•	0000 0000	0000 0000	0000 0000	uuuu uuuu
MF12	•	•	•	•	- 000 - 000	- 000 - 000	- 000 - 000	- uuu - uuu
MF13	•	•	•	•	-- 00 -- 00	-- 00 -- 00	-- 00 -- 00	-- uu -- uu
ADRL (ADRFs=0)	•	•	•	•	x x x x ----	x x x x ----	x x x x ----	u u u u ----
ADRL (ADRFs=1)	•	•	•	•	x x x x x x x x	u u u u u u u u	u u u u u u u u	u u u u u u u u
ADRH (ADRFs=0)	•	•	•	•	x x x x x x x x	u u u u u u u u	u u u u u u u u	u u u u u u u u
ADRH (ADRFs=1)	•	•	•	•	---- x x x x	---- u u u u	---- u u u u	---- u u u u
ADCR0	•	•	•	•	0000 0000	0000 0000	0000 0000	uuuu uuuu
ADCR1	•	•	•	•	0- 00 - 000	0- 00 - 000	0- 00 - 000	u- uu - uuu
PSCR0	•	•	•	•	---- -- 00	---- -- 00	---- -- 00	---- -- uu
TB0C	•	•	•	•	0--- - 000	0--- - 000	0--- - 000	u--- - uuu
TB1C	•	•	•	•	0--- - 000	0--- - 000	0--- - 000	u--- - uuu
SIMTOC	•	•	•	•	0000 0000	0000 0000	0000 0000	uuuu uuuu
SIMC0	•	•	•	•	111- 0000	111- 0000	111- 0000	uuu- uuuu
SIMC1	•	•	•	•	1000 0001	1000 0001	1000 0001	uuuu uuuu
SIMD	•	•	•	•	x x x x x x x x	x x x x x x x x	x x x x x x x x	u u u u u u u u
SIMA/SIMC2	•	•	•	•	0000 0000	0000 0000	0000 0000	uuuu uuuu
CTM0C0	•	•	•	•	0000 0000	0000 0000	0000 0000	uuuu uuuu
CTM0C1	•	•	•	•	0000 0000	0000 0000	0000 0000	uuuu uuuu
CTM0DL	•	•	•	•	0000 0000	0000 0000	0000 0000	uuuu uuuu
CTM0DH	•	•	•	•	---- -- 00	---- -- 00	---- -- 00	---- -- uu
CTM0AL	•	•	•	•	0000 0000	0000 0000	0000 0000	uuuu uuuu
CTM0AH	•	•	•	•	---- -- 00	---- -- 00	---- -- 00	---- -- uu
EEA	•	•	•	•	- 000 0000	- 000 0000	- 000 0000	- uuu uuuu
EED	•	•	•	•	0000 0000	0000 0000	0000 0000	uuuu uuuu
PSCR1	•	•	•	•	---- -- 00	---- -- 00	---- -- 00	---- -- uu
LCDC0	•	•	•	•	0000 0000	0000 0000	0000 0000	uuuu uuuu
LCDC1	•	•	•	•	000- 0000	000- 0000	000- 0000	uuu- uuuu
PTMC0	•	•	•	•	0000 0---	0000 0---	0000 0---	uuuu u---
PTMC1	•	•	•	•	0000 0000	0000 0000	0000 0000	uuuu uuuu
PTMDL	•	•	•	•	0000 0000	0000 0000	0000 0000	uuuu uuuu
PTMDH	•	•	•	•	---- -- 00	---- -- 00	---- -- 00	---- -- uu
PTMAL	•	•	•	•	0000 0000	0000 0000	0000 0000	uuuu uuuu
PTMAH	•	•	•	•	---- -- 00	---- -- 00	---- -- 00	---- -- uu
PTMRPL	•	•	•	•	0000 0000	0000 0000	0000 0000	uuuu uuuu
PTMRPH	•	•	•	•	---- -- 00	---- -- 00	---- -- 00	---- -- uu
FC0	•	•	•	•	0000 0000	0000 0000	0000 0000	uuuu uuuu
FC1	•	•	•	•	0000 0000	0000 0000	0000 0000	uuuu uuuu

Register	BS67F340	BS67F350	BS67F360	BS67F370	Reset (Power On)	LVR Reset (Normal Operation)	WDT Time-out (Normal Operation)	WDT Time-out (IDLE or SLEEP)*
FC2		•	•	•	---- --0	---- --0	---- --0	---- --u
FARL	•	•	•		0000 0000	0000 0000	0000 0000	uuuu uuuu
FARH	•				---- 0000	---- 0000	---- 0000	---- uuuu
		•			---0 0000	---0 0000	---0 0000	---u uuuu
			•		--00 0000	--00 0000	--00 0000	--uu uuuu
				•	-000 0000	-000 0000	-000 0000	-uuu uuuu
FD0L	•	•	•	•	0000 0000	0000 0000	0000 0000	uuuu uuuu
FD0H	•	•	•	•	0000 0000	0000 0000	0000 0000	uuuu uuuu
FD1L	•	•	•	•	0000 0000	0000 0000	0000 0000	uuuu uuuu
FD1H	•	•	•	•	0000 0000	0000 0000	0000 0000	uuuu uuuu
FD2L	•	•	•	•	0000 0000	0000 0000	0000 0000	uuuu uuuu
FD2H	•	•	•	•	0000 0000	0000 0000	0000 0000	uuuu uuuu
FD3L	•	•	•	•	0000 0000	0000 0000	0000 0000	uuuu uuuu
FD3H	•	•	•	•	0000 0000	0000 0000	0000 0000	uuuu uuuu
STMC0	•	•	•	•	0000 0---	0000 0---	0000 0---	uuuu u---
STMC1	•	•	•	•	0000 0000	0000 0000	0000 0000	uuuu uuuu
STMDL	•	•	•	•	0000 0000	0000 0000	0000 0000	uuuu uuuu
STMDH	•	•	•	•	0000 0000	0000 0000	0000 0000	uuuu uuuu
STMAL	•	•	•	•	0000 0000	0000 0000	0000 0000	uuuu uuuu
STMAH	•	•	•	•	0000 0000	0000 0000	0000 0000	uuuu uuuu
STMRP	•	•	•	•	0000 0000	0000 0000	0000 0000	uuuu uuuu
CTM1C0	•	•	•	•	0000 0000	0000 0000	0000 0000	uuuu uuuu
CTM1C1	•	•	•	•	0000 0000	0000 0000	0000 0000	uuuu uuuu
CTM1DL	•	•	•	•	0000 0000	0000 0000	0000 0000	uuuu uuuu
CTM1DH	•	•	•	•	---- --00	---- --00	---- --00	---- --uu
CTM1AL	•	•	•	•	0000 0000	0000 0000	0000 0000	uuuu uuuu
CTM1AH	•	•	•	•	---- --00	---- --00	---- --00	---- --uu
TSC0	•	•	•	•	010- ----	010- ----	010- ----	uuu- ----
TSC1	•	•	•	•	000- ----	000- ----	000- ----	uuu- ----
TSC2		•	•	•	0000 0000	0000 0000	0000 0000	uuuu uuuu
TSC3	•	•	•	•	--0- ----	--0- ----	--0- ----	--u- ----
PE	•	•	•	•	1111 1111	1111 1111	1111 1111	uuuu uuuu
PEC	•	•	•	•	1111 1111	1111 1111	1111 1111	uuuu uuuu
PEPU	•	•	•	•	0000 0000	0000 0000	0000 0000	uuuu uuuu
PF			•	•	---- 1111	---- 1111	---- 1111	---- uuuu
PFC			•	•	---- 1111	---- 1111	---- 1111	---- uuuu
PFPU			•	•	---- 0000	---- 0000	---- 0000	---- uuuu
USR	•	•	•	•	0000 1011	0000 1011	0000 1011	uuuu uuuu
UCR1	•	•	•	•	0000 00x0	0000 00x0	0000 00x0	uuuu uuuu
UCR2	•	•	•	•	0000 0000	0000 0000	0000 0000	uuuu uuuu
TXR_RXR	•	•	•	•	xxxx xxxx	xxxx xxxx	xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu
BRG	•	•	•	•	xxxx xxxx	xxxx xxxx	xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu
PG				•	1111 1111	1111 1111	1111 1111	uuuu uuuu
PGC				•	1111 1111	1111 1111	1111 1111	uuuu uuuu
PGPU				•	0000 0000	0000 0000	0000 0000	uuuu uuuu

Register	BS67F340	BS67F350	BS67F360	BS67F370	Reset (Power On)	LVR Reset (Normal Operation)	WDT Time-out (Normal Operation)	WDT Time-out (IDLE or SLEEP)*
TKTMR	•	•	•	•	0000 0000	0000 0000	0000 0000	uuuu uuuu
TKC0	•	•	•	•	0000 0-00	0000 0-00	0000 0-00	uuuu u-uu
TK16DL	•	•	•	•	0000 0000	0000 0000	0000 0000	uuuu uuuu
TK16DH	•	•	•	•	0000 0000	0000 0000	0000 0000	uuuu uuuu
TKC1	•	•	•	•	0000 0011	0000 0011	0000 0011	uuuu uuuu
TKM016DL	•	•	•	•	0000 0000	0000 0000	0000 0000	uuuu uuuu
TKM016DH	•	•	•	•	0000 0000	0000 0000	0000 0000	uuuu uuuu
TKM0ROL	•	•	•	•	0000 0000	0000 0000	0000 0000	uuuu uuuu
TKM0ROH	•	•	•	•	---- --00	---- --00	---- --00	---- --uu
TKM0C0	•	•	•	•	--00 0000	--00 0000	--00 0000	--uu uuuu
TKM0C1	•	•	•	•	0-00 0000	0-00 0000	0-00 0000	u-uu uuuu
TKM0C2	•	•	•	•	1110 0100	1110 0100	1110 0100	uuuu uuuu
TKM116DL	•	•	•	•	0000 0000	0000 0000	0000 0000	uuuu uuuu
TKM116DH	•	•	•	•	0000 0000	0000 0000	0000 0000	uuuu uuuu
TKM1ROL	•	•	•	•	0000 0000	0000 0000	0000 0000	uuuu uuuu
TKM1ROH	•	•	•	•	---- --00	---- --00	---- --00	---- --uu
TKM1C0	•	•	•	•	--00 0000	--00 0000	--00 0000	--uu uuuu
TKM1C1	•	•	•	•	0-00 0000	0-00 0000	0-00 0000	u-uu uuuu
TKM1C2	•	•	•	•	1110 0100	1110 0100	1110 0100	uuuu uuuu
TKM216DL	•	•	•	•	0000 0000	0000 0000	0000 0000	uuuu uuuu
TKM216DH	•	•	•	•	0000 0000	0000 0000	0000 0000	uuuu uuuu
TKM2ROL	•	•	•	•	0000 0000	0000 0000	0000 0000	uuuu uuuu
TKM2ROH	•	•	•	•	---- --00	---- --00	---- --00	---- --uu
TKM2C0	•	•	•	•	--00 0000	--00 0000	--00 0000	--uu uuuu
TKM2C1	•	•	•	•	0-00 0000	0-00 0000	0-00 0000	u-uu uuuu
TKM2C2	•	•	•	•	1110 0100	1110 0100	1110 0100	uuuu uuuu
TKM316DL	•	•	•	•	0000 0000	0000 0000	0000 0000	uuuu uuuu
TKM316DH	•	•	•	•	0000 0000	0000 0000	0000 0000	uuuu uuuu
TKM3ROL	•	•	•	•	0000 0000	0000 0000	0000 0000	uuuu uuuu
TKM3ROH	•	•	•	•	---- --00	---- --00	---- --00	---- --uu
TKM3C0	•	•	•	•	--00 0000	--00 0000	--00 0000	--uu uuuu
TKM3C1	•	•	•	•	0-00 0000	0-00 0000	0-00 0000	u-uu uuuu
TKM3C2	•	•	•	•	1110 0100	1110 0100	1110 0100	uuuu uuuu
TKM416DL		•	•	•	0000 0000	0000 0000	0000 0000	uuuu uuuu
TKM416DH		•	•	•	0000 0000	0000 0000	0000 0000	uuuu uuuu
TKM4ROL		•	•	•	0000 0000	0000 0000	0000 0000	uuuu uuuu
TKM4ROH		•	•	•	---- --00	---- --00	---- --00	---- --uu
TKM4C0		•	•	•	--00 0000	--00 0000	--00 0000	--uu uuuu
TKM4C1		•	•	•	0-00 0000	0-00 0000	0-00 0000	u-uu uuuu
TKM4C2		•	•	•	1110 0100	1110 0100	1110 0100	uuuu uuuu
TKM516DL			•	•	0000 0000	0000 0000	0000 0000	uuuu uuuu
TKM516DH			•	•	0000 0000	0000 0000	0000 0000	uuuu uuuu
TKM5ROL			•	•	0000 0000	0000 0000	0000 0000	uuuu uuuu
TKM5ROH			•	•	---- --00	---- --00	---- --00	---- --uu
TKM5C0			•	•	--00 0000	--00 0000	--00 0000	--uu uuuu

Register	BS67F340	BS67F350	BS67F360	BS67F370	Reset (Power On)	LVR Reset (Normal Operation)	WDT Time-out (Normal Operation)	WDT Time-out (IDLE or SLEEP)*
TKM5C1			•	•	0-00 0000	0-00 0000	0-00 0000	u-uu uuuu
TKM5C2			•	•	1110 0100	1110 0100	1110 0100	uuuu uuuu
TKM616DL			•	•	0000 0000	0000 0000	0000 0000	uuuu uuuu
TKM616DH			•	•	0000 0000	0000 0000	0000 0000	uuuu uuuu
TKM6ROL			•	•	0000 0000	0000 0000	0000 0000	uuuu uuuu
TKM6ROH			•	•	---- --00	---- --00	---- --00	---- --uu
TKM6C0			•	•	--00 0000	--00 0000	--00 0000	--uu uuuu
TKM6C1			•	•	0-00 0000	0-00 0000	0-00 0000	u-uu uuuu
TKM6C2			•	•	1110 0100	1110 0100	1110 0100	uuuu uuuu
TKM716DL				•	0000 0000	0000 0000	0000 0000	uuuu uuuu
TKM716DH				•	0000 0000	0000 0000	0000 0000	uuuu uuuu
TKM7ROL				•	0000 0000	0000 0000	0000 0000	uuuu uuuu
TKM7ROH				•	---- --00	---- --00	---- --00	---- --uu
TKM7C0				•	--00 0000	--00 0000	--00 0000	--uu uuuu
TKM7C1				•	0-00 0000	0-00 0000	0-00 0000	u-uu uuuu
TKM7C2				•	1110 0100	1110 0100	1110 0100	uuuu uuuu
EEC	•	•	•	•	---- 0000	---- 0000	---- 0000	---- uuuu
IFS	•	•	•	•	--00 0000	--00 0000	--00 0000	--uu uuuu
PAS0	•	•	•	•	0000 0000	0000 0000	0000 0000	uuuu uuuu
PAS1	•	•	•	•	0000 0000	0000 0000	0000 0000	uuuu uuuu
PBS0	•	•	•	•	0000 0000	0000 0000	0000 0000	uuuu uuuu
PBS1	•	•	•	•	0000 0000	0000 0000	0000 0000	uuuu uuuu
PCS0	•	•	•	•	0000 0000	0000 0000	0000 0000	uuuu uuuu
PCS1		•	•	•	0000 0000	0000 0000	0000 0000	uuuu uuuu
PDS0		•	•	•	0000 0000	0000 0000	0000 0000	uuuu uuuu
PDS1	•	•	•	•	--00 0000	--00 0000	--00 0000	--uu uuuu
PES0	•	•	•	•	0000 0000	0000 0000	0000 0000	uuuu uuuu
PES1	•	•	•	•	0000 0000	0000 0000	0000 0000	uuuu uuuu
PFS0			•	•	0000 0000	0000 0000	0000 0000	uuuu uuuu
PGS0				•	0000 0000	0000 0000	0000 0000	uuuu uuuu
PGS1				•	0000 0000	0000 0000	0000 0000	uuuu uuuu
PHS0				•	0000 0000	0000 0000	0000 0000	uuuu uuuu
PHS1				•	0000 0000	0000 0000	0000 0000	uuuu uuuu
PH				•	1111 1111	1111 1111	1111 1111	uuuu uuuu
PHC				•	1111 1111	1111 1111	1111 1111	uuuu uuuu
PHPU				•	0000 0000	0000 0000	0000 0000	uuuu uuuu
TKM816DL				•	0000 0000	0000 0000	0000 0000	uuuu uuuu
TKM816DH				•	0000 0000	0000 0000	0000 0000	uuuu uuuu
TKM8ROL				•	0000 0000	0000 0000	0000 0000	uuuu uuuu
TKM8ROH				•	---- --00	---- --00	---- --00	---- --uu
TKM8C0				•	--00 0000	--00 0000	--00 0000	--uu uuuu
TKM8C1				•	0-00 0000	0-00 0000	0-00 0000	u-uu uuuu
TKM8C2				•	1110 0100	1110 0100	1110 0100	uuuu uuuu

Note: “u” stands for unchanged
“x” stands for “unknown”
“-“ stands for unimplemented

Input/Output Ports

Holtek microcontrollers offer considerable flexibility on their I/O ports. With the input or output designation of every pin fully under user program control, pull-high selections for all ports and wake-up selections on certain pins, the user is provided with an I/O structure to meet the needs of a wide range of application possibilities.

These devices provide bidirectional input/output lines labeled with port names PA~PH. These I/O ports are mapped to the RAM Data Memory with specific addresses as shown in the Special Purpose Data Memory table. All of these I/O ports can be used for input and output operations. For input operation, these ports are non-latching, which means the inputs must be ready at the T2 rising edge of instruction “MOV A, [m]”, where m denotes the port address. For output operation, all the data is latched and remains unchanged until the output latch is rewritten.

Register Name	Bit							
	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
PA	PA7	PA6	PA5	PA4	PA3	PA2	PA1	PA0
PAC	PAC7	PAC6	PAC5	PAC4	PAC3	PAC2	PAC1	PAC0
PAPU	PAPU7	PAPU6	PAPU5	PAPU4	PAPU3	PAPU2	PAPU1	PAPU0
PAWU	PAWU7	PAWU6	PAWU5	PAWU4	PAWU3	PAWU2	PAWU1	PAWU0
PB	PB7	PB6	PB5	PB4	PB3	PB2	PB1	PB0
PBC	PBC7	PBC6	PBC5	PBC4	PBC3	PBC2	PBC1	PBC0
PBPU	PBPU7	PBPU6	PBPU5	PBPU4	PBPU3	PBPU2	PBPU1	PBPU0
PC	—	—	—	—	PC3	PC2	PC1	PC0
PCC	—	—	—	—	PCC3	PCC2	PCC1	PCC0
PCPU	—	—	—	—	PCPU3	PCPU2	PCPU1	PCPU0
PD	—	PD6	PD5	PD4	—	—	—	—
PDC	—	PDC6	PDC5	PDC4	—	—	—	—
PDPU	—	PDPU6	PDPU5	PDPU4	—	—	—	—
PE	PE7	PE6	PE5	PE4	PE3	PE2	PE1	PE0
PEC	PEC7	PEC6	PEC5	PEC4	PEC3	PEC2	PEC1	PEC0
PEPU	PEPU7	PEPU6	PEPU5	PEPU4	PEPU3	PEPU2	PEPU1	PEPU0

I/O Registers List – BS67F340

Register Name	Bit							
	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
PA	PA7	PA6	PA5	PA4	PA3	PA2	PA1	PA0
PAC	PAC7	PAC6	PAC5	PAC4	PAC3	PAC2	PAC1	PAC0
PAPU	PAPU7	PAPU6	PAPU5	PAPU4	PAPU3	PAPU2	PAPU1	PAPU0
PAWU	PAWU7	PAWU6	PAWU5	PAWU4	PAWU3	PAWU2	PAWU1	PAWU0
PB	PB7	PB6	PB5	PB4	PB3	PB2	PB1	PB0
PBC	PBC7	PBC6	PBC5	PBC4	PBC3	PBC2	PBC1	PBC0
PBPU	PBPU7	PBPU6	PBPU5	PBPU4	PBPU3	PBPU2	PBPU1	PBPU0
PC	PC7	PC6	PC5	PC4	PC3	PC2	PC1	PC0
PCC	PCC7	PCC6	PCC5	PCC4	PCC3	PCC2	PCC1	PCC0
PCPU	PCPU7	PCPU6	PCPU5	PCPU4	PCPU3	PCPU2	PCPU1	PCPU0
PD	—	PD6	PD5	PD4	PD3	PD2	PD1	PD0
PDC	—	PDC6	PDC5	PDC4	PDC3	PDC2	PDC1	PDC0
PDPU	—	PDPU6	PDPU5	PDPU4	PDPU3	PDPU2	PDPU1	PDPU0
PE	PE7	PE6	PE5	PE4	PE3	PE2	PE1	PE0
PEC	PEC7	PEC6	PEC5	PEC4	PEC3	PEC2	PEC1	PEC0
PEPU	PEPU7	PEPU6	PEPU5	PEPU4	PEPU3	PEPU2	PEPU1	PEPU0

I/O Registers List – BS67F350

Register Name	Bit							
	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
PA	PA7	PA6	PA5	PA4	PA3	PA2	PA1	PA0
PAC	PAC7	PAC6	PAC5	PAC4	PAC3	PAC2	PAC1	PAC0
PAPU	PAPU7	PAPU6	PAPU5	PAPU4	PAPU3	PAPU2	PAPU1	PAPU0
PAWU	PAWU7	PAWU6	PAWU5	PAWU4	PAWU3	PAWU2	PAWU1	PAWU0
PB	PB7	PB6	PB5	PB4	PB3	PB2	PB1	PB0
PBC	PBC7	PBC6	PBC5	PBC4	PBC3	PBC2	PBC1	PBC0
PBPU	PBPU7	PBPU6	PBPU5	PBPU4	PBPU3	PBPU2	PBPU1	PBPU0
PC	PC7	PC6	PC5	PC4	PC3	PC2	PC1	PC0
PCC	PCC7	PCC6	PCC5	PCC4	PCC3	PCC2	PCC1	PCC0
PCPU	PCPU7	PCPU6	PCPU5	PCPU4	PCPU3	PCPU2	PCPU1	PCPU0
PD	—	PD6	PD5	PD4	PD3	PD2	PD1	PD0
PDC	—	PDC6	PDC5	PDC4	PDC3	PDC2	PDC1	PDC0
PDPU	—	PDPU6	PDPU5	PDPU4	PDPU3	PDPU2	PDPU1	PDPU0
PE	PE7	PE6	PE5	PE4	PE3	PE2	PE1	PE0
PEC	PEC7	PEC6	PEC5	PEC4	PEC3	PEC2	PEC1	PEC0
PEPU	PEPU7	PEPU6	PEPU5	PEPU4	PEPU3	PEPU2	PEPU1	PEPU0
PF	—	—	—	—	PF3	PF2	PF1	PF0
PFC	—	—	—	—	PFC3	PFC2	PFC1	PFC0
PFPU	—	—	—	—	PFPU3	PFPU2	PFPU1	PFPU0

I/O Registers List – BS67F360

Register Name	Bit							
	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
PA	PA7	PA6	PA5	PA4	PA3	PA2	PA1	PA0
PAC	PAC7	PAC6	PAC5	PAC4	PAC3	PAC2	PAC1	PAC0
PAPU	PAPU7	PAPU6	PAPU5	PAPU4	PAPU3	PAPU2	PAPU1	PAPU0
PAWU	PAWU7	PAWU6	PAWU5	PAWU4	PAWU3	PAWU2	PAWU1	PAWU0
PB	PB7	PB6	PB5	PB4	PB3	PB2	PB1	PB0
PBC	PBC7	PBC6	PBC5	PBC4	PBC3	PBC2	PBC1	PBC0
PBPU	PBPU7	PBPU6	PBPU5	PBPU4	PBPU3	PBPU2	PBPU1	PBPU0
PC	PC7	PC6	PC5	PC4	PC3	PC2	PC1	PC0
PCC	PCC7	PCC6	PCC5	PCC4	PCC3	PCC2	PCC1	PCC0
PCPU	PCPU7	PCPU6	PCPU5	PCPU4	PCPU3	PCPU2	PCPU1	PCPU0
PD	—	PD6	PD5	PD4	PD3	PD2	PD1	PD0
PDC	—	PDC6	PDC5	PDC4	PDC3	PDC2	PDC1	PDC0
PDPU	—	PDPU6	PDPU5	PDPU4	PDPU3	PDPU2	PDPU1	PDPU0
PE	PE7	PE6	PE5	PE4	PE3	PE2	PE1	PE0
PEC	PEC7	PEC6	PEC5	PEC4	PEC3	PEC2	PEC1	PEC0
PEPU	PEPU7	PEPU6	PEPU5	PEPU4	PEPU3	PEPU2	PEPU1	PEPU0
PF	—	—	—	—	PF3	PF2	PF1	PF0
PFC	—	—	—	—	PFC3	PFC2	PFC1	PFC0
PFPU	—	—	—	—	PFPU3	PFPU2	PFPU1	PFPU0
PG	PG7	PG6	PG5	PG4	PG3	PG2	PG1	PG0
PGC	PGC7	PGC6	PGC5	PGC4	PGC3	PGC2	PGC1	PGC0
PGPU	PGPU7	PGPU6	PGPU5	PGPU4	PGPU3	PGPU2	PGPU1	PGPU0
PH	PH7	PH6	PH5	PH4	PH3	PH2	PH1	PH0
PHC	PHC7	PHC6	PHC5	PHC4	PHC3	PHC2	PHC1	PHC0
PHPU	PHPU7	PHPU6	PHPU5	PHPU4	PHPU3	PHPU2	PHPU1	PHPU0

I/O Registers List – BS67F370

“—”: Unimplemented, read as “0”.

PAWUn: Port A Pin wake-up function control

0: Disable

1: Enable

PAPUn/PBPUn/PCPUn/PDPUn/PEPUn/PFPUn/PGPUn/PHPUn: I/O Pin pull-high function control

0: Disable

1: Enable

PAn/PBn/PCn/PDn/PEn/PFn/PGn/PHn: I/O Port Data bit

0: Data 0

1: Data 1

PACn/PBCn/PCCn/PDCn/PECn/PFCn/PGCn/PHCn: I/O Pin type selection

0: Output

1: Input

Pull-high Resistors

Many product applications require pull-high resistors for their switch inputs usually requiring the use of an external resistor. To eliminate the need for these external resistors, all I/O pins, when configured as an input have the capability of being connected to an internal pull-high resistor. These pull-high resistors are selected using the relevant pull-high control registers and are implemented using weak PMOS transistors. Note that the pull-high resistor can be controlled by the relevant pull-high control register only when the pin-shared functional pin is selected as an input or NMOS output. Otherwise, the pull-high resistors can not be enabled.

Port A Wake-up

The HALT instruction forces the microcontroller into the SLEEP or IDLE Mode which preserves power, a feature that is important for battery and other low-power applications. Various methods exist to wake-up the microcontroller, one of which is to change the logic condition on one of the Port A pins from high to low. This function is especially suitable for applications that can be woken up via external switches. Each pin on Port A can be selected individually to have this wake-up feature using the PAWU register. Note that the wake-up function can be controlled by the wake-up control registers only when the pin-shared functional pin is selected as general purpose input/output and the MCU enters the Power down mode.

I/O Port Control Registers

Each Port has its own control register, known as PAC~PHC, which controls the input/output configuration. With this control register, each I/O pin with or without pull-high resistors can be reconfigured dynamically under software control. For the I/O pin to function as an input, the corresponding bit of the control register must be written as a “1”. This will then allow the logic state of the input pin to be directly read by instructions. When the corresponding bit of the control register is written as a “0”, the I/O pin will be setup as a CMOS output. If the pin is currently setup as an output, instructions can still be used to read the output register.

However, it should be noted that the program will in fact only read the status of the output data latch and not the actual logic status of the output pin.

Pin-shared Functions

The flexibility of the microcontroller range is greatly enhanced by the use of pins that have more than one function. Limited numbers of pins can force serious design constraints on designers but by supplying pins with multi-functions, many of these difficulties can be overcome. For these pins, the desired function of the multi-function I/O pins is selected by a series of registers via the application program control.

Pin-shared Function Selection Registers

The limited number of supplied pins in a package can impose restrictions on the amount of functions a certain device can contain. However by allowing the same pins to share several different functions and providing a means of function selection, a wide range of different functions can be incorporated into even relatively small package sizes. Each device includes Port “x” output function Selection register “n”, labeled as PxSn, and Input Function Selection register, labeled as IFS, which can select the desired functions of the multi-function pin-shared pins.

When the pin-shared input function is selected to be used, the corresponding input and output functions selection should be properly managed. For example, if the I²C SDA line is used, the corresponding output pin-shared function should be configured as the SDI/SDA function by configuring the PxSn register and the SDA signal input should be properly selected using the IFS register. However, if the external interrupt function is selected to be used, the relevant output pin-shared function should be selected as an I/O function and the interrupt input signal should be selected.

The most important point to note is to make sure that the desired pin-shared function is properly selected and also deselected. To select the desired pin-shared function, the pin-shared function should first be correctly selected using the corresponding pin-shared control register. After that the corresponding peripheral functional setting should be configured and then the peripheral function can be enabled. To correctly deselect the pin-shared function, the peripheral function should first be disabled and then the corresponding pin-shared function control register can be modified to select other pin-shared functions.

Register Name	Bit							
	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
PAS0	PAS07	PAS06	PAS05	PAS04	PAS03	PAS02	PAS01	PAS00
PAS1	PAS17	PAS16	PAS15	PAS14	PAS13	PAS12	PAS11	PAS10
PBS0	PBS07	PBS06	PBS05	PBS04	PBS03	PBS02	PBS01	PBS00
PBS1	PBS17	PBS16	PBS15	PBS14	PBS13	PBS12	PBS11	PBS10
PCS0	PCS07	PCS06	PCS05	PCS04	PCS03	PCS02	PCS01	PCS00
PDS1	—	—	PDS15	PDS14	PDS13	PDS12	PDS11	PDS10
PES0	PES07	PES06	PES05	PES04	PES03	PES02	PES01	PES00
PES1	PES17	PES16	PES15	PES14	PES13	PES12	PES11	PES10
IFS	—	—	IFS5	IFS4	IFS3	IFS2	IFS1	IFS0

Pin-shared Function Selection Registers List – BS67F340

Register Name	Bit							
	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
PAS0	PAS07	PAS06	PAS05	PAS04	PAS03	PAS02	PAS01	PAS00
PAS1	PAS17	PAS16	PAS15	PAS14	PAS13	PAS12	PAS11	PAS10
PBS0	PBS07	PBS06	PBS05	PBS04	PBS03	PBS02	PBS01	PBS00
PBS1	PBS17	PBS16	PBS15	PBS14	PBS13	PBS12	PBS11	PBS10
PCS0	PCS07	PCS06	PCS05	PCS04	PCS03	PCS02	PCS01	PCS00
PCS1	PCS17	PCS16	PCS15	PCS14	PCS13	PCS12	PCS11	PCS10
PDS0	PDS07	PDS06	PDS05	PDS04	PDS03	PDS02	PDS01	PDS00
PDS1	—	—	PDS15	PDS14	PDS13	PDS12	PDS11	PDS10
PES0	PES07	PES06	PES05	PES04	PES03	PES02	PES01	PES00
PES1	PES17	PES16	PES15	PES14	PES13	PES12	PES11	PES10
IFS	—	—	IFS5	IFS4	IFS3	IFS2	IFS1	IFS0

Pin-shared Function Selection Registers List – BS67F350

Register Name	Bit							
	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
PAS0	PAS07	PAS06	PAS05	PAS04	PAS03	PAS02	PAS01	PAS00
PAS1	PAS17	PAS16	PAS15	PAS14	PAS13	PAS12	PAS11	PAS10
PBS0	PBS07	PBS06	PBS05	PBS04	PBS03	PBS02	PBS01	PBS00
PBS1	PBS17	PBS16	PBS15	PBS14	PBS13	PBS12	PBS11	PBS10
PCS0	PCS07	PCS06	PCS05	PCS04	PCS03	PCS02	PCS01	PCS00
PCS1	PCS17	PCS16	PCS15	PCS14	PCS13	PCS12	PCS11	PCS10
PDS0	PDS07	PDS06	PDS05	PDS04	PDS03	PDS02	PDS01	PDS00
PDS1	—	—	PDS15	PDS14	PDS13	PDS12	PDS11	PDS10
PES0	PES07	PES06	PES05	PES04	PES03	PES02	PES01	PES00
PES1	PES17	PES16	PES15	PES14	PES13	PES12	PES11	PES10
PFS0	PFS07	PFS06	PFS05	PFS04	PFS03	PFS02	PFS01	PFS00
IFS	—	—	IFS5	IFS4	IFS3	IFS2	IFS1	IFS0

Pin-shared Function Selection Registers List – BS67F360

Register Name	Bit							
	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
PAS0	PAS07	PAS06	PAS05	PAS04	PAS03	PAS02	PAS01	PAS00
PAS1	PAS17	PAS16	PAS15	PAS14	PAS13	PAS12	PAS11	PAS10
PBS0	PBS07	PBS06	PBS05	PBS04	PBS03	PBS02	PBS01	PBS00
PBS1	PBS17	PBS16	PBS15	PBS14	PBS13	PBS12	PBS11	PBS10
PCS0	PCS07	PCS06	PCS05	PCS04	PCS03	PCS02	PCS01	PCS00
PCS1	PCS17	PCS16	PCS15	PCS14	PCS13	PCS12	PCS11	PCS10
PDS0	PDS07	PDS06	PDS05	PDS04	PDS03	PDS02	PDS01	PDS00
PDS1	—	—	PDS15	PDS14	PDS13	PDS12	PDS11	PDS10
PES0	PES07	PES06	PES05	PES04	PES03	PES02	PES01	PES00
PES1	PES17	PES16	PES15	PES14	PES13	PES12	PES11	PES10
PFS0	PFS07	PFS06	PFS05	PFS04	PFS03	PFS02	PFS01	PFS00
PGS0	PGS07	PGS06	PGS05	PGS04	PGS03	PGS02	PGS01	PGS00
PGS1	PGS17	PGS16	PGS15	PGS14	PGS13	PGS12	PGS11	PGS10
PHS0	PHS07	PHS06	PHS05	PHS04	PHS03	PHS02	PHS01	PHS00
PHS1	PHS17	PHS16	PHS15	PHS14	PHS13	PHS12	PHS11	PHS10
IFS	—	—	IFS5	IFS4	IFS3	IFS2	IFS1	IFS0

Pin-shared Function Selection Registers List – BS67F370

• **PAS0 Register**

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Name	PAS07	PAS06	PAS05	PAS04	PAS03	PAS02	PAS01	PAS00
R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W
POR	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

- Bit 7~6 **PAS07~PAS06:** PA3 pin function selection
 00/11: PA3
 01: SCS
 10: XT1
- Bit 5~4 **PAS05~PAS04:** PA2 pin function selection
 00/10/11: PA2
 01: SCS
- Bit 3~2 **PAS03~PAS02:** PA1 pin function selection
 00/10: PA1
 01: CTP0
 11: V2
- Bit 1~0 **PAS01~PAS00:** PA0 pin function selection
 00/10/11: PA0
 01: SDO

• **PAS1 Register**

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Name	PAS17	PAS16	PAS15	PAS14	PAS13	PAS12	PAS11	PAS10
R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W
POR	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

- Bit 7~6 **PAS17~PAS16:** PA7 pin function selection

PAS1[7:6]	BS67F340	BS67F350	BS67F360	BS67F370
00	PA7	PA7	PA7	PA7
01	PA7	PA7	PA7	PA7
10	KEY12	KEY20	KEY20	KEY20
11	SEG7	SEG7	SEG15	SEG15

- Bit 5~4 **PAS15~PAS14:** PA6 pin function selection
 00/01/10: PA6/CTCK0/INT0
 11: C2
- Bit 3~2 **PAS13~PAS12:** PA5 pin function selection
 00/10: PA5
 01: CTP0B
 11: C1
- Bit 1~0 **PAS11~PAS10:** PA4 pin function selection
 00/11: PA4
 01: SDO
 10: XT2

• **PBS0 Register**

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Name	PBS07	PBS06	PBS05	PBS04	PBS03	PBS02	PBS01	PBS00
R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W
POR	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

- Bit 7~6 **PBS07~PBS06:** PB3 pin function selection
00/10: PB3/INT0
01: RX
11: AN3
- Bit 5~4 **PBS05~PBS04:** PB2 pin function selection
00: PB2/PTPI
01: TX
10: PTP
11: AN2
- Bit 3~2 **PBS03~PBS02:** PB1 pin function selection
00/10: PB1
01: SCK/SCL
11: AN1
- Bit 1~0 **PBS01~PBS00:** PB0 pin function selection
00: PB0
01: SDI/SDA
10: VREF
11: AN0

• **PBS1 Register**

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Name	PBS17	PBS16	PBS15	PBS14	PBS13	PBS12	PBS11	PBS10
R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W
POR	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

- Bit 7~6 **PBS17~PBS16:** PB7 pin function selection
00/01: PB7/INT1
10: KEY4
11: AN7
- Bit 5~4 **PBS15~PBS14:** PB6 pin function selection
00/01: PB6/PTCK
10: KEY3
11: AN6
- Bit 3~2 **PBS13~PBS12:** PB5 pin function selection
00/01: PB5/STCK
10: KEY2
11: AN5
- Bit 1~0 **PBS11~PBS10:** PB4 pin function selection
00: PB4/PTPI
01: PTPB
10: KEY1
11: AN4

• **PCS0 Register**

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Name	PCS07	PCS06	PCS05	PCS04	PCS03	PCS02	PCS01	PCS00
R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W
POR	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit 7~6 **PCS07~PCS06: PC3 pin function selection**

PCS0[7:6]	BS67F340	BS67F350	BS67F360	BS67F370
00	PC3	PC3	PC3	PC3
01	PC3	PC3	PC3	PC3
10	KEY8	KEY8	KEY8	KEY8
11	SEG3	PC3	SEG3	SEG3

Bit 5~4 **PCS05~PCS04: PC2 pin function selection**

PCS0[5:4]	BS67F340	BS67F350	BS67F360	BS67F370
00	PC2	PC2	PC2	PC2
01	PC2	PC2	PC2	PC2
10	KEY7	KEY7	KEY7	KEY7
11	SEG2	PC2	SEG2	SEG2

Bit 3~2 **PCS03~PCS02: PC1 pin function selection**

PCS0[3:2]	BS67F340	BS67F350	BS67F360	BS67F370
00	PC1	PC1	PC1	PC1
01	PC1	PC1	PC1	PC1
10	KEY6	KEY6	KEY6	KEY6
11	SEG1	PC1	SEG1	SEG1

Bit 1~0 **PCS01~PCS00: PC0 pin function selection**

PCS0[1:0]	BS67F340	BS67F350	BS67F360	BS67F370
00	PC0	PC0	PC0	PC0
01	PC0	PC0	PC0	PC0
10	KEY5	KEY5	KEY5	KEY5
11	SEG0	PC0	SEG0	SEG0

• **PCS1 Register**

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Name	PCS17	PCS16	PCS15	PCS14	PCS13	PCS12	PCS11	PCS10
R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W
POR	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit 7~6 **PCS17~PCS16: PC7 pin function selection**

PCS1[7:6]	BS67F340	BS67F350	BS67F360	BS67F370
00	—	PC7	PC7	PC7
01	—	PC7	PC7	PC7
10	—	KEY12	KEY12	KEY12
11	—	PC7	SEG7	SEG7

Bit 5~4 **PCS15~PCS14: PC6 pin function selection**

PCS1[5:4]	BS67F340	BS67F350	BS67F360	BS67F370
00	—	PC6	PC6	PC6
01	—	PC6	PC6	PC6
10	—	KEY11	KEY11	KEY11
11	—	PC6	SEG6	SEG6

Bit 3~2 **PCS13~PCS12: PC5 pin function selection**

PCS1[3:2]	BS67F340	BS67F350	BS67F360	BS67F370
00	—	PC5	PC5	PC5
01	—	PC5	PC5	PC5
10	—	KEY10	KEY10	KEY10
11	—	PC5	SEG5	SEG5

Bit 1~0 **PCS11~PCS10: PC4 pin function selection**

PCS1[1:0]	BS67F340	BS67F350	BS67F360	BS67F370
00	—	PC4	PC4	PC4
01	—	PC4	PC4	PC4
10	—	KEY9	KEY9	KEY9
11	—	PC4	SEG4	SEG4

• **PDS0 Register**

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Name	PDS07	PDS06	PDS05	PDS04	PDS03	PDS02	PDS01	PDS00
R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W
POR	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit 7~6 **PDS07~PDS06: PD3 pin function selection**

PDS0[7:6]	BS67F340	BS67F350	BS67F360	BS67F370
00	—	PD3	PD3	PD3
01	—	PD3	PD3	PD3
10	—	KEY16	KEY16	KEY16
11	—	SEG3	SEG11	SEG11

Bit 5~4 **PDS05~PDS04: PD2 pin function selection**

PDS0[5:4]	BS67F340	BS67F350	BS67F360	BS67F370
00	—	PD2	PD2	PD2
01	—	PD2	PD2	PD2
10	—	KEY15	KEY15	KEY15
11	—	SEG2	SEG10	SEG10

Bit 3~2 **PDS03~PDS02: PD1 pin function selection**

PDS0[3:2]	BS67F340	BS67F350	BS67F360	BS67F370
00	—	PD1	PD1	PD1
01	—	PD1	PD1	PD1
10	—	KEY14	KEY14	KEY14
11	—	SEG1	SEG9	SEG9

Bit 1~0 **PDS01~PDS00: PD0 pin function selection**

PDS0[1:0]	BS67F340	BS67F350	BS67F360	BS67F370
00	—	PD0	PD0	PD0
01	—	PD0	PD0	PD0
10	—	KEY13	KEY13	KEY13
11	—	SEG0	SEG8	SEG8

• **PDS1 Register**

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Name	—	—	PDS15	PDS14	PDS13	PDS12	PDS11	PDS10
R/W	—	—	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W
POR	—	—	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit 7~6 “—” Unimplemented, read as 0

Bit 5~4 **PDS15~PDS14: PD6 pin function selection**

PDS1[5:4]	BS67F340	BS67F350	BS67F360	BS67F370
00	PD6	PD6	PD6	PD6
01	PD6	PD6	PD6	PD6
10	KEY11	KEY19	KEY19	KEY19
11	SEG6	SEG6	SEG14	SEG14

Bit 3~2 **PDS13~PDS12: PD5 pin function selection**

PDS1[3:2]	BS67F340	BS67F350	BS67F360	BS67F370
00	PD5	PD5	PD5	PD5
01	PD5	PD5	PD5	PD5
10	KEY10	KEY18	KEY18	KEY18
11	SEG5	SEG5	SEG13	SEG13

Bit 1~0 **PDS11~PDS10: PD4 pin function selection**

PDS1[1:0]	BS67F340	BS67F350	BS67F360	BS67F370
00	PD4	PD4	PD4	PD4
01	PD4	PD4	PD4	PD4
10	KEY9	KEY17	KEY17	KEY17
11	SEG4	SEG4	SEG12	SEG12

• **PES0 Register**

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Name	PES07	PES06	PES05	PES04	PES03	PES02	PES01	PES00
R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W
POR	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit 7~6 **PES07~PES06: PE3 pin function selection**

PES0[7:6]	BS67F340	BS67F350	BS67F360	BS67F370
00	PE3/STPI	PE3/STPI	PE3/STPI	PE3/STPI
01	STPB	STPB	STPB	STPB
10	PE3/STPI	PE3/STPI	KEY24	KEY24
11	SEG15	SEG11	SEG19	SEG19

Bit 5~4 **PES05~PES04: PE2 pin function selection**

PES0[5:4]	BS67F340	BS67F350	BS67F360	BS67F370
00	PE2/STPI	PE2/STPI	PE2/STPI	PE2/STPI
01	STP	STP	STP	STP
10	OSC2	OSC2	KEY23	KEY23
11	SEG14	SEG10	SEG18	SEG18

Bit 3~2 **PES03~PES02: PE1 pin function selection**

PES0[3:2]	BS67F340	BS67F350	BS67F360	BS67F370
00	PE1	PE1	PE1	PE1
01	PE1	PE1	PE1	PE1
10	OSC1	OSC1	KEY22	KEY22
11	SEG13	SEG9	SEG17	SEG17

Bit 1~0 **PES01~PES00: PE0 pin function selection**

PES0[1:0]	BS67F340	BS67F350	BS67F360	BS67F370
00	PE0	PE0	PE0	PE0
01	PE0	PE0	PE0	PE0
10	PE0	PE0	KEY21	KEY21
11	SEG12	SEG8	SEG16	SEG16

• **PES1 Register**

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Name	PES17	PES16	PES15	PES14	PES13	PES12	PES11	PES10
R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W
POR	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit 7~6 **PES17~PES16: PE7 pin function selection**

PES1[7:6]	BS67F340	BS67F350	BS67F360	BS67F370
00	PE7	PE7	PE7	PE7
01	CTP1B	CTP1B	CTP1B	CTP1B
10	KEY16	PE7	KEY28	KEY28
11	SEG11	SEG15	SEG23	SEG23

Bit 5~4 **PES15~PES14: PE6 pin function selection**

PES1[5:4]	BS67F340	BS67F350	BS67F360	BS67F370
00	PE6	PE6	PE6	PE6
01	CTP1	CTP1	CTP1	CTP1
10	KEY15	PE6	KEY27	KEY27
11	SEG10	SEG14	SEG22	SEG22

Bit 3~2 **PES13~PES12: PE5 pin function selection**

PES1[3:2]	BS67F340	BS67F350	BS67F360	BS67F370
00	PE5/CTCK1	PE5/CTCK1	PE5/CTCK1	PE5/CTCK1
01	PE5/CTCK1	PE5/CTCK1	PE5/CTCK1	PE5/CTCK1
10	KEY14	PE5/CTCK1	KEY26	KEY26
11	SEG9	SEG13	SEG21	SEG21

Bit 1~0 **PES11~PES10: PE4 pin function selection**

PES1[1:0]	BS67F340	BS67F350	BS67F360	BS67F370
00	PE4	PE4	PE4	PE4
01	PE4	PE4	PE4	PE4
10	KEY13	PE4	KEY25	KEY25
11	SEG8	SEG12	SEG20	SEG20

• **PFS0 Register – BS67F360/BS67F370**

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Name	PFS07	PFS06	PFS05	PFS04	PFS03	PFS02	PFS01	PFS00
R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W
POR	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

- Bit 7~6 **PFS07~PFS06:** PF3 pin function selection
 00/01/10: PF3
 11: SEG31
- Bit 5~4 **PFS05~PFS04:** PF2 pin function selection
 00/01/10: PF2
 11: SEG30
- Bit 3~2 **PFS03~PFS02:** PF1 pin function selection
 00/01: PF1
 10: OSC2
 11: SEG29
- Bit 1~0 **PFS01~PFS00:** PF0 pin function selection
 00/01: PF0
 10: OSC1
 11: SEG28

• **PGS0 Register – BS67F370**

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Name	PGS07	PGS06	PGS05	PGS04	PGS03	PGS02	PGS01	PGS00
R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W
POR	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

- Bit 7~6 **PGS07~PGS06:** PG3 pin function selection
 00: PG3
 01: PG3
 10: KEY32
 11: SEG27
- Bit 5~4 **PGS05~PGS04:** PG2 pin function selection
 00: PG2
 01: PG2
 10: KEY31
 11: SEG26
- Bit 3~2 **PGS03~PGS02:** PG1 pin function selection
 00: PG1
 01: PG1
 10: KEY30
 11: SEG25
- Bit 1~0 **PGS01~PGS00:** PG0 pin function selection
 00: PG0
 01: PG0
 10: KEY29
 11: SEG24

• **PGS1 Register – BS67F370**

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Name	PGS17	PGS16	PGS15	PGS14	PGS13	PGS12	PGS11	PGS10
R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W
POR	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit 7~6 **PGS17~PGS16:** PG7 pin function selection

00/01/11: PG7

10: KEY36

Bit 5~4 **PGS15~PGS14:** PG6 pin function selection

00/01/11: PG6

10: KEY35

Bit 3~2 **PGS13~PGS12:** PG5 pin function selection

00/01/11: PG5

10: KEY34

Bit 1~0 **PGS11~PGS10:** PG4 pin function selection

00/01/11: PG4

10: KEY33

• **PHS0 Register – BS67F370**

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Name	PHS07	PHS06	PHS05	PHS04	PHS03	PHS02	PHS01	PHS00
R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W
POR	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit 7~6 **PHS07~PHS06:** PH3 pin function selection

00/01/10: PH3

11: SEG43

Bit 5~4 **PHS05~PHS04:** PH2 pin function selection

00/01/10: PH2

11: SEG42

Bit 3~2 **PHS03~PHS02:** PH1 pin function selection

00/01/10: PH1

11: SEG41

Bit 1~0 **PHS01~PHS00:** PH0 pin function selection

00/01/10: PH0

11: SEG40

• **PHS1 Register – BS67F370**

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Name	PHS17	PHS16	PHS15	PHS14	PHS13	PHS12	PHS11	PHS10
R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W
POR	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

- Bit 7~6 **PHS17~PHS16:** PH7 pin function selection
00/01/10: PH7
11: SEG47
- Bit 5~4 **PHS15~PHS14:** PH6 pin function selection
00/01/10: PH6
11: SEG46
- Bit 3~2 **PHS13~PHS12:** PH5 pin function selection
00/01/10: PH5
11: SEG45
- Bit 1~0 **PHS11~PHS10:** PH4 pin function selection
00/01/10: PH4
11: SEG44

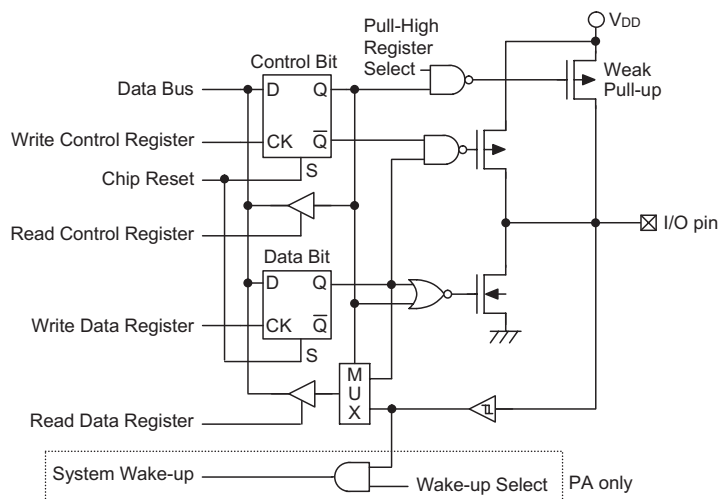
• **IFS Register**

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Name	—	—	IFS5	IFS4	IFS3	IFS2	IFS1	IFS0
R/W	—	—	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W
POR	—	—	0	0	0	0	0	0

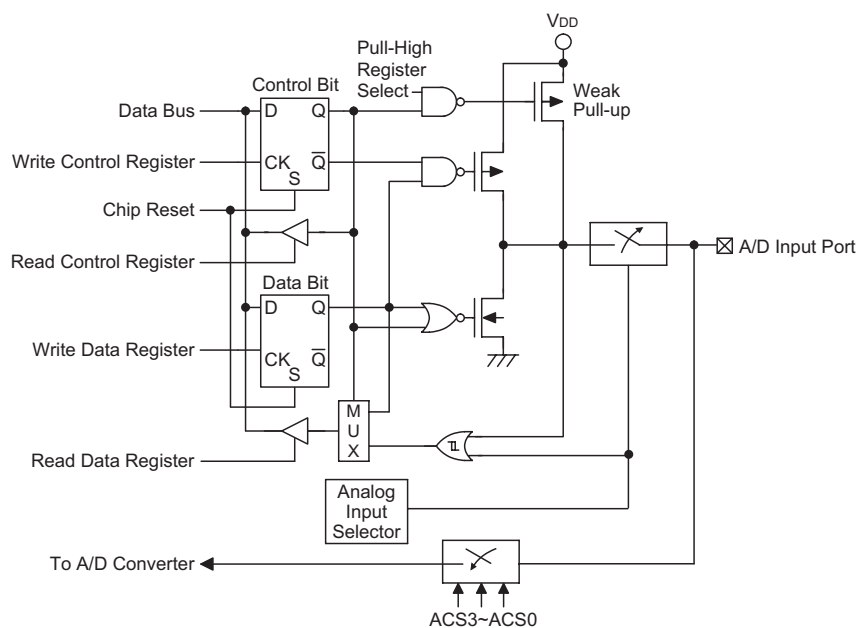
- Bit 7~6 “—” Unimplemented, read as 0
- Bit 5~4 **IFS5~IFS4:** \overline{SCS} input source pin selection
00/10: PA2
01/11: PA3
- Bit 3~2 **IFS3~IFS2:** PTPI input source pin selection
00/10: PB2
01/11: PB4
- Bit 1~0 **IFS1~IFS0:** STPI input source pin selection
00/01: PE2
01/11: PE3

I/O Pin Structures

The accompanying diagrams illustrate the internal structures of some generic I/O pin types. As the exact logical construction of the I/O pin will differ from these drawings, they are supplied as a guide only to assist with the functional understanding of the I/O pins. The wide range of pin-shared structures does not permit all types to be shown.



Generic Input/Output Structure



A/D Input/Output Structure

Programming Considerations

Within the user program, one of the things first to consider is port initialisation. After a reset, all of the I/O data and port control registers will be set to high. This means that all I/O pins will be defaulted to an input state, the level of which depends on the other connected circuitry and whether pull-high selections have been chosen. If the port control registers are then programmed to setup some pins as outputs, these output pins will have an initial high output value unless the associated port data registers are first programmed. Selecting which pins are inputs and which are outputs can be achieved byte-wide by loading the correct values into the appropriate port control register or by programming individual bits in the port control register using the “SET [m].i” and “CLR [m].i” instructions. Note that when using these bit control instructions, a read-modify-write operation takes place. The microcontroller must first read in the data on the entire port, modify it to the required new bit values and then rewrite this data back to the output ports.

Port A has the additional capability of providing wake-up functions. When the device is in the SLEEP or IDLE Mode, various methods are available to wake the device up. One of these is a high to low transition of any of the Port A pins. Single or multiple pins on Port A can be setup to have this function.

Timer Modules – TM

One of the most fundamental functions in any microcontroller devices is the ability to control and measure time. To implement time related functions the device includes several Timer Modules, generally abbreviated to the name TM. The TMs are multi-purpose timing units and serve to provide operations such as Timer/Counter, Input Capture, Compare Match Output and Single Pulse Output as well as being the functional unit for the generation of PWM signals. Each of the TMs has two interrupts. The addition of input and output pins for each TM ensures that users are provided with timing units with a wide and flexible range of features.

The common features of the different TM types are described here with more detailed information provided in the individual Compact, Standard and Periodic TM sections.

Introduction

These devices contain four TMs and each individual TM can be categorised as a certain type, namely Compact Type TM, Standard Type TM or Periodic Type TM. Although similar in nature, the different TM types vary in their feature complexity. The common features to all of the Compact, Standard and Periodic TMs will be described in this section and the detailed operation regarding each of the TM types will be described in separate sections. The main features and differences between the three types of TMs are summarised in the accompanying table.

TM Function	CTM	STM	PTM
Timer/Counter	√	√	√
Input Capture	—	√	√
Compare Match Output	√	√	√
PWM Channels	1	1	1
Single Pulse Output	—	1	1
PWM Alignment	Edge	Edge	Edge
PWM Adjustment Period & Duty	Duty or Period	Duty or Period	Duty or Period

TM Function Summary

TM Operation

The different types of TM offer a diverse range of functions, from simple timing operations to PWM signal generation. The key to understanding how the TM operates is to see it in terms of a free running count-up counter whose value is then compared with the value of pre-programmed internal comparators. When the free running count-up counter has the same value as the pre-programmed comparator, known as a compare match situation, a TM interrupt signal will be generated which can clear the counter and perhaps also change the condition of the TM output pin. The internal TM counter is driven by a user selectable clock source, which can be an internal clock or an external pin.

TM Clock Source

The clock source which drives the main counter in each TM can originate from various sources. The selection of the required clock source is implemented using the xTnCK2~xTnCK0 bits in the xTMn control registers, where “x” stands for C, S or P type TM and “n” stands for the specific TM serial number. For STM and PTM there is no serial number “n” in the relevant pin or control bits since there is only one STM and PTM respectively in the series of devices. The clock source can be a ratio of the system clock, f_{sys} , or the internal high clock, f_H , the f_{SUB} clock source or the external xTCKn pin. The xTCKn pin clock source is used to allow an external signal to drive the TM as an external clock source for event counting.

TM Interrupts

The Compact, Standard or Periodic type TM has two internal interrupt, one for each of the internal comparator A or comparator P, which generate a TM interrupt when a compare match condition occurs. When a TM interrupt is generated, it can be used to clear the counter and also to change the state of the TM output pin.

TM External Pins

Each of the TMs, irrespective of what type, has one or two TM input pins, with the label xTCKn and xTPnI respectively. The xTMn input pin, xTCKn, is essentially a clock source for the xTMn and is selected using the xTnCK2~xTnCK0 bits in the xTMnC0 register. This external TM input pin allows an external clock source to drive the internal TM. The xTCKn input pin can be chosen to have either a rising or falling active edge. The STCK and PTCK pins are also used as the external trigger input pin in single pulse output mode for the STM and PTM respectively.

The other xTM input pin, STPI or PTPI, is the capture input whose active edge can be a rising edge, a falling edge or both rising and falling edges and the active edge transition type is selected using the STIO1~STIO0 or PTIO1~PTIO0 bits in the STMC1 or PTMC1 register respectively. There is another capture input, PTCK, for PTM capture input mode, which can be used as the external trigger input source except the PTPI pin.

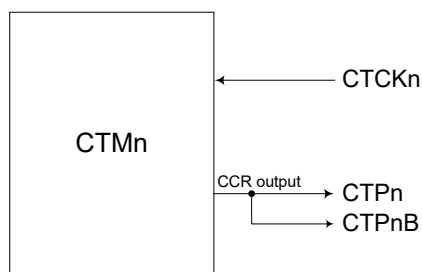
The TMs each have two output pins, xTPn and xTPnB. The xTPnB is the inverted signal of the xTPn output. The TM output pins can be selected using the corresponding pin-shared function selection bits described in the Pin-shared Function section. When the TM is in the Compare Match Output Mode, these pins can be controlled by the TM to switch to a high or low level or to toggle when a compare match situation occurs. The external xTPn or xTPnB output pin is also the pin where the TM generates the PWM output waveform. As the TM output pins are pin-shared with other functions, the TM output function must first be setup using relevant pin-shared function selection register.

Device	CTM		STM		PTM	
	Input	Output	Input	Output	Input	Output
BS67F340 BS67F350 BS67F360 BS67F370	CTCK0 CTCK1	CTP0, CTP0B CTP1, CTP1B	STCK, STPI	STP, STPB	PTCK, PTPI	PTP, PTPB

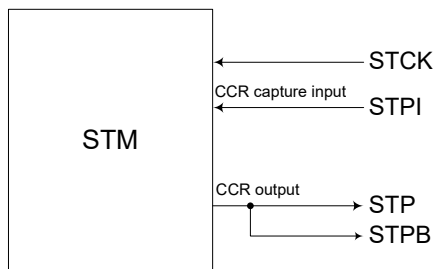
TM External Pins

TM Input/Output Pin Selection

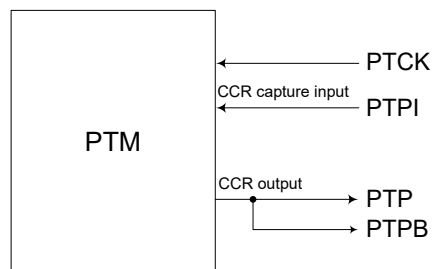
Selecting to have a TM input/output or whether to retain its other shared function is implemented using the relevant pin-shared function selection registers, with the corresponding selection bits in each pin-shared function register corresponding to a TM input/output pin. Configuring the selection bits correctly will setup the corresponding pin as a TM input/output. The details of the pin-shared function selection are described in the pin-shared function section.



CTM Function Pin Control Block Diagram – n=0 or 1



STM Function Pin Control Block Diagram

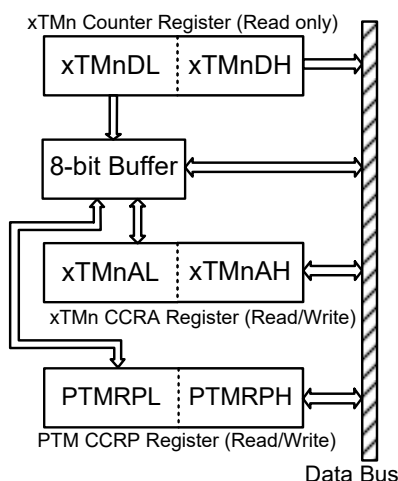


PTM Function Pin Control Block Diagram

Programming Considerations

The TM Counter Registers and the Capture/Compare CCRA and CCRP registers, all have a low and high byte structure. The high bytes can be directly accessed, but as the low bytes can only be accessed via an internal 8-bit buffer, reading or writing to these register pairs must be carried out in a specific way. The important point to note is that data transfer to and from the 8-bit buffer and its related low byte only takes place when a write or read operation to its corresponding high byte is executed.

As the CCRA and CCRP registers are implemented in the way shown in the following diagram and accessing these register pairs is carried out in a specific way as described above, it is recommended to use the “MOV” instruction to access the CCRA and CCRP low byte registers, named xTMnAL and PTMRPL, using the following access procedures. Accessing the CCRA or CCRP low byte registers without following these access procedures will result in unpredictable values.



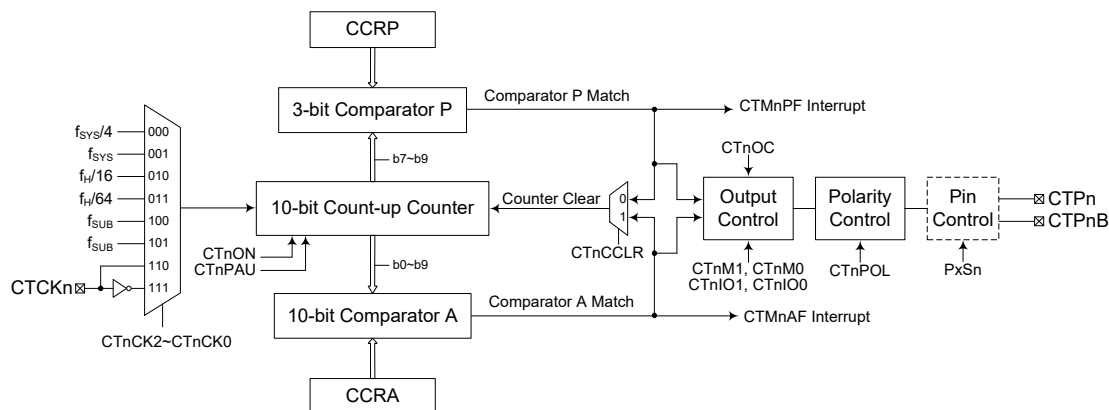
The following steps show the read and write procedures:

- Writing Data to CCRA or CCRP
 - ♦ Step 1. Write data to Low Byte xTMnAL or PTMRPL
 - note that here data is only written to the 8-bit buffer.
 - ♦ Step 2. Write data to High Byte xTMnAH or PTMRPH
 - here data is written directly to the high byte registers and simultaneously data is latched from the 8-bit buffer to the Low Byte registers.
- Reading Data from the Counter Registers and CCRA or CCRP
 - ♦ Step 1. Read data from the High Byte xTMnDH, xTMnAH or PTMRPH
 - here data is read directly from the High Byte registers and simultaneously data is latched from the Low Byte register into the 8-bit buffer.
 - ♦ Step 2. Read data from the Low Byte xTMnDL, xTMnAL or PTMRPL
 - this step reads data from the 8-bit buffer.

Compact Type TM – CTM

Although the simplest form of the TM types, the Compact TM type still contains three operating modes, which are Compare Match Output, Timer/Event Counter and PWM Output modes. The Compact TM can also be controlled with an external input pin and can drive two external output pin.

Device	CTM Core	CTM Input Pin	CTM Output Pin	Note
BS67F340 BS67F350 BS67F360 BS67F370	10-bit CTM (CTM0, CTM1)	CTCK0, CTCK1	CTP0, CTP0B CTP1, CTP1B	n=0 ~ 1



Compact Type TM Block Diagram – n=0 or 1

Compact TM Operation

The Compact TM core is a 10-bit count-up counter which is driven by a user selectable internal or external clock source. There are also two internal comparators with the names, Comparator A and Comparator P. These comparators will compare the value in the counter with CCRP and CCRA registers. The CCRP is three-bit wide whose value is compared with the highest three bits in the counter while the CCRA is ten-bit wide and therefore compares with all counter bits.

The only way of changing the value of the 10-bit counter using the application program, is to clear the counter by changing the CTnON bit from low to high. The counter will also be cleared automatically by a counter overflow or a compare match with one of its associated comparators. When these conditions occur, a TM interrupt signal will also usually be generated. The Compact Type TM can operate in a number of different operational modes, can be driven by different clock sources including an input pin and can also control an output pin. All operating setup conditions are selected using relevant internal registers.

Compact Type TM Register Description

Overall operation of the Compact TM is controlled using a series of registers. A read only register pair exists to store the internal counter 10-bit value, while a read/write register pair exists to store the internal 10-bit CCRA value. The remaining two registers are control registers which setup the different operating and control modes and as well as the three CCRP bits.

Register Name	Bit							
	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
CTMnC0	CTnPAU	CTnCK2	CTnCK1	CTnCK0	CTnON	CTnRP2	CTnRP1	CTnRP0
CTMnC1	CTnM1	CTnM0	CTnIO1	CTnIO0	CTnOC	CTnPOL	CTnDPX	CTnCCLR
CTMnDL	D7	D6	D5	D4	D3	D2	D1	D0
CTMnDH	—	—	—	—	—	—	D9	D8
CTMnAL	D7	D6	D5	D4	D3	D2	D1	D0
CTMnAH	—	—	—	—	—	—	D9	D8

10-bit Compact TM Registers List – n=0 or 1

• CTMnDL Register

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Name	D7	D6	D5	D4	D3	D2	D1	D0
R/W	R	R	R	R	R	R	R	R
POR	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit 7~0 CTMn Counter Low Byte Register bit 7 ~ bit 0
 CTMn 10-bit Counter bit 7 ~ bit 0

• CTMnDH Register

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Name	—	—	—	—	—	—	D9	D8
R/W	—	—	—	—	—	—	R	R
POR	—	—	—	—	—	—	0	0

Bit 7~2 Unimplemented, read as “0”
 Bit 1~0 CTMn Counter High Byte Register bit 1 ~ bit 0
 CTMn 10-bit Counter bit 9 ~ bit 8

• CTMnAL Register

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Name	D7	D6	D5	D4	D3	D2	D1	D0
R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W
POR	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit 7~0 CTMn CCRA Low Byte Register bit 7 ~ bit 0
 CTMn 10-bit CCRA bit 7 ~ bit 0

• **CTMnAH Register**

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Name	—	—	—	—	—	—	D9	D8
R/W	—	—	—	—	—	—	R/W	R/W
POR	—	—	—	—	—	—	0	0

Bit 7~2 Unimplemented, read as “0”

Bit 1~0 CTMn CCRA High Byte Register bit 1 ~ bit 0
 CTMn 10-bit CCRA bit 9 ~ bit 8

• **CTMnC0 Register**

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Name	CTnPAU	CTnCK2	CTnCK1	CTnCK0	CTnON	CTnRP2	CTnRP1	CTnRP0
R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W
POR	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit 7 **CTnPAU**: CTMn Counter Pause control
 0: Run
 1: Pause

The counter can be paused by setting this bit high. Clearing the bit to zero restores normal counter operation. When in a Pause condition the CTMn will remain powered up and continue to consume power. The counter will retain its residual value when this bit changes from low to high and resume counting from this value when the bit changes to a low value again.

Bit 6~4 **CTnCK2~CTnCK0**: Select CTMn Counter clock
 000: $f_{SYS}/4$
 001: f_{SYS}
 010: $f_H/16$
 011: $f_H/64$
 100: f_{SUB}
 101: f_{SUB}
 110: CTCKn rising edge clock
 111: CTCKn falling edge clock

These three bits are used to select the clock source for the CTMn. The external pin clock source can be chosen to be active on the rising or falling edge. The clock source f_{SYS} is the system clock, while f_H and f_{SUB} are other internal clocks, the details of which can be found in the oscillator section.

Bit 3 **CTnON**: CTMn Counter On/Off control
 0: Off
 1: On

This bit controls the overall on/off function of the CTMn. Setting the bit high enables the counter to run while clearing the bit disables the CTMn. Clearing this bit to zero will stop the counter from counting and turn off the CTMn which will reduce its power consumption. When the bit changes state from low to high the internal counter value will be reset to zero, however when the bit changes from high to low, the internal counter will retain its residual value until the bit returns high again. If the CTMn is in the Compare Match Output Mode then the CTMn output pin will be reset to its initial condition, as specified by the CTnOC bit, when the CTnON bit changes from low to high.

Bit 2~0 **CTnRP2~CTnRP0**: CTMn CCRP 3-bit register, compared with the CTMn Counter bit 9 ~ bit 7

000: 1024 CTMn clocks
 001: 128 CTMn clocks
 010: 256 CTMn clocks
 011: 384 CTMn clocks
 100: 512 CTMn clocks
 101: 640 CTMn clocks
 110: 768 CTMn clocks
 111: 896 CTMn clocks

These three bits are used to setup the value on the internal CCRP 3-bit register, which are then compared with the internal counter's highest three bits. The result of this comparison can be selected to clear the internal counter if the CTnCCLR bit is set to zero. Setting the CTnCCLR bit to zero ensures that a compare match with the CCRP values will reset the internal counter. As the CCRP bits are only compared with the highest three counter bits, the compare values exist in 128 clock cycle multiples. Clearing all three bits to zero is in effect allowing the counter to overflow at its maximum value.

• **CTMnC1 Register**

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Name	CTnM1	CTnM0	CTnIO1	CTnIO0	CTnOC	CTnPOL	CTnDPX	CTnCCLR
R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W
POR	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit 7~6 **CTnM1~CTnM0**: Select CTMn Operating Mode

00: Compare Match Output Mode
 01: Undefined
 10: PWM Mode
 11: Timer/Counter Mode

These bits setup the required operating mode for the CTMn. To ensure reliable operation the CTMn should be switched off before any changes are made to the CTnM1 and CTnM0 bits. In the Timer/Counter Mode, the CTMn output pin control will be disabled.

Bit 5~4 **CTnIO1~CTnIO0**: Select CTMn external pin (CTPn) function

Compare Match Output Mode

00: No change
 01: Output low
 10: Output high
 11: Toggle output

PWM Output Mode

00: PWM output inactive state
 01: PWM output active state
 10: PWM output
 11: Undefined

Timer/Counter Mode

Unused

These two bits are used to determine how the CTMn output pin changes state when a certain condition is reached. The function that these bits select depends upon in which mode the CTMn is running.

In the Compare Match Output Mode, the CTnIO1 and CTnIO0 bits determine how the CTMn output pin changes state when a compare match occurs from the Comparator A. The CTMn output pin can be setup to switch high, switch low or to toggle its present state when a compare match occurs from the Comparator A. When the bits are both zero, then no change will take place on the output. The initial value of the CTMn output pin should be setup using the CTnOC bit in the CTMnC1 register. Note that the output level requested by the CTnIO1 and CTnIO0 bits must be different from the initial value setup using the CTnOC bit otherwise no change will occur on the CTMn output pin when a compare match occurs. After the CTMn output pin changes state, it can be reset to its initial level by changing the level of the CTnON bit from low to high.

In the PWM Mode, the CTnIO1 and CTnIO0 bits determine how the CTMn output pin changes state when a certain compare match condition occurs. The PWM output function is modified by changing these two bits. It is necessary to only change the values of the CTnIO1 and CTnIO0 bits only after the CTMn has been switched off. Unpredictable PWM outputs will occur if the CTnIO1 and CTnIO0 bits are changed when the CTMn is running.

Bit 3 CTnOC: CTPn Output control

Compare Match Output Mode

0: Initial low

1: Initial high

PWM Output Mode

0: Active low

1: Active high

This is the output control bit for the CTMn output pin. Its operation depends upon whether CTMn is being used in the Compare Match Output Mode or in the PWM Mode. It has no effect if the CTMn is in the Timer/Counter Mode. In the Compare Match Output Mode it determines the logic level of the CTMn output pin before a compare match occurs. In the PWM Mode it determines if the PWM signal is active high or active low.

Bit 2 CTnPOL: CTPn Output polarity control

0: Non-inverted

1: Inverted

This bit controls the polarity of the CTPn output pin. When the bit is set high the CTMn output pin will be inverted and not inverted when the bit is zero. It has no effect if the TM is in the Timer/Counter Mode.

Bit 1 CTnDPX: CTMn PWM duty/period control

0: CCRP – period; CCRA – duty

1: CCRP – duty; CCRA – period

This bit determines which of the CCRA and CCRP registers are used for period and duty control of the PWM waveform.

Bit 0 CTnCCLR: CTMn Counter Clear condition selection

0: CTMn Comparator P match

1: CTMn Comparator A match

This bit is used to select the method which clears the counter. Remember that the Compact TM contains two comparators, Comparator A and Comparator P, either of which can be selected to clear the internal counter. With the CTnCCLR bit set high, the counter will be cleared when a compare match occurs from the Comparator A. When the bit is low, the counter will be cleared when a compare match occurs from the Comparator P or with a counter overflow. A counter overflow clearing method can only be implemented if the CCRP bits are all cleared to zero. The CTnCCLR bit is not used in the PWM Mode.

Compact Type TM Operation Modes

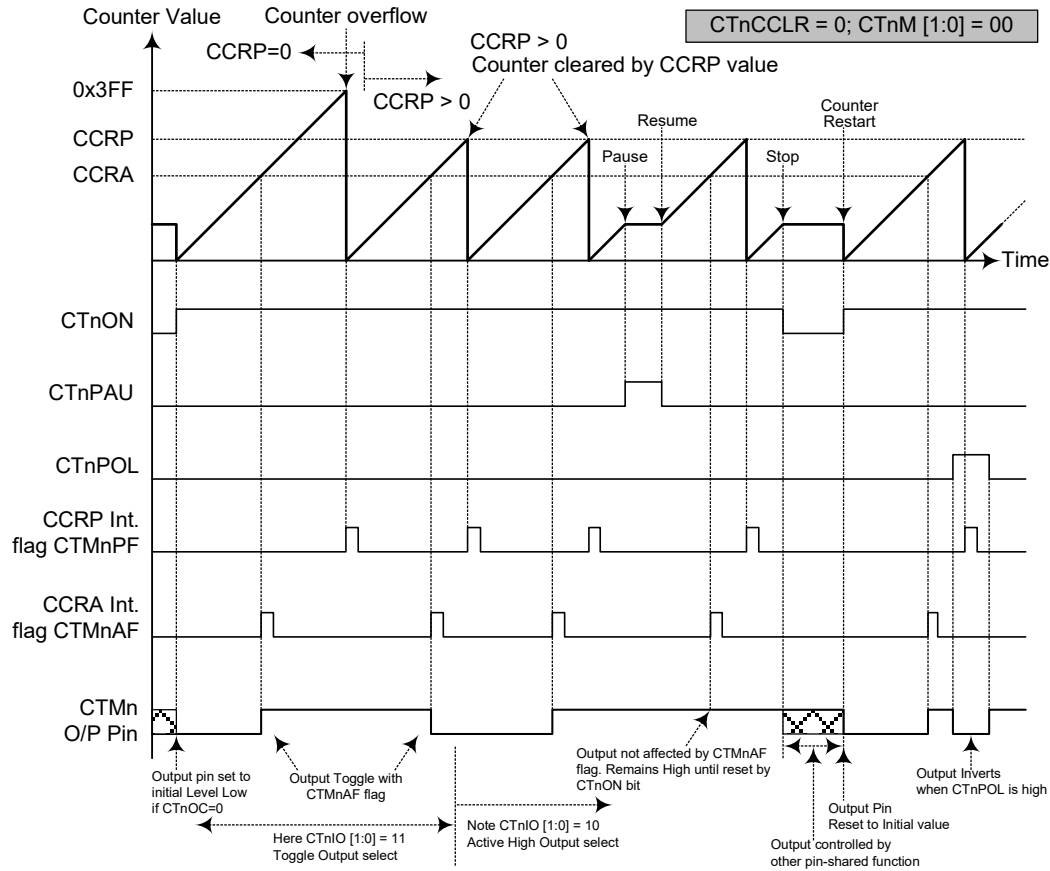
The Compact Type TM can operate in one of three operating modes, Compare Match Output Mode, PWM Mode or Timer/Counter Mode. The operating mode is selected using the CTnM1 and CTnM0 bits in the CTMnC1 register.

Compare Match Output Mode

To select this mode, bits CTnM1 and CTnM0 in the CTMnC1 register, should be set to “00” respectively. In this mode once the counter is enabled and running it can be cleared by three methods. These are a counter overflow, a compare match from Comparator A and a compare match from Comparator P. When the CTnCCLR bit is low, there are two ways in which the counter can be cleared. One is when a compare match occurs from Comparator P, the other is when the CCRP bits are all zero which allows the counter to overflow. Here both CTMnAF and CTMnPF interrupt request flags for the Comparator A and Comparator P respectively, will both be generated.

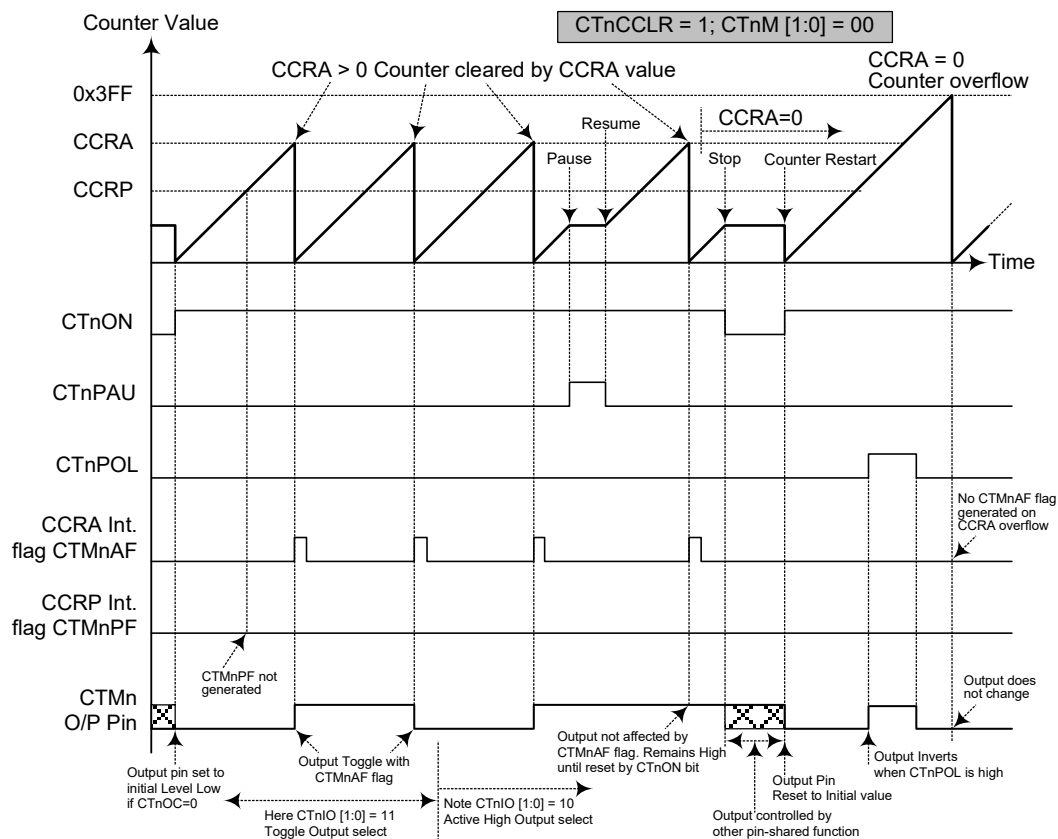
If the CTnCCLR bit in the CTMnC1 register is high then the counter will be cleared when a compare match occurs from Comparator A. However, here only the CTMnAF interrupt request flag will be generated even if the value of the CCRP bits is less than that of the CCRA registers. Therefore when CTnCCLR is high no CTMnPF interrupt request flag will be generated. If the CCRA bits are all zero, the counter will overflow when it reaches its maximum 10-bit, 3FF Hex, value, however here the CTMnAF interrupt request flag will not be generated.

As the name of the mode suggests, after a comparison is made, the CTMn output pin will change state. The CTMn output pin condition however only changes state when a CTMnAF interrupt request flag is generated after a compare match occurs from Comparator A. The CTMnPF interrupt request flag, generated from a compare match occurs from Comparator P, will have no effect on the CTMn output pin. The way in which the CTMn output pin changes state are determined by the condition of the CTnIO1 and CTnIO0 bits in the CTMnC1 register. The CTMn output pin can be selected using the CTnIO1 and CTnIO0 bits to go high, to go low or to toggle from its present condition when a compare match occurs from Comparator A. The initial condition of the CTMn output pin, which is setup after the CTnON bit changes from low to high, is setup using the CTnOC bit. Note that if the CTnIO1 and CTnIO0 bits are zero then no pin change will take place.



Compare Match Output Mode – CTnCCR=0

- Note: 1. With CTnCCR=0, a Comparator P match will clear the counter
 2. The CTMn output pin controlled only by CTMnAF flag
 3. The output pin is reset to its initial state by CTnON bit rising edge
 4. n=0 or 1



Compare Match Output Mode – $CTnCCR=1$

- Note: 1. With $CTnCCR=1$, a Comparator A match will clear the counter
 2. The CTMn output pin is controlled only by CTMnAF flag
 3. The CTMn output pin is reset to initial state by CTnON rising edge
 4. The CTMnPF flag is not generated when $CTnCCR=1$
 5. $n=0$ or 1

Timer/Counter Mode

To select this mode, bits CTnM1 and CTnM0 in the CTMnC1 register should be set to 11 respectively. The Timer/Counter Mode operates in an identical way to the Compare Match Output Mode generating the same interrupt flags. The exception is that in the Timer/Counter Mode the CTMn output pin is not used. Therefore the above description and Timing Diagrams for the Compare Match Output Mode can be used to understand its function. As the CTMn output pin is not used in this mode, the pin can be used as a normal I/O pin or other pin-shared function.

PWM Output Mode

To select this mode, bits CTnM1 and CTnM0 in the CTMnC1 register should be set to 10 respectively. The PWM function within the CTMn is useful for applications which require functions such as motor control, heating control, illumination control etc. By providing a signal of fixed frequency but of varying duty cycle on the CTMn output pin, a square wave AC waveform can be generated with varying equivalent DC RMS values.

As both the period and duty cycle of the PWM waveform can be controlled, the choice of generated waveform is extremely flexible. In the PWM mode, the CTnCCLR bit has no effect on the PWM operation. Both of the CCRA and CCRP registers are used to generate the PWM waveform, one register is used to clear the internal counter and thus control the PWM waveform frequency, while the other one is used to control the duty cycle. Which register is used to control either frequency or duty cycle is determined using the CTnDPX bit in the CTMnC1 register. The PWM waveform frequency and duty cycle can therefore be controlled by the values in the CCRA and CCRP registers.

An interrupt flag, one for each of the CCRA and CCRP, will be generated when a compare match occurs from either Comparator A or Comparator P. The CTnOC bit in the CTMnC1 register is used to select the required polarity of the PWM waveform while the two CTnIO1 and CTnIO0 bits are used to enable the PWM output or to force the TM output pin to a fixed high or low level. The CTnPOL bit is used to reverse the polarity of the PWM output waveform.

• 10-bit CTMn, PWM Mode, Edge-aligned Mode, CTnDPX=0

CCRP	001b	010b	011b	100b	101b	110b	111b	000b
Period	128	256	384	512	640	768	896	1024
Duty	CCRA							

If $f_{SYS}=16\text{MHz}$, CTMn clock source is $f_{SYS}/4$, CCRP=2 and CCRA=128,

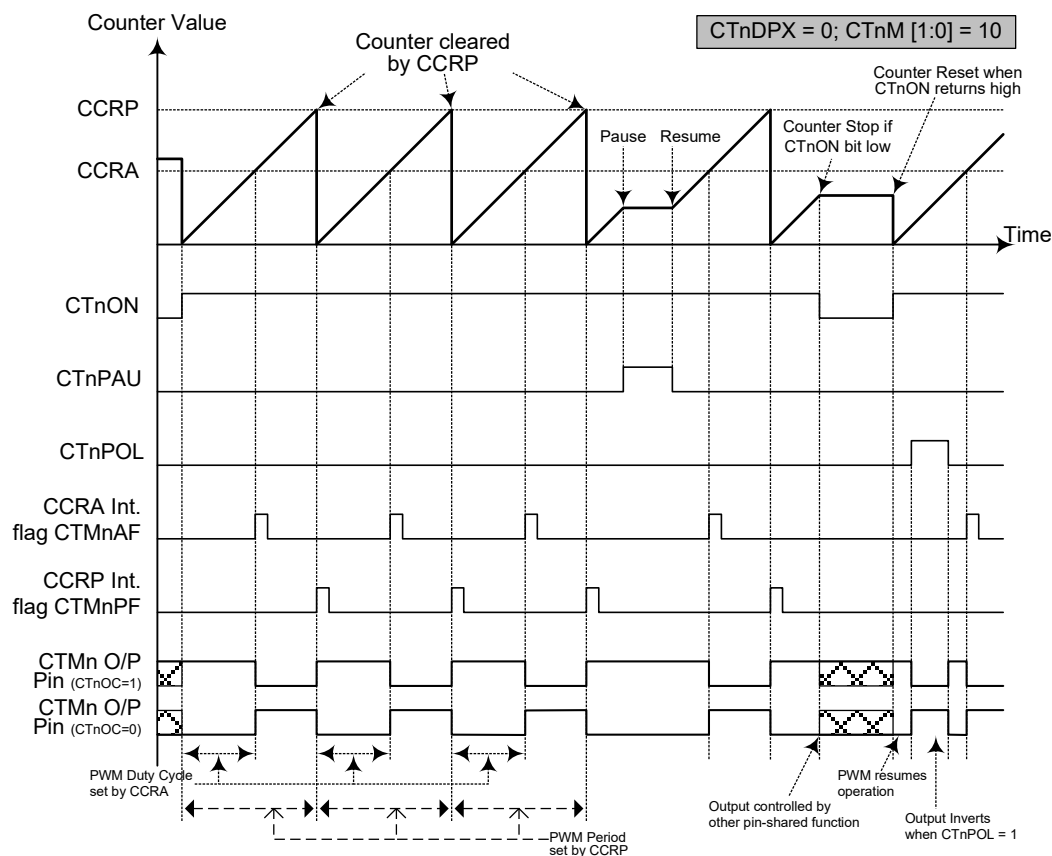
The CTMn PWM output frequency= $(f_{SYS}/4)/256=f_{SYS}/1024=15.625\text{kHz}$,
duty=128/256=50%.

If the Duty value defined by the CCRA register is equal to or greater than the Period value, then the PWM output duty is 100%.

• 10-bit CTMn, PWM Mode, Edge-aligned Mode, CTnDPX=1

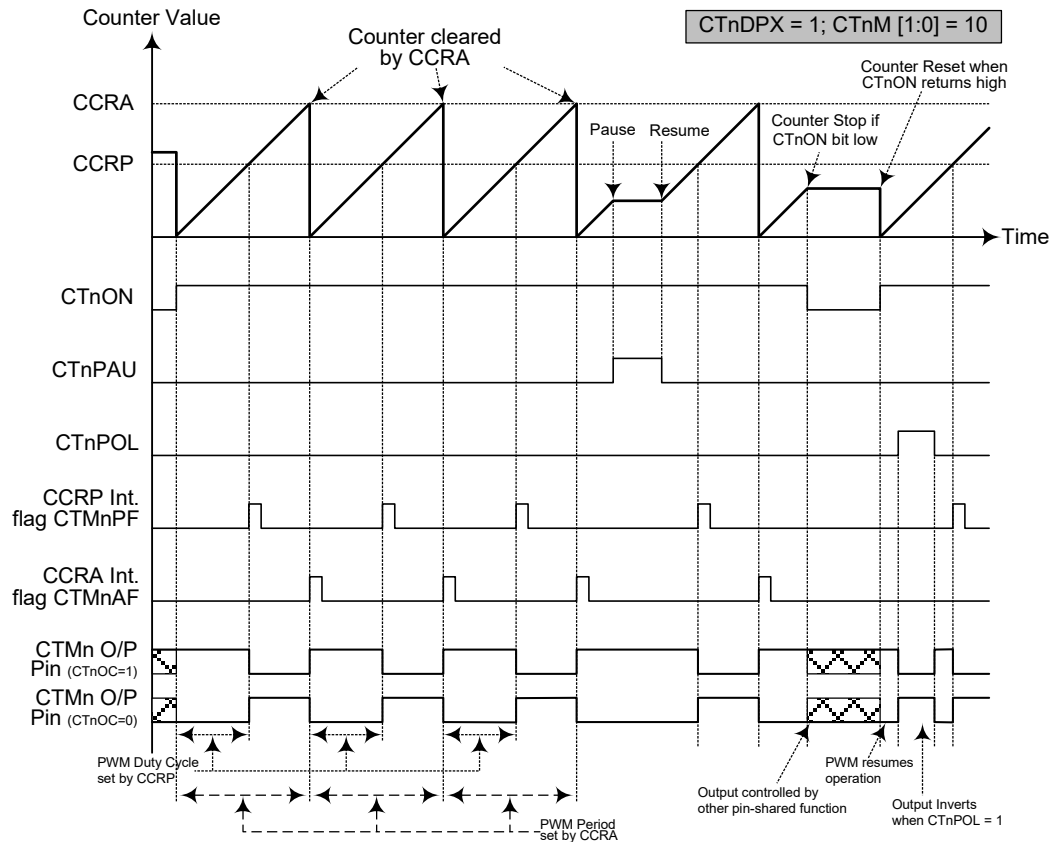
CCRP	001b	010b	011b	100b	101b	110b	111b	000b
Period	CCRA							
Duty	128	256	384	512	640	768	896	1024

The PWM output period is determined by the CCRA register value together with the CTMn clock while the PWM duty cycle is defined by the CCRP register value.



PWM Output Mode – CTnDPX=0

- Note: 1. Here CTnDPX=0 – Counter cleared by CCRP
 2. A counter clear sets PWM Period
 3. The internal PWM function continues even when CTnIO1, CTnIO0=00 or 01
 4. The CTnCCLR bit has no influence on PWM operation
 5. n=0 or 1



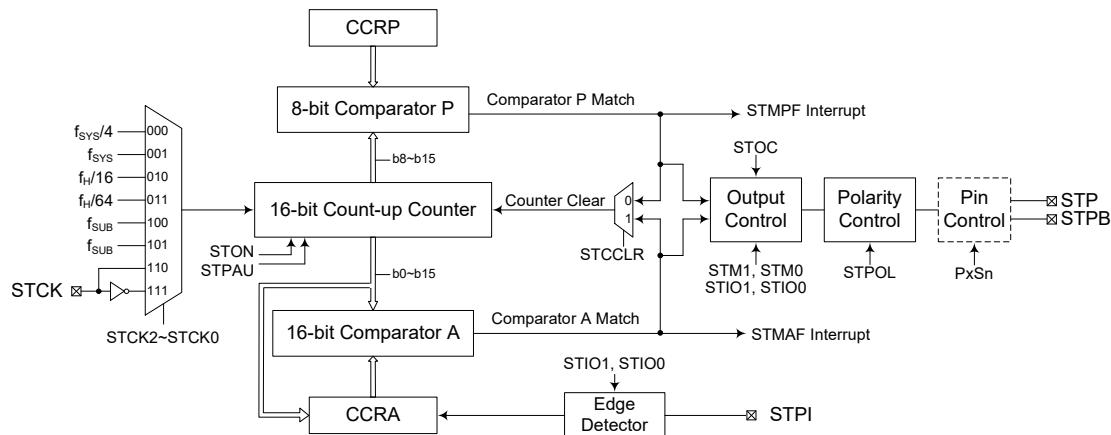
PWM Output Mode – CTnDPX=1

- Note: 1. Here CTnDPX=1 – Counter cleared by CCRA
 2. A counter clear sets PWM Period
 3. The internal PWM function continues even when CTnIO [1:0]=00 or 01
 4. The CTnCCLR bit has no influence on PWM operation
 5. n=0 or 1

Standard Type TM – STM

The Standard Type TM contains five operating modes, which are Compare Match Output, Timer/Event Counter, Capture Input, Single Pulse Output and PWM Output modes. The Standard TM can also be controlled with two external input pins and can drive two external output pin.

Device	STM Core	STM Input Pin	STM Output Pin
BS67F340 BS67F350 BS67F360 BS67F370	16-bit STM	STCK, STPI	STP, STPB



Standard Type TM Block Diagram

Standard TM Operation

The size of Standard TM is 16-bit wide and its core is a 16-bit count-up counter which is driven by a user selectable internal or external clock source. There are also two internal comparators with the names, Comparator A and Comparator P. These comparators will compare the value in the counter with the CCRP and CCRA registers. The CCRP comparator is 8-bit wide whose value is compared the with highest 8 bits in the counter while the CCRA is the sixteen bits and therefore compares all counter bits.

The only way of changing the value of the 16-bit counter using the application program, is to clear the counter by changing the STON bit from low to high. The counter will also be cleared automatically by a counter overflow or a compare match with one of its associated comparators. When these conditions occur, a STM interrupt signal will also usually be generated. The Standard Type TM can operate in a number of different operational modes, can be driven by different clock sources including an input pin and can also control an output pin. All operating setup conditions are selected using relevant internal registers.

Standard Type TM Register Description

Overall operation of the Standard TM is controlled using a series of registers. A read only register pair exists to store the internal counter 16-bit value, while a read/write register pair exists to store the internal 16-bit CCRA value. The STM RP register is used to store the 8-bit CCRP value. The remaining two registers are control registers which setup the different operating and control modes.

Register Name	Bit							
	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
STMC0	STPAU	STCK2	STCK1	STCK0	STON	—	—	—
STMC1	STM1	STM0	STIO1	STIO0	STOC	STPOL	STDPX	STCCLR
STMDL	D7	D6	D5	D4	D3	D2	D1	D0
STMDH	D15	D14	D13	D12	D11	D10	D9	D8
STMAL	D7	D6	D5	D4	D3	D2	D1	D0
STMAH	D15	D14	D13	D12	D11	D10	D9	D8
STMRP	STRP7	STRP6	STRP5	STRP4	STRP3	STRP2	STRP1	STRP0

16-bit Standard TM Registers List

• STMDL Register

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Name	D7	D6	D5	D4	D3	D2	D1	D0
R/W	R	R	R	R	R	R	R	R
POR	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit 7~0 STM Counter Low Byte Register bit 7 ~ bit 0
 STM 16-bit Counter bit 7 ~ bit 0

• STMDH Register

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Name	D15	D14	D13	D12	D11	D10	D9	D8
R/W	R	R	R	R	R	R	R	R
POR	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit 7~0 STM Counter High Byte Register bit 7 ~ bit 0
 STM 16-bit Counter bit 15 ~ bit 8

• STMAL Register

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Name	D7	D6	D5	D4	D3	D2	D1	D0
R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W
POR	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit 7~0 STM CCRA Low Byte Register bit 7 ~ bit 0
 STM 16-bit CCRA bit 7 ~ bit 0

• STMAH Register

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Name	D15	D14	D13	D12	D11	D10	D9	D8
R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W
POR	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit 7~0 STM CCRA High Byte Register bit 7 ~ bit 0
 STM 16-bit CCRA bit 15 ~ bit 8

• **STMC0 Register**

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Name	STPAU	STCK2	STCK1	STCK0	STON	—	—	—
R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	—	—	—
POR	0	0	0	0	0	—	—	—

Bit 7 **STPAU**: STM Counter Pause control

0: Run
1: Pause

The counter can be paused by setting this bit high. Clearing the bit to zero restores normal counter operation. When in a Pause condition the STM will remain powered up and continue to consume power. The counter will retain its residual value when this bit changes from low to high and resume counting from this value when the bit changes to a low value again.

Bit 6~4 **STCK2~STCK0**: Select STM Counter clock

000: $f_{SYS}/4$
001: f_{SYS}
010: $f_H/16$
011: $f_H/64$
100: f_{SUB}
101: f_{SUB}
110: STCK rising edge clock
111: STCK falling edge clock

These three bits are used to select the clock source for the STM. The external pin clock source can be chosen to be active on the rising or falling edge. The clock source f_{SYS} is the system clock, while f_H and f_{SUB} are other internal clocks, the details of which can be found in the oscillator section.

Bit 3 **STON**: STM Counter On/Off control

0: Off
1: On

This bit controls the overall on/off function of the STM. Setting the bit high enables the counter to run while clearing the bit disables the STM. Clearing this bit to zero will stop the counter from counting and turn off the STM which will reduce its power consumption. When the bit changes state from low to high the internal counter value will be reset to zero, however when the bit changes from high to low, the internal counter will retain its residual value until the bit returns high again. If the STM is in the Compare Match Output Mode then the STM output pin will be reset to its initial condition, as specified by the STOC bit, when the STON bit changes from low to high.

Bit 2~0 Unimplemented, read as “0”

• **STMC1 Register**

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Name	STM1	STM0	STIO1	STIO0	STOC	STPOL	STDPX	STCCLR
R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W
POR	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit 7~6 **STM1~STM0**: Select STM Operating Mode

00: Compare Match Output Mode
01: Capture Input Mode
10: PWM Mode or Single Pulse Output Mode
11: Timer/Counter Mode

These bits setup the required operating mode for the STM. To ensure reliable operation the STM should be switched off before any changes are made to the STM1 and STM0 bits. In the Timer/Counter Mode, the STM output pin control will be disabled.

Bit 5~4 **STIO1~STIO0**: Select STM external pin (STP or STPI) function

Compare Match Output Mode

- 00: No change
- 01: Output low
- 10: Output high
- 11: Toggle output

PWM Output Mode/Single Pulse Output Mode

- 00: PWM output inactive state
- 01: PWM output active state
- 10: PWM output
- 11: Single Pulse Output

Capture Input Mode

- 00: Input capture at rising edge of STPI
- 01: Input capture at falling edge of STPI
- 10: Input capture at rising/falling edge of STPI
- 11: Input capture disabled

Timer/Counter Mode

Unused

These two bits are used to determine how the STM output pin changes state when a certain condition is reached. The function that these bits select depends upon in which mode the STM is running.

In the Compare Match Output Mode, the STIO1 and STIO0 bits determine how the STM output pin changes state when a compare match occurs from the Comparator A. The TM output pin can be setup to switch high, switch low or to toggle its present state when a compare match occurs from the Comparator A. When the bits are both zero, then no change will take place on the output. The initial value of the STM output pin should be setup using the STOC bit in the STMC1 register. Note that the output level requested by the STIO1 and STIO0 bits must be different from the initial value setup using the STOC bit otherwise no change will occur on the STM output pin when a compare match occurs. After the STM output pin changes state, it can be reset to its initial level by changing the level of the STON bit from low to high.

In the PWM Mode, the STIO1 and STIO0 bits determine how the STM output pin changes state when a certain compare match condition occurs. The PWM output function is modified by changing these two bits. It is necessary to only change the values of the STIO1 and STIO0 bits only after the STM has been switched off. Unpredictable PWM outputs will occur if the STIO1 and STIO0 bits are changed when the STM is running.

Bit 3 **STOC**: STM STP Output control

Compare Match Output Mode

- 0: Initial low
- 1: Initial high

PWM Output Mode/Single Pulse Output Mode

- 0: Active low
- 1: Active high

This is the output control bit for the STM output pin. Its operation depends upon whether STM is being used in the Compare Match Output Mode or in the PWM Mode/Single Pulse Output Mode. It has no effect if the STM is in the Timer/Counter Mode. In the Compare Match Output Mode it determines the logic level of the STM output pin before a compare match occurs. In the PWM Mode/Single Pulse Output Mode it determines if the PWM signal is active high or active low.

- Bit 2 **STPOL**: STM STP Output polarity control
 0: Non-inverted
 1: Inverted
 This bit controls the polarity of the STP output pin. When the bit is set high the STM output pin will be inverted and not inverted when the bit is zero. It has no effect if the STM is in the Timer/Counter Mode.
- Bit 1 **STDPX**: STM PWM duty/period control
 0: CCRP – period; CCRA – duty
 1: CCRP – duty; CCRA – period
 This bit determines which of the CCRA and CCRP registers are used for period and duty control of the PWM waveform.
- Bit 0 **STCCLR**: STM Counter Clear condition selection
 0: Comparator P match
 1: Comparator A match
 This bit is used to select the method which clears the counter. Remember that the Standard TM contains two comparators, Comparator A and Comparator P, either of which can be selected to clear the internal counter. With the STCCLR bit set high, the counter will be cleared when a compare match occurs from the Comparator A. When the bit is low, the counter will be cleared when a compare match occurs from the Comparator P or with a counter overflow. A counter overflow clearing method can only be implemented if the CCRP bits are all cleared to zero. The STCCLR bit is not used in the PWM Output, Single Pulse Output or Capture Input Mode.

• **STMRP Register**

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Name	STRP7	STRP6	STRP5	STRP4	STRP3	STRP2	STRP1	STRP0
R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W
POR	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

- Bit 7~0 **STRP7~STRP0**: STM CCRP 8-bit register, compared with the STM counter bit15~bit8
 Comparator P match period =
 0: 65536 STM clocks
 1~255: $(1\sim255) \times 256$ STM clocks
 These eight bits are used to setup the value on the internal CCRP 8-bit register, which are then compared with the internal counter's highest eight bits. The result of this comparison can be selected to clear the internal counter if the STCCLR bit is set to zero. Setting the STCCLR bit to zero ensures that a compare match with the CCRP values will reset the internal counter. As the CCRP bits are only compared with the highest eight counter bits, the compare values exist in 256 clock cycle multiples. Clearing all eight bits to zero is in effect allowing the counter to overflow at its maximum value.

Standard Type TM Operation Modes

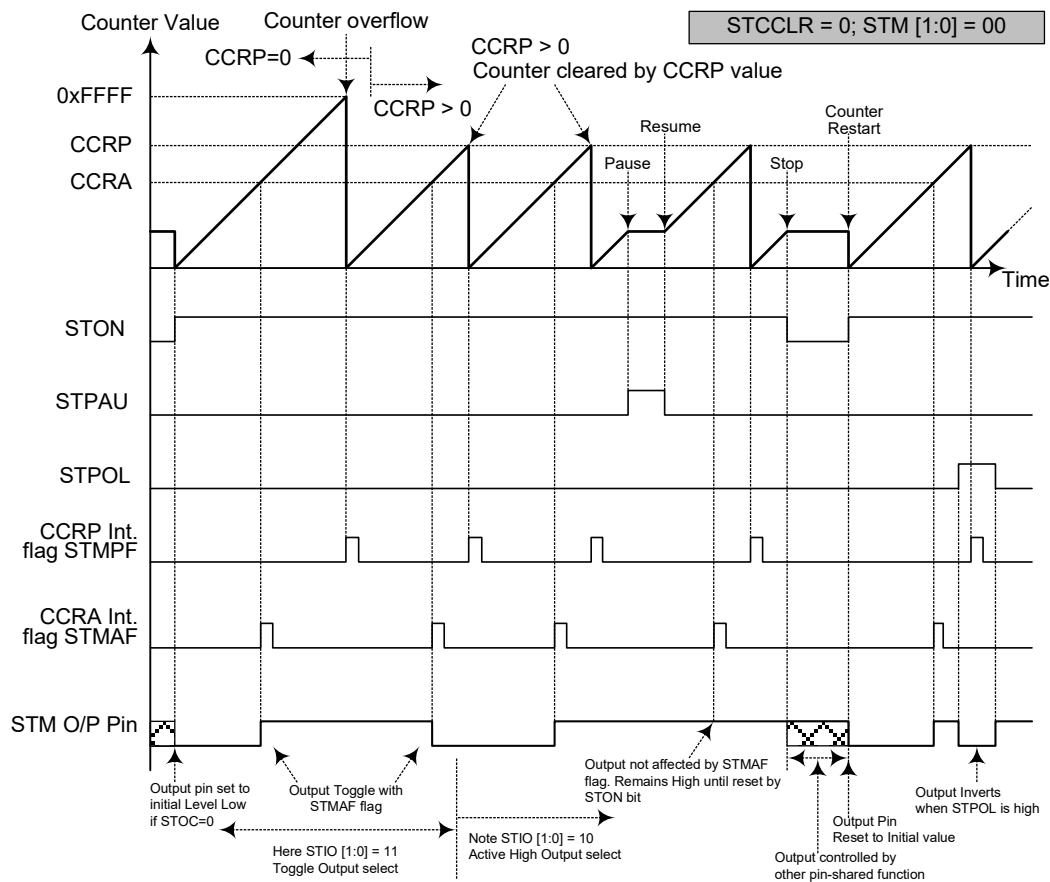
The Standard Type TM can operate in one of five operating modes, Compare Match Output Mode, PWM Output Mode, Single Pulse Output Mode, Capture Input Mode or Timer/Counter Mode. The operating mode is selected using the STM1 and STM0 bits in the STMC1 register.

Compare Match Output Mode

To select this mode, bits STM1 and STM0 in the STMC1 register, should be set to 00 respectively. In this mode once the counter is enabled and running it can be cleared by three methods. These are a counter overflow, a compare match from Comparator A and a compare match from Comparator P. When the STCCLR bit is low, there are two ways in which the counter can be cleared. One is when a compare match from Comparator P, the other is when the CCRP bits are all zero which allows the counter to overflow. Here both STMAF and STMPF interrupt request flags for Comparator A and Comparator P respectively, will both be generated.

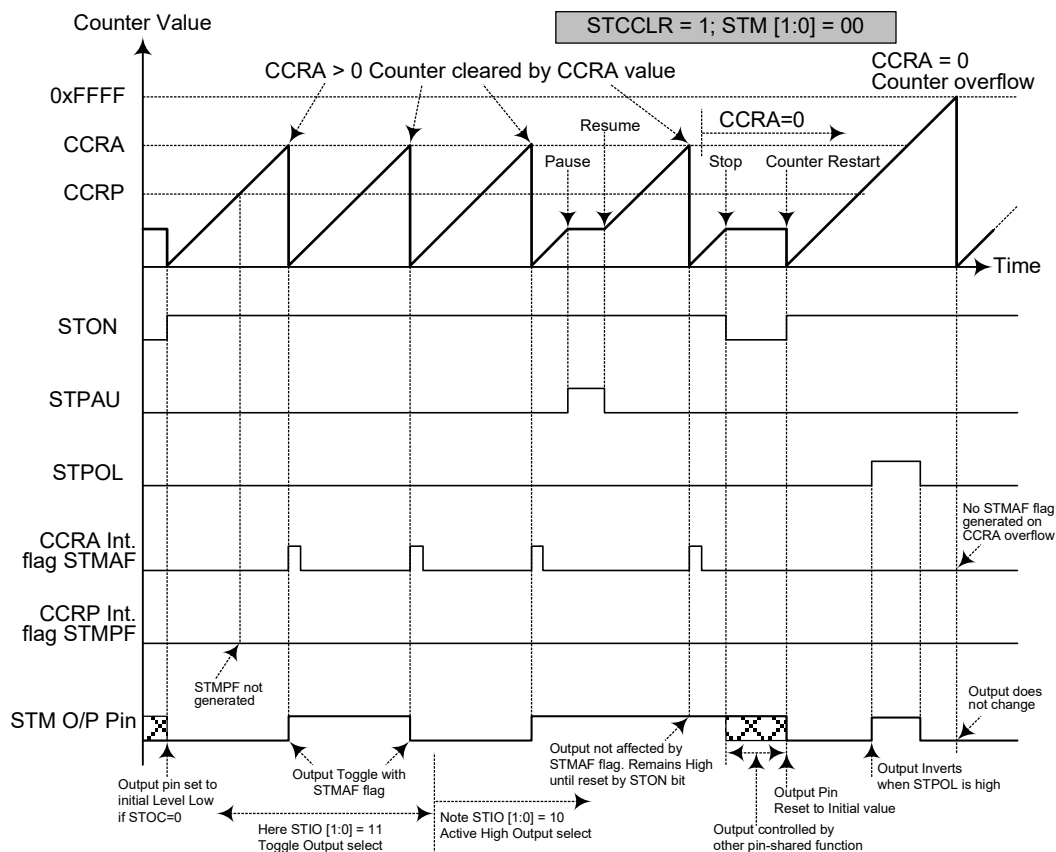
If the STCCLR bit in the STMC1 register is high then the counter will be cleared when a compare match occurs from Comparator A. However, here only the STMAF interrupt request flag will be generated even if the value of the CCRP bits is less than that of the CCRA registers. Therefore when STCCLR is high no STMPF interrupt request flag will be generated. In the Compare Match Output Mode, the CCRA can not be set to “0”.

As the name of the mode suggests, after a comparison is made, the STM output pin, will change state. The STM output pin condition however only changes state when a STMAF interrupt request flag is generated after a compare match occurs from Comparator A. The STMPF interrupt request flag, generated from a compare match occurs from Comparator P, will have no effect on the STM output pin. The way in which the STM output pin changes state are determined by the condition of the STIO1 and STIO0 bits in the STMC1 register. The STM output pin can be selected using the STIO1 and STIO0 bits to go high, to go low or to toggle from its present condition when a compare match occurs from Comparator A. The initial condition of the STM output pin, which is setup after the STON bit changes from low to high, is setup using the STOC bit. Note that if the STIO1 and STIO0 bits are zero then no pin change will take place.



Compare Match Output Mode – STCCLR=0

- Note: 1. With STCCLR=0 a Comparator P match will clear the counter
 2. The STMn output pin is controlled only by the STMAF flag
 3. The output pin is reset to its initial state by a STON bit rising edge



Compare Match Output Mode – STCCLR=1

- Note: 1. With STCCLR=1 a Comparator A match will clear the counter
2. The STM output pin is controlled only by the STMAF flag
3. The output pin is reset to its initial state by a STON bit rising edge
4. A STMPF flag is not generated when STCCLR=1

Timer/Counter Mode

To select this mode, bits STM1 and STM0 in the STMC1 register should be set to 11 respectively. The Timer/Counter Mode operates in an identical way to the Compare Match Output Mode generating the same interrupt flags. The exception is that in the Timer/Counter Mode the STM output pin is not used. Therefore the above description and Timing Diagrams for the Compare Match Output Mode can be used to understand its function. As the STM output pin is not used in this mode, the pin can be used as a normal I/O pin or other pin-shared function.

PWM Output Mode

To select this mode, bits STM1 and STM0 in the STMC1 register should be set to 10 respectively and also the STIO1 and STIO0 bits should be set to 10 respectively. The PWM function within the STM is useful for applications which require functions such as motor control, heating control, illumination control etc. By providing a signal of fixed frequency but of varying duty cycle on the STM output pin, a square wave AC waveform can be generated with varying equivalent DC RMS values.

As both the period and duty cycle of the PWM waveform can be controlled, the choice of generated waveform is extremely flexible. In the PWM mode, the STCCLR bit has no effect as the PWM period. Both of the CCRA and CCRP registers are used to generate the PWM waveform, one register is used to clear the internal counter and thus control the PWM waveform frequency, while the other one is used to control the duty cycle. Which register is used to control either frequency or duty cycle is determined using the STDPX bit in the STMC1 register. The PWM waveform frequency and duty cycle can therefore be controlled by the values in the CCRA and CCRP registers.

An interrupt flag, one for each of the CCRA and CCRP, will be generated when a compare match occurs from either Comparator A or Comparator P. The STOC bit in the STMC1 register is used to select the required polarity of the PWM waveform while the two STIO1 and STIO0 bits are used to enable the PWM output or to force the STM output pin to a fixed high or low level. The STPOL bit is used to reverse the polarity of the PWM output waveform.

• 16-bit STM, PWM Mode, Edge-aligned Mode, STDPX=0

CCRP	1~255	0
Period	CCRPx256	65536
Duty	CCRA	

If $f_{SYS}=16\text{MHz}$, STM clock source is $f_{SYS}/4$, CCRP=2 and CCRA=128,

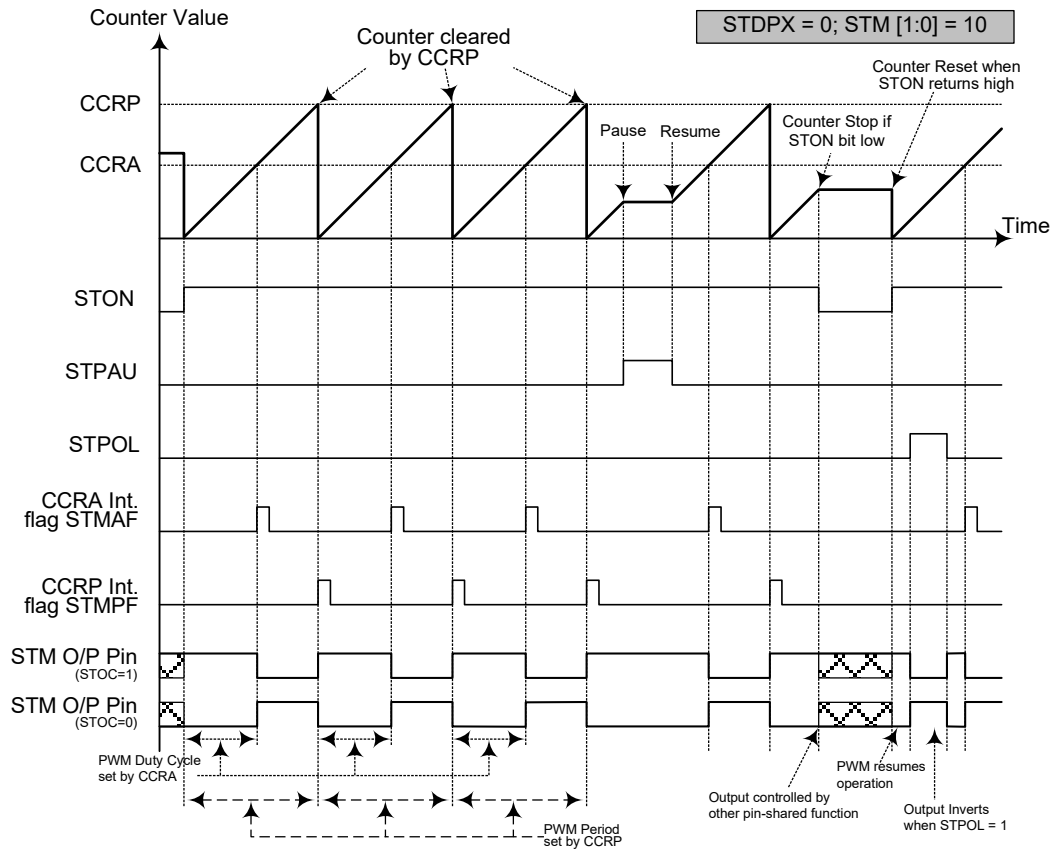
The STM PWM output frequency= $(f_{SYS}/4) / (2 \times 256) = f_{SYS}/2048 = 7.8125 \text{ kHz}$,
duty= $128/(2 \times 256) = 25\%$.

If the Duty value defined by the CCRA register is equal to or greater than the Period value, then the PWM output duty is 100%.

• 16-bit STM, PWM Mode, Edge-aligned Mode, STDPX=1

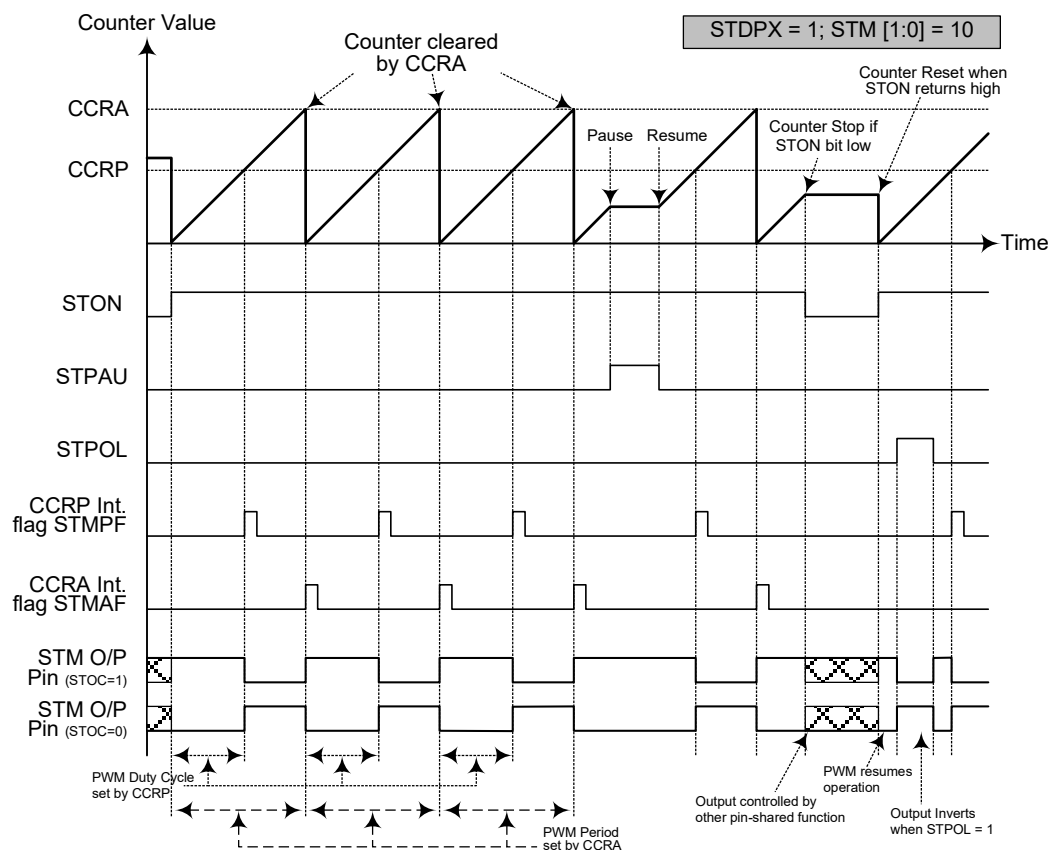
CCRP	1~255	0
Period	CCRA	
Duty	CCRPx256	65536

The PWM output period is determined by the CCRA register value together with the TM clock while the PWM duty cycle is defined by the CCRP register value except when the CCRP value is equal to 0.



PWM Output Mode – STDPX=0

- Note: 1. Here STDPX=0 – Counter cleared by CCRP
 2. A counter clear sets the PWM Period
 3. The internal PWM function continues running even when STIO [1:0]=00 or 01
 4. The STCCLR bit has no influence on PWM operation



PWM Output Mode – STDPX=1

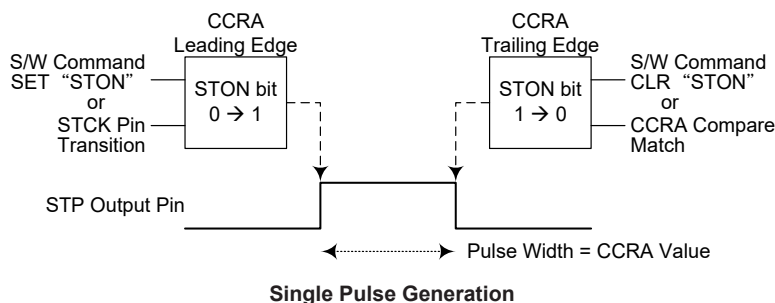
- Note: 1. Here STDPX=1 – Counter cleared by CCRA
 2. A counter clear sets the PWM Period
 3. The internal PWM function continues even when STIO [1:0]=00 or 01
 4. The STCCLR bit has no influence on PWM operation

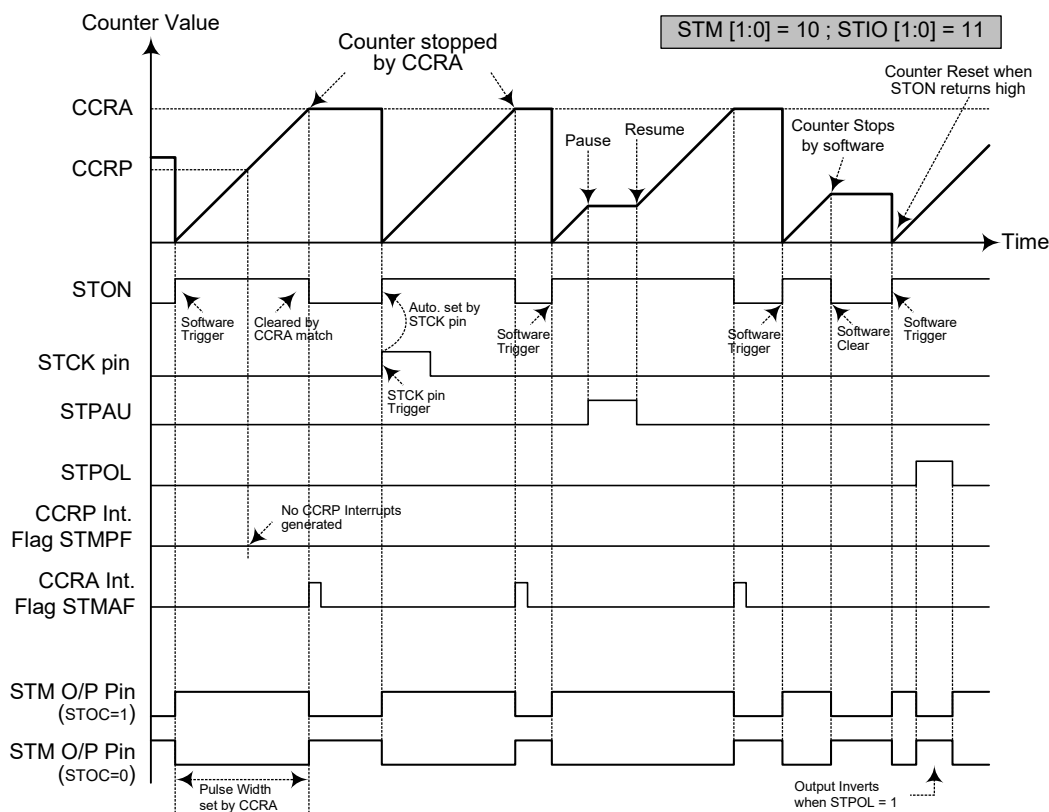
Single Pulse Output Mode

To select this mode, bits STM1 and STM0 in the STMC1 register should be set to 10 respectively and also the STIO1 and STIO0 bits should be set to 11 respectively. The Single Pulse Output Mode, as the name suggests, will generate a single shot pulse on the STM output pin.

The trigger for the pulse output leading edge is a low to high transition of the STON bit, which can be implemented using the application program. However in the Single Pulse Mode, the STON bit can also be made to automatically change from low to high using the external STCK pin, which will in turn initiate the Single Pulse output. When the STON bit transitions to a high level, the counter will start running and the pulse leading edge will be generated. The STON bit should remain high when the pulse is in its active state. The generated pulse trailing edge will be generated when the STON bit is cleared to zero, which can be implemented using the application program or when a compare match occurs from Comparator A.

However a compare match from Comparator A will also automatically clear the STON bit and thus generate the Single Pulse output trailing edge. In this way the CCRA value can be used to control the pulse width. A compare match from Comparator A will also generate a STM interrupt. The counter can only be reset back to zero when the STON bit changes from low to high when the counter restarts. In the Single Pulse Mode CCRP is not used. The STCCLR and STDPX bits are not used in this Mode.





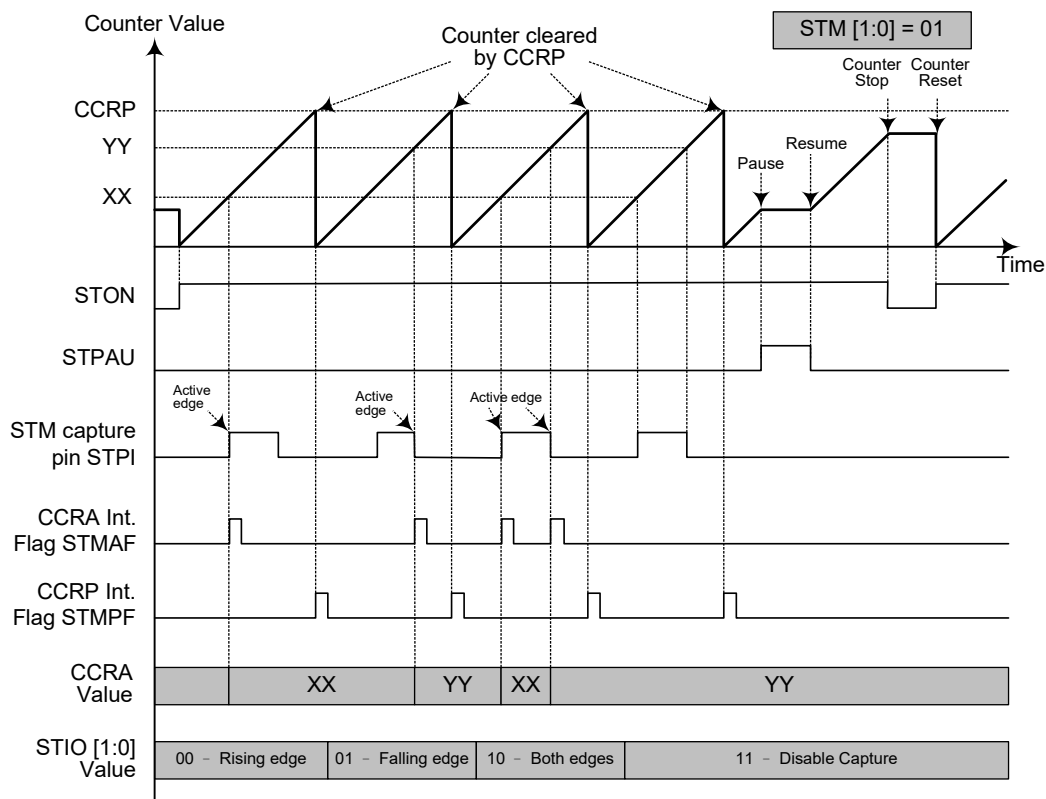
Single Pulse Mode

- Note:
1. Counter stopped by CCRA
 2. CCRP is not used
 3. The pulse triggered by the STCK pin or by setting the STON bit high
 4. A STCK pin active edge will automatically set the STON bit high.
 5. In the Single Pulse Mode, STIO [1:0] must be set to "11" and can not be changed.

Capture Input Mode

To select this mode bits STM1 and STM0 in the STMC1 register should be set to 01 respectively. This mode enables external signals to capture and store the present value of the internal counter and can therefore be used for applications such as pulse width measurements. The external signal is supplied on the STPI pin, whose active edge can be a rising edge, a falling edge or both rising and falling edges; the active edge transition type is selected using the STIO1 and STIO0 bits in the STMC1 register. The counter is started when the STON bit changes from low to high which is initiated using the application program.

When the required edge transition appears on the STPI pin the present value in the counter will be latched into the CCRA registers and a STM interrupt generated. Irrespective of what events occur on the STPI pin the counter will continue to free run until the STON bit changes from high to low. When a CCRP compare match occurs the counter will reset back to zero; in this way the CCRP value can be used to control the maximum counter value. When a CCRP compare match occurs from Comparator P, a STM interrupt will also be generated. Counting the number of overflow interrupt signals from the CCRP can be a useful method in measuring long pulse widths. The STIO1 and STIO0 bits can select the active trigger edge on the STPI pin to be a rising edge, falling edge or both edge types. If the STIO1 and STIO0 bits are both set high, then no capture operation will take place irrespective of what happens on the STPI pin, however it must be noted that the counter will continue to run. The STCCLR and STDPX bits are not used in this Mode.

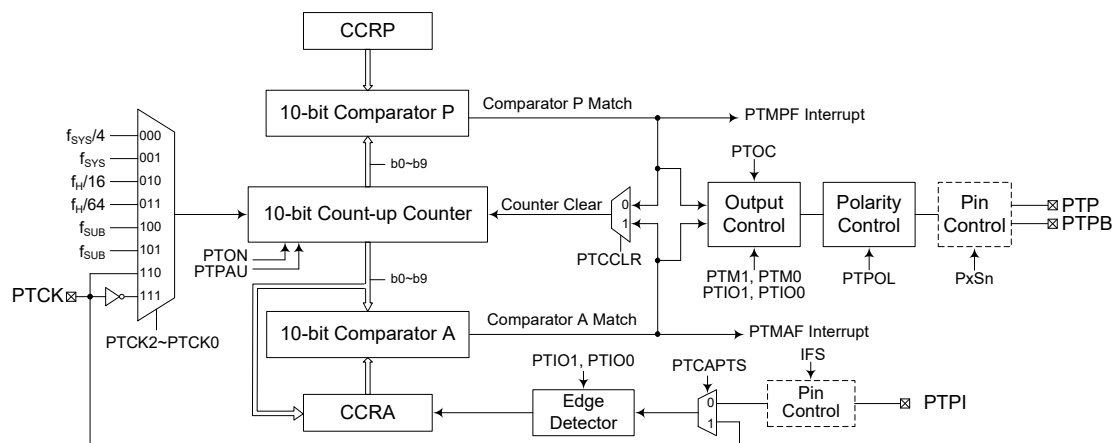


Capture Input Mode

- Note: 1. STM [1:0]=01 and active edge set by the STIO [1:0] bits
 2. A STM Capture input pin active edge transfers the counter value to CCRA
 3. STCCLR bit not used
 4. No output function -- STOC and STPOL bits are not used
 5. CCRP determines the counter value and the counter has a maximum count value when CCRP is equal to zero.

The Periodic Type TM contains five operating modes, which are Compare Match Output, Timer/Event Counter, Capture Input, Single Pulse Output and PWM Output modes. The Periodic TM can also be controlled with two external input pins and can drive two external output pin.

Device	PTM Core	PTM Input Pin	PTM Output Pin
BS67F340 BS67F350 BS67F360 BS67F370	10-bit PTM	PTCK, PTPI	PTP, PTPB



Periodic Type TM Block Diagram

The size of Periodic TM is 10-bit wide and its core is a 10-bit count-up counter which is driven by a user selectable internal or external clock source. There are also two internal comparators with the names, Comparator A and Comparator P. These comparators will compare the value in the counter with CCRP and CCRA registers. The CCRP and CCRA comparators are 10-bit wide whose value is respectively compared with all counter bits.

The only way of changing the value of the 10-bit counter using the application program is to clear the counter by changing the PTON bit from low to high. The counter will also be cleared automatically by a counter overflow or a compare match with one of its associated comparators. When these conditions occur, a PTM interrupt signal will also usually be generated. The Periodic Type TM can operate in a number of different operational modes, can be driven by different clock sources including an input pin and can also control the output pins. All operating setup conditions are selected using relevant internal registers.

Periodic Type TM Register Description

Overall operation of the Periodic TM is controlled using a series of registers. A read only register pair exists to store the internal counter 10-bit value, while two read/write register pairs exist to store the internal 10-bit CCRA and CCRP value. The remaining two registers are control registers which setup the different operating and control modes.

Register Name	Bit							
	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
PTMC0	PTPAU	PTCK2	PTCK1	PTCK0	PTON	—	—	—
PTMC1	PTM1	PTM0	PTIO1	PTIO0	PTOC	PTPOL	PTCAPTS	PTCCLR
PTMDL	D7	D6	D5	D4	D3	D2	D1	D0
PTMDH	—	—	—	—	—	—	D9	D8
PTMAL	D7	D6	D5	D4	D3	D2	D1	D0
PTMAH	—	—	—	—	—	—	D9	D8
PTMRPL	PTRP7	PTRP6	PTRP5	PTRP4	PTnRP3	PTRP2	PTRP1	PTRP0
PTMRPH	—	—	—	—	—	—	PTRP9	PTRP8

Periodic TM Registers List

• PTMDL Register

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Name	D7	D6	D5	D4	D3	D2	D1	D0
R/W	R	R	R	R	R	R	R	R
POR	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit 7~0 PTM Counter Low Byte Register bit 7 ~ bit 0
PTM 10-bit Counter bit 7 ~ bit 0

• PTMDH Register

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Name	—	—	—	—	—	—	D9	D8
R/W	—	—	—	—	—	—	R	R
POR	—	—	—	—	—	—	0	0

Bit 7~2 Unimplemented, read as “0”
Bit 1~0 PTM Counter High Byte Register bit 1 ~ bit 0
PTM 10-bit Counter bit 9 ~ bit 8

• PTMAL Register

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Name	D7	D6	D5	D4	D3	D2	D1	D0
R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W
POR	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit 7~0 PTM CCRA Low Byte Register bit 7 ~ bit 0
PTM 10-bit CCRA bit 7 ~ bit 0

• **PTMAH Register**

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Name	—	—	—	—	—	—	D9	D8
R/W	—	—	—	—	—	—	R/W	R/W
POR	—	—	—	—	—	—	0	0

Bit 7~2 Unimplemented, read as “0”

Bit 1~0 PTM CCRA High Byte Register bit 1 ~ bit 0
PTM 10-bit CCRA bit 9 ~ bit 8

• **PTMRPL Register**

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Name	PTRP7	PTRP6	PTRP5	PTRP4	PTRP3	PTRP2	PTRP1	PTRP0
R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W
POR	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit 7~0 **PTRP7~PTRP0**: PTM CCRP Low Byte Register bit 7 ~ bit 0
PTM 10-bit CCRP bit 7 ~ bit 0

• **PTMRPH Register**

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Name	—	—	—	—	—	—	PTRP9	PTRP8
R/W	—	—	—	—	—	—	R/W	R/W
POR	—	—	—	—	—	—	0	0

Bit 7~2 Unimplemented, read as “0”

Bit 1~0 **PTRP9~PTRP8**: PTM CCRP High Byte Register bit 1 ~ bit 0
PTM 10-bit CCRP bit 9 ~ bit 8

• **PTMC0 Register**

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Name	PTPAU	PTCK2	PTCK1	PTCK0	PTON	—	—	—
R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	—	—	—
POR	0	0	0	0	0	—	—	—

Bit 7 **PTPAU**: PTM Counter Pause control
0: Run
1: Pause

The counter can be paused by setting this bit high. Clearing the bit to zero restores normal counter operation. When in a Pause condition the PTM will remain powered up and continue to consume power. The counter will retain its residual value when this bit changes from low to high and resume counting from this value when the bit changes to a low value again.

Bit 6~4 **PTCK2~PTCK0**: Select PTM Counter clock
000: $f_{SYS}/4$
001: f_{SYS}
010: $f_H/16$
011: $f_H/64$
100: f_{SUB}
101: f_{SUB}
110: PTCK rising edge clock
111: PTCK falling edge clock

These three bits are used to select the clock source for the PTM. The external pin clock source can be chosen to be active on the rising or falling edge. The clock source f_{SYS} is the system clock, while f_H and f_{SUB} are other internal clocks, the details of which can be found in the oscillator section.

Bit 3 **PTON**: PTM Counter On/Off control
 0: Off
 1: On

This bit controls the overall on/off function of the PTM. Setting the bit high enables the counter to run while clearing the bit disables the PTM. Clearing this bit to zero will stop the counter from counting and turn off the PTM which will reduce its power consumption. When the bit changes state from low to high the internal counter value will be reset to zero, however when the bit changes from high to low, the internal counter will retain its residual value until the bit returns high again. If the PTM is in the Compare Match Output Mode then the PTM output pin will be reset to its initial condition, as specified by the PTOC bit, when the PTON bit changes from low to high.

Bit 2~0 Unimplemented, read as “0”

• **PTMC1 Register**

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Name	PTM1	PTM0	PTIO1	PTIO0	PTOC	PTPOL	PTCAPTS	PTCCLR
R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W
POR	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit 7~6 **PTM1~PTM0**: Select PTM Operating Mode
 00: Compare Match Output Mode
 01: Capture Input Mode
 10: PWM Mode or Single Pulse Output Mode
 11: Timer/Counter Mode

These bits setup the required operating mode for the PTM. To ensure reliable operation the PTM should be switched off before any changes are made to the PTM1 and PTM0 bits. In the Timer/Counter Mode, the PTM output pin control will be disabled.

Bit 5~4 **PTIO1~PTIO0**: Select PTM external pin PTP or PTPI/PTCK function

Compare Match Output Mode

00: No change
 01: Output low
 10: Output high
 11: Toggle output

PWM Output Mode/Single Pulse Output Mode

00: PWM output inactive state
 01: PWM output active state
 10: PWM output
 11: Single Pulse Output

Capture Input Mode

00: Input capture at rising edge of PTPI or PTCK
 01: Input capture at falling edge of PTPI or PTCK
 10: Input capture at rising/falling edge of PTPI or PTCK
 11: Input capture disabled

Timer/Counter Mode

Unused

These two bits are used to determine how the PTM output pin changes state when a certain condition is reached. The function that these bits select depends upon in which mode the PTM is running.

In the Compare Match Output Mode, the PTIO1 and PTIO0 bits determine how the PTM output pin changes state when a compare match occurs from the Comparator A. The PTM output pin can be setup to switch high, switch low or to toggle its present state when a compare match occurs from the Comparator A. When the bits are both zero, then no change will take place on the output. The initial value of the PTM output pin should be setup using the PTOC bit in the PTMC1 register. Note that the output level requested by the PTIO1 and PTIO0 bits must be different from the initial value setup using the PTOC bit otherwise no change will occur on the PTM output pin when

a compare match occurs. After the PTM output pin changes state, it can be reset to its initial level by changing the level of the PTON bit from low to high.

In the PWM Mode, the PTIO1 and PTIO0 bits determine how the TM output pin changes state when a certain compare match condition occurs. The PTM output function is modified by changing these two bits. It is necessary to only change the values of the PTIO1 and PTIO0 bits only after the PTM has been switched off. Unpredictable PWM outputs will occur if the PTIO1 and PTIO0 bits are changed when the PTM is running.

Bit 3 **PTOC**: PTM PTP Output control

Compare Match Output Mode

0: Initial low

1: Initial high

PWM Output Mode/Single Pulse Output Mode

0: Active low

1: Active high

This is the output control bit for the PTM output pin. Its operation depends upon whether PTM is being used in the Compare Match Output Mode or in the PWM Mode/Single Pulse Output Mode. It has no effect if the PTM is in the Timer/Counter Mode. In the Compare Match Output Mode it determines the logic level of the PTM output pin before a compare match occurs. In the PWM Mode/Single Pulse Output Mode it determines if the PWM signal is active high or active low.

Bit 2 **PTPOL**: PTM PTP Output polarity control

0: Non-inverted

1: Inverted

This bit controls the polarity of the PTP output pin. When the bit is set high the PTM output pin will be inverted and not inverted when the bit is zero. It has no effect if the PTM is in the Timer/Counter Mode.

Bit 1 **PTCAPTS**: PTM Capture Trigger Source selection

0: From PTPI pin

1: From PTCK pin

Bit 0 **PTCCLR**: PTM Counter Clear condition selection

0: Comparator P match

1: Comparator A match

This bit is used to select the method which clears the counter. Remember that the Periodic TM contains two comparators, Comparator A and Comparator P, either of which can be selected to clear the internal counter. With the PTCCLR bit set high, the counter will be cleared when a compare match occurs from the Comparator A. When the bit is low, the counter will be cleared when a compare match occurs from the Comparator P or with a counter overflow. A counter overflow clearing method can only be implemented if the CCRP bits are all cleared to zero. The PTCCLR bit is not used in the PWM Output, Single Pulse Output or Capture Input Mode.

Periodic Type TM Operation Modes

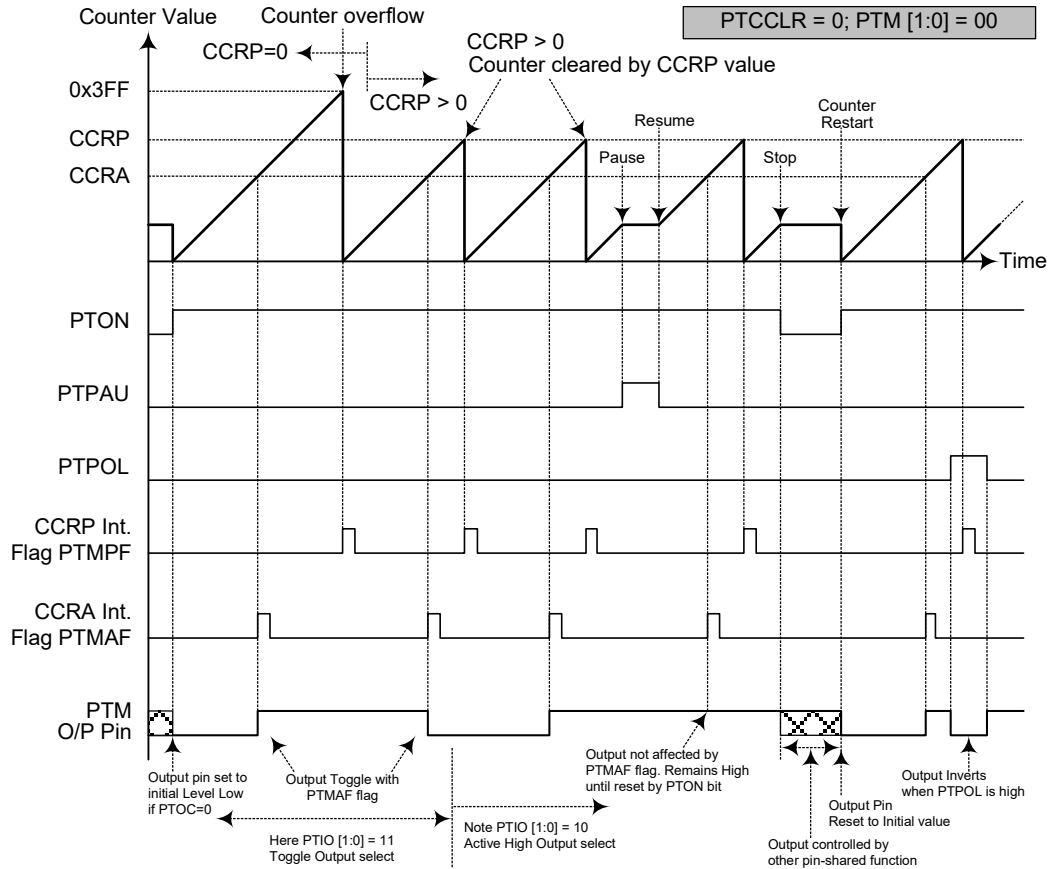
The Periodic Type TM can operate in one of five operating modes, Compare Match Output Mode, PWM Output Mode, Single Pulse Output Mode, Capture Input Mode or Timer/Counter Mode. The operating mode is selected using the PTM1 and PTM0 bits in the PTMC1 register.

Compare Match Output Mode

To select this mode, bits PTM1 and PTM0 in the PTMC1 register, should be set to 00 respectively. In this mode once the counter is enabled and running it can be cleared by three methods. These are a counter overflow, a compare match from Comparator A and a compare match from Comparator P. When the PTCCLR bit is low, there are two ways in which the counter can be cleared. One is when a compare match from Comparator P, the other is when the CCRP bits are all zero which allows the counter to overflow. Here both PTMAF and PTMPF interrupt request flags for Comparator A and Comparator P respectively, will both be generated.

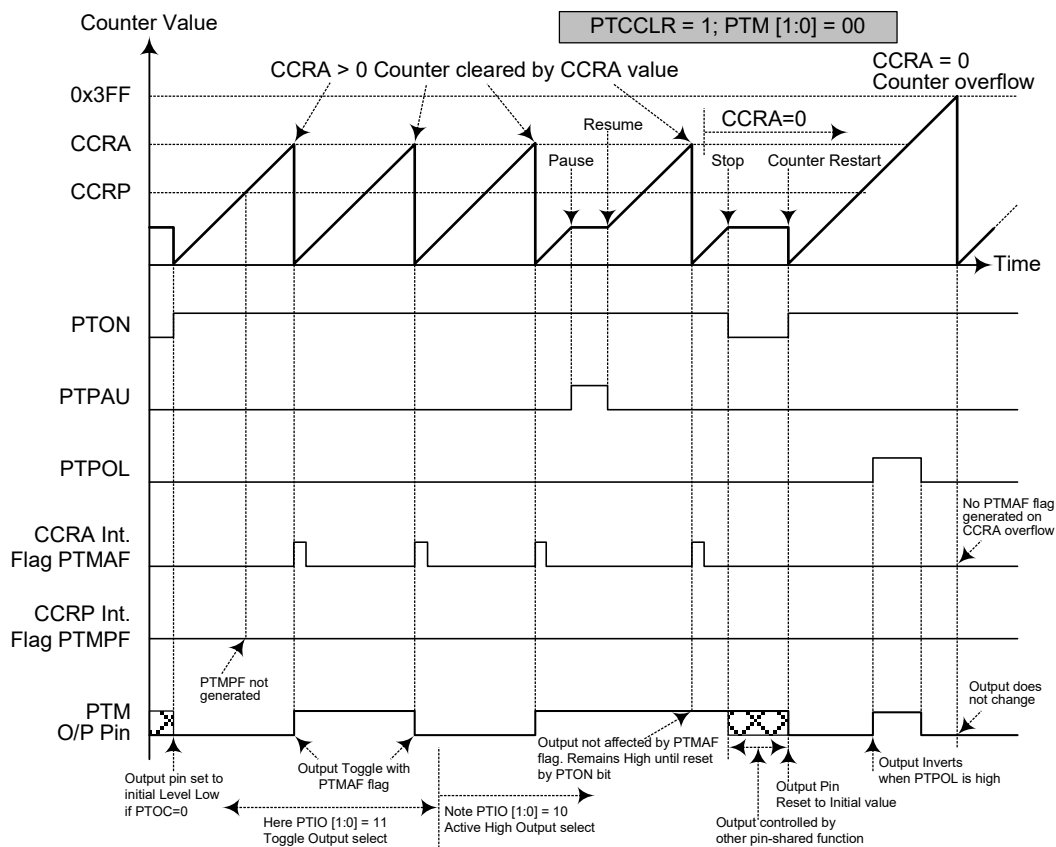
If the PTCCLR bit in the PTMC1 register is high then the counter will be cleared when a compare match occurs from Comparator A. However, here only the PTMAF interrupt request flag will be generated even if the value of the CCRP bits is less than that of the CCRA registers. Therefore when PTCCLR is high no PTMPF interrupt request flag will be generated. In the Compare Match Output Mode, the CCRA can not be set to “0”.

As the name of the mode suggests, after a comparison is made, the PTM output pin will change state. The PTM output pin condition however only changes state when a PTMAF interrupt request flag is generated after a compare match occurs from Comparator A. The PTMPF interrupt request flag, generated from a compare match occurs from Comparator P, will have no effect on the PTM output pin. The way in which the PTM output pin changes state are determined by the condition of the PTIO1 and PTIO0 bits in the PTMC1 register. The PTM output pin can be selected using the PTIO1 and PTIO0 bits to go high, to go low or to toggle from its present condition when a compare match occurs from Comparator A. The initial condition of the PTM output pin, which is setup after the PTON bit changes from low to high, is setup using the PTOC bit. Note that if the PTIO1 and PTIO0 bits are zero then no pin change will take place.



Compare Match Output Mode – PTCCLR=0

- Note: 1. With PTCCLR=0, a Comparator P match will clear the counter
 2. The PTM output pin is controlled only by the PTMAF flag
 3. The output pin is reset to its initial state by a PTON bit rising edge



Compare Match Output Mode – PTCCLR=1

- Note: 1. With $PTCCLR=1$, a Comparator A match will clear the counter
 2. The PTM output pin is controlled only by the PTMAF flag
 3. The output pin is reset to its initial state by a PTON bit rising edge
 4. A PTMPF flag is not generated when $PTCCLR = 1$

Timer/Counter Mode

To select this mode, bits PTM1 and PTM0 in the PTMC1 register should be set to 11 respectively. The Timer/Counter Mode operates in an identical way to the Compare Match Output Mode generating the same interrupt flags. The exception is that in the Timer/Counter Mode the PTM output pin is not used. Therefore the above description and Timing Diagrams for the Compare Match Output Mode can be used to understand its function. As the PTM output pin is not used in this mode, the pin can be used as a normal I/O pin or other pin-shared function.

PWM Output Mode

To select this mode, bits PTM1 and PTM0 in the PTMC1 register should be set to 10 respectively and also the PTIO1 and PTIO0 bits should be set to 10 respectively. The PWM function within the PTM is useful for applications which require functions such as motor control, heating control, illumination control, etc. By providing a signal of fixed frequency but of varying duty cycle on the PTM output pin, a square wave AC waveform can be generated with varying equivalent DC RMS values.

As both the period and duty cycle of the PWM waveform can be controlled, the choice of generated waveform is extremely flexible. In the PWM mode, the PTCCLR bit has no effect as the PWM period. Both of the CCRP and CCRA registers are used to generate the PWM waveform, one register is used to clear the internal counter and thus control the PWM waveform frequency, while the other one is used to control the duty cycle. The PWM waveform frequency and duty cycle can therefore be controlled by the values in the CCRA and CCRP registers.

An interrupt flag, one for each of the CCRA and CCRP, will be generated when a compare match occurs from either Comparator A or Comparator P. The PTOC bit in the PTMC1 register is used to select the required polarity of the PWM waveform while the two PTIO1 and PTIO0 bits are used to enable the PWM output or to force the PTM output pin to a fixed high or low level. The PTPOL bit is used to reverse the polarity of the PWM output waveform.

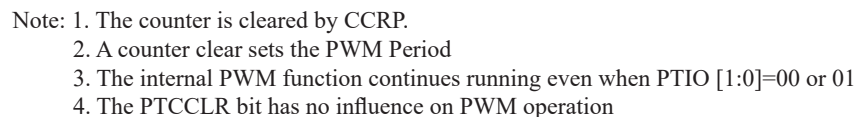
• 10-bit PTM, PWM Mode

CCRP	1~1023	0
Period	1~1023	1024
Duty	CCRA	

If $f_{SYS}=16\text{MHz}$, TM clock source select $f_{SYS}/4$, CCRP=512 and CCRA=128,

The PTM PWM output frequency= $(f_{SYS}/4)/512=f_{SYS}/2048=7.8125\text{kHz}$, duty=128/512=25%,

If the Duty value defined by the CCRA register is equal to or greater than the Period value, then the PWM output duty is 100%.

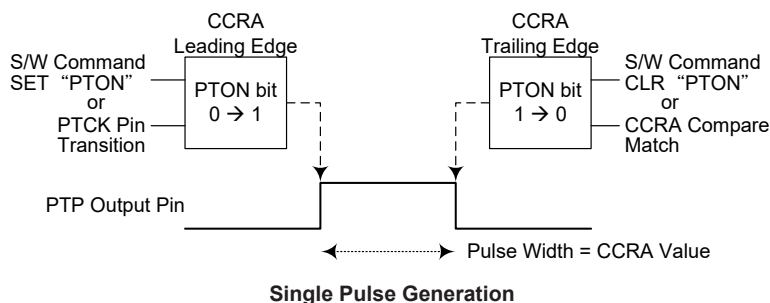


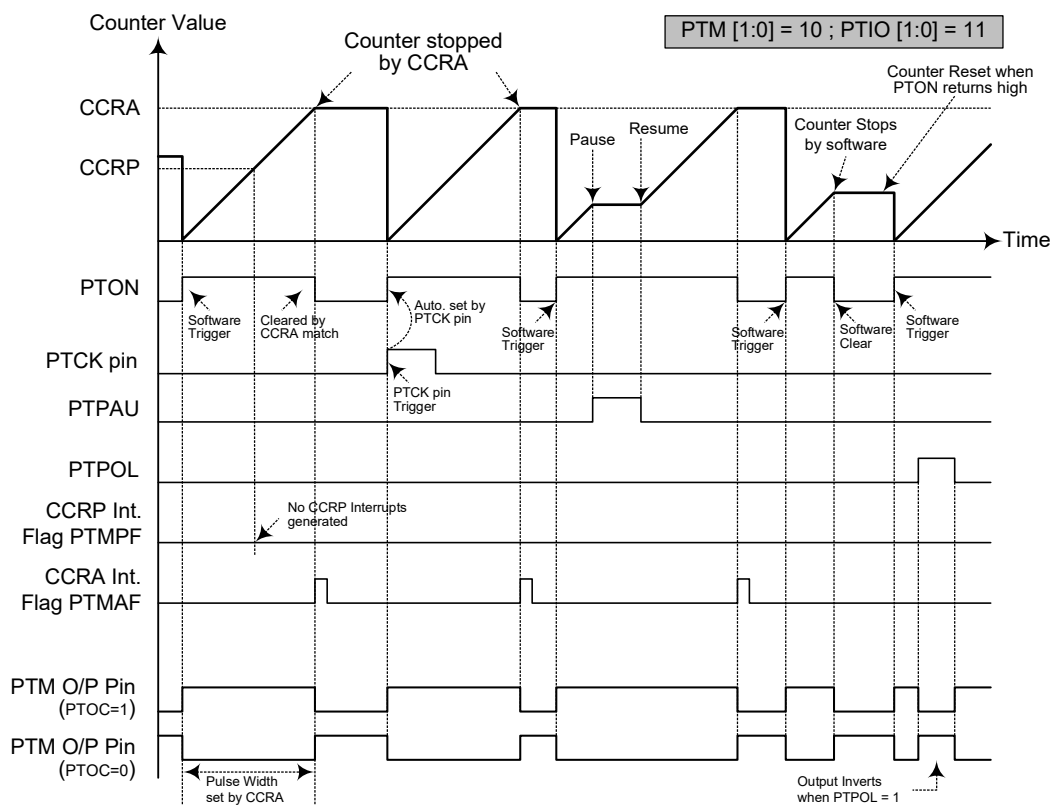
Single Pulse Output Mode

To select this mode, bits PTM1 and PTM0 in the PTMC1 register should be set to 10 respectively and also the PTIO1 and PTIO0 bits should be set to 11 respectively. The Single Pulse Output Mode, as the name suggests, will generate a single shot pulse on the PTM output pin.

The trigger for the pulse output leading edge is a low to high transition of the PTON bit, which can be implemented using the application program. However in the Single Pulse Mode, the PTON bit can also be made to automatically change from low to high using the external PTCK pin, which will in turn initiate the Single Pulse output. When the PTON bit transitions to a high level, the counter will start running and the pulse leading edge will be generated. The PTON bit should remain high when the pulse is in its active state. The generated pulse trailing edge will be generated when the PTON bit is cleared to zero, which can be implemented using the application program or when a compare match occurs from Comparator A.

However a compare match from Comparator A will also automatically clear the PTON bit and thus generate the Single Pulse output trailing edge. In this way the CCRA value can be used to control the pulse width. A compare match from Comparator A will also generate a PTM interrupt. The counter can only be reset back to zero when the PTON bit changes from low to high when the counter restarts. In the Single Pulse Mode CCRP is not used. The PTCCLR is not used in this Mode.





Single Pulse Mode

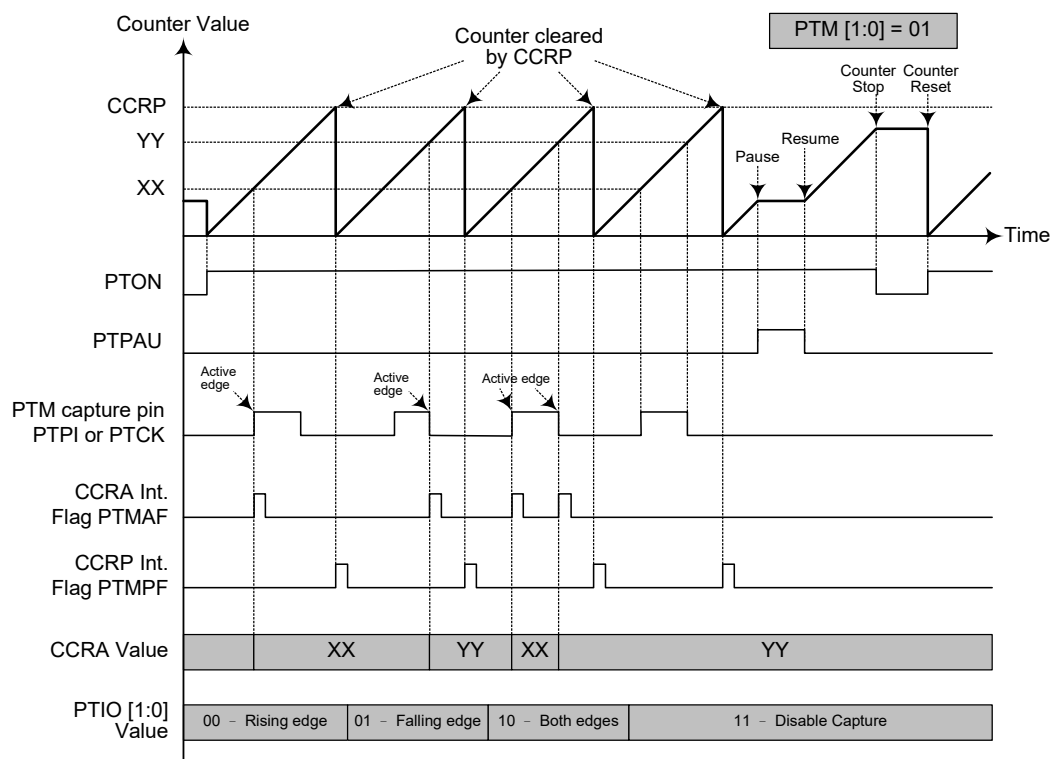
- Note:
1. Counter stopped by CCRA
 2. CCRP is not used
 3. The pulse triggered by the PTCK pin or by setting the PTON bit high
 4. A PTCK pin active edge will automatically set the PTON bit high.
 5. In the Single Pulse Mode, PTIO [1:0] must be set to “11” and can not be changed.

Capture Input Mode

To select this mode bits PTM1 and PTM0 in the PTMC1 register should be set to 01 respectively. This mode enables external signals to capture and store the present value of the internal counter and can therefore be used for applications such as pulse width measurements. The external signal is supplied on the PTPI or PTCK pin, selected by the PTCAPTS bit in the PTMC1 register. The input pin active edge can be either a rising edge, a falling edge or both rising and falling edges; the active edge transition type is selected using the PTIO1 and PTIO0 bits in the PTMC1 register. The counter is started when the PTON bit changes from low to high which is initiated using the application program.

When the required edge transition appears on the PTPI or PTCK pin the present value in the counter will be latched into the CCRA registers and a PTM interrupt generated. Irrespective of what events occur on the PTPI or PTCK pin the counter will continue to free run until the PTON bit changes from high to low. When a CCRP compare match occurs the counter will reset back to zero; in this way the CCRP value can be used to control the maximum counter value. When a CCRP compare match occurs from Comparator P, a PTM interrupt will also be generated. Counting the number of overflow interrupt signals from the CCRP can be a useful method in measuring long pulse widths. The PTIO1 and PTIO0 bits can select the active trigger edge on the PTPI or PTCK pin to be a rising edge, falling edge or both edge types. If the PTIO1 and PTIO0 bits are both set high, then no capture operation will take place irrespective of what happens on the PTPI or PTCK pin, however it must be noted that the counter will continue to run.

As the PTPI or PTCK pin is pin shared with other functions, care must be taken if the PTM is in the Input Capture Mode. This is because if the pin is setup as an output, then any transitions on this pin may cause an input capture operation to be executed. The PTCCLR, PTOC and PTPOL bits are not used in this Mode.



Capture Input Mode

- Note: 1. PTM [1:0]=01 and active edge set by the PTIO [1:0] bits
 2. A PTM Capture input pin active edge transfers the counter value to CCRA
 3. PTCCLR bit not used
 4. No output function – PTOC and PTPOL bits are not used
 5. CCRP determines the counter value and the counter has a maximum count value when CCRP is equal to zero.

Analog to Digital Converter

The need to interface to real world analog signals is a common requirement for many electronic systems. However, to properly process these signals by a microcontroller, they must first be converted into digital signals by A/D converters. By integrating the A/D conversion electronic circuitry into the microcontroller, the need for external components is reduced significantly with the corresponding follow-on benefits of lower costs and reduced component space requirements.

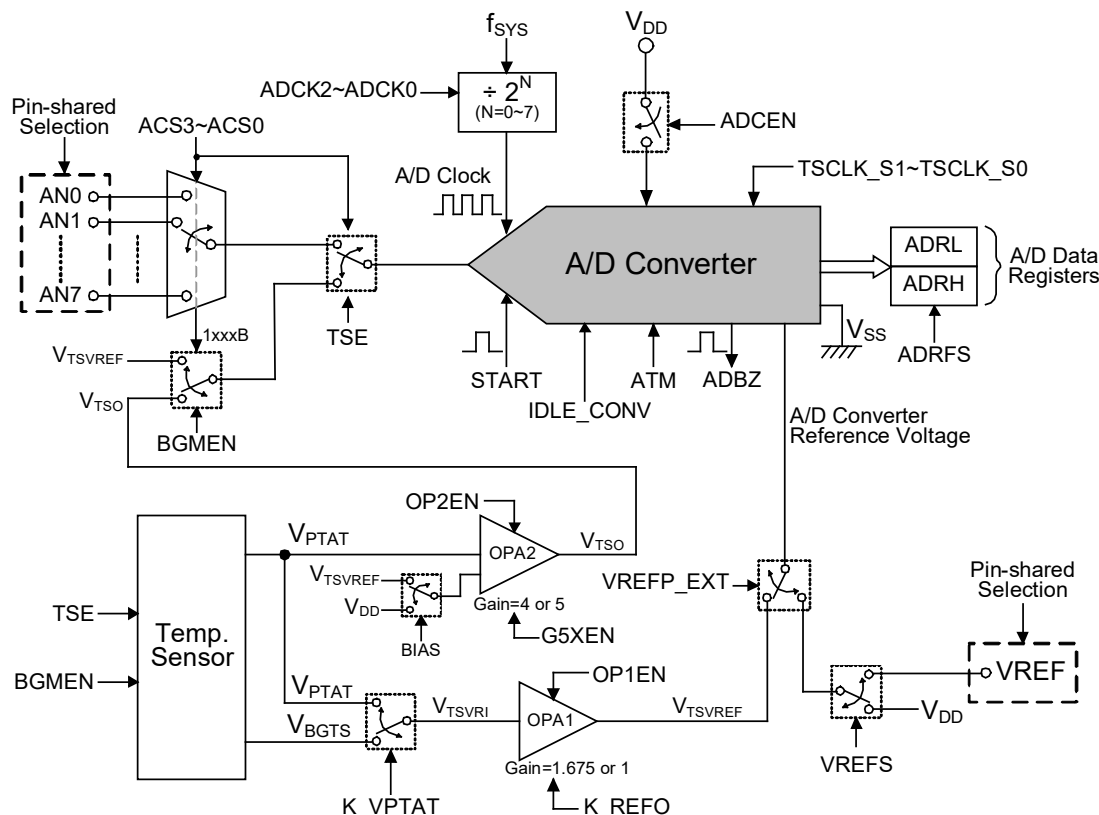
A/D Overview

These devices contain a multi-channel analog to digital converter which can directly interface to external analog signals, such as that from sensors or other control signals and convert these signals directly into a 12-bit digital value. It also can convert the internal signals, such as the Temperature sensor output or Temperature sensor reference voltage, into a 12-bit digital value. The external or internal analog signal to be converted is determined by the ACS3~ACS0 bits together with the TSE and BGMEN bits. When the external analog signal is to be converted, the corresponding pin-shared control bits should first be properly configured and then desired external channel input should be selected using the ACS3~ACS0 bits.

This A/D converter also includes a temperature sensor circuitry which contains a temperature sensor, operational amplifiers and an internal reference voltage. The temperature sensor will detect the temperature and output a voltage proportional to the temperature. The output voltage can be amplified by the OPA and then converted to an 12-bit digital data using the A/D converter.

The accompanying block diagram shows the internal structure of the A/D converter with temperature sensor together with its associated registers and control bits.

Device	External Input Channels	Internal Signal	A/D Channel Select Bits
BS67F340 BS67F350 BS67F360 BS67F370	8: AN0~AN7	2: V _{TSO} , V _{TSVREF}	ACS3~ACS0 TSE, BGMEN



A/D Converter with Temperature Sensor Diagram

Registers Descriptions

Overall operation of the A/D converter with Temperature sensor is controlled using eight registers. A read only register pair exists to store the A/D Converter data 12-bit value. Two registers, ADCR0 and ADCR1, are the control registers which setup the operating and control function of the A/D converter. The remaining four registers are the temperature sensor control registers which select the temperature sensor signal to be converted and the reference voltage source together with the temperature sensor conversion clock cycles.

Register Name	Bit							
	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
ADRL (ADRFs=0)	D3	D2	D1	D0	—	—	—	—
ADRL (ADRFs=1)	D7	D6	D5	D4	D3	D2	D1	D0
ADRH (ADRFs=0)	D11	D10	D9	D8	D7	D6	D5	D4
ADRH (ADRFs=1)	—	—	—	—	D11	D10	D9	D8
ADCR0	START	ADBZ	ADCEN	ADRFs	ACS3	ACS2	ACS1	ACS0
ADCR1	ATM	—	IDLE_CONV	VREFS	—	ADCK2	ADCK1	ADCK0
TSC0	BGMEN	G5XEN	K_REFO	—	—	—	—	—
TSC1	TSE	OP2EN	OP1EN	—	—	—	—	—
TSC2	VREFP_EXT	BIAS	D5	D4	D3	D2	TSCLK_S1	TSCLK_S0
TSC3	—	—	K_VPTAT	—	—	—	—	—

A/D Converter with Temperature Sensor Registers List

A/D Converter Data Registers – ADRL, ADRH

As these devices contain an internal 12-bit A/D converter, it requires two data registers to store the converted value. These are a high byte register, known as ADRH, and a low byte register, known as ADRL. After the conversion process takes place, these registers can be directly read by the microcontroller to obtain the digitised conversion value. As only 12 bits of the 16-bit register space is utilised, the format in which the data is stored is controlled by the ADRFS bit in the ADCR0 register as shown in the accompanying table. D0~D11 are the A/D conversion result data bits. Any unused bits will be read as zero. Note that the A/D data register contents can only be read in the A/D conversion completion interrupt service subroutine when the Auto-conversion mode is enabled by setting the ATM bit in the ADCR1 register to 1. The A/D data registers contents will be cleared to zero if the A/D converter is disabled.

ADRFS	ADRH								ADRL							
	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	D11	D10	D9	D8	D7	D6	D5	D4	D3	D2	D1	D0	0	0	0	0
1	0	0	0	0	D11	D10	D9	D8	D7	D6	D5	D4	D3	D2	D1	D0

A/D Converter Data Registers

A/D Converter Control Registers – ADCR0, ADCR1

To control the function and operation of the A/D converter, two control registers known as ADCR0 and ADCR1 are provided. These 8-bit registers define functions such as the selection of which analog channel is connected to the internal A/D converter, the digitised data format, the A/D clock source as well as controlling the start function and monitoring the A/D converter busy status. As these devices contain only one actual analog to digital converter hardware circuit, each of the external and internal analog signals must be routed to the converter. The ACS3~ACS0 bits in the ADCR0 register and the TSE and BGMEN bits in the TSC1 and TSC0 registers are used to determine that the specific external channel input or relevant internal temperature sensor signal is selected to be converted. If the internal temperature sensor analog signal is selected to be converted, the ACS3~ACS0 bits should be set as “1xxx” together with proper configurations of TSE and BGMEN bits.

TSE	BGMEN	ACS3~ACS0	Input Signals	Description
0	x	x000~x111	AN0~AN7	External channel analog input
1	0	1xxx	VTSO	Temperature Sensor output voltage
1	1	1xxx	VTSVREF	Temperature Sensor reference voltage

A/D Converter Input Signal Selection

The relevant pin-shared function selection bits determine which pins on I/O Ports are used as analog inputs for the A/D converter input and which pins are not to be used as the A/D converter input. When the pin is selected to be an A/D input, its original function whether it is an I/O or other pin-shared function will be removed. In addition, any internal pull-high resistor connected to the pin will be automatically removed if the pin is selected to be an A/D converter input.

• **ADCR0 Register**

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Name	START	ADBZ	ADCEN	ADRF5	ACS3	ACS2	ACS1	ACS0
R/W	R/W	R	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W
POR	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

- Bit 7** **START:** Start the A/D Conversion
0→1→0: Start
This bit is used to initiate an A/D conversion process. The bit is normally low but if set high and then cleared low again, the A/D converter will initiate a conversion process.
- Bit 6** **ADBZ:** A/D Converter busy flag
0: No A/D conversion is in progress
1: A/D conversion is in progress
This read only flag is used to indicate whether the A/D conversion is in progress or not. When the START bit is set from low to high and then to low again, the ADBZ flag will be set to 1 to indicate that the A/D conversion is initiated. The ADBZ flag will be cleared to 0 after the A/D conversion is complete.
- Bit 5** **ADCEN:** A/D Converter function enable control
0: Disable
1: Enable
This bit controls the A/D internal function. This bit should be set to one to enable the A/D converter. If the bit is set low, then the A/D converter will be switched off reducing the device power consumption. When the A/D converter function is disabled, the contents of the A/D data register pair known as ADRH and ADRL will be cleared to zero.
- Bit 4** **ADRF5:** A/D conversion data format select
0: A/D converter data format → ADRH=D [11:4]; ADRL=D [3:0]
1: A/D converter data format → ADRH=D [11:8]; ADRL=D [7:0]
This bit controls the format of the 12-bit converted A/D value in the two A/D data registers. Details are provided in the A/D converter data register section.
- Bit 3~0** **ACS3~ACS0:** A/D converter analog input signal select
0000: External AN0 input
0001: External AN1 input
0010: External AN2 input
0011: External AN3 input
0100: External AN4 input
0101: External AN5 input
0110: External AN6 input
0111: External AN7 input
1xxx: Internal signal from temperature sensor – temperature output voltage or reference voltage
The “1xxx” selection is only available when the TSE bit is set to 1. To select the internal temperature sensor signal to be converted, these bits must be set as “1xxx” when the TSE bit is set to 1. Otherwise, these bits are used to select the external ANn channel input without the regard of the ACS3 value if the TSE bit is cleared to 0.

• **ADCR1 Register**

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Name	ATM	—	IDLE_CONV	VREFS	—	ADCK2	ADCK1	ADCK0
R/W	R/W	—	R/W	R/W	—	R/W	R/W	R/W
POR	0	—	0	0	—	0	0	0

- Bit 7 **ATM:** A/D auto-conversion mode enable control
0: Disable
1: Enable
When this bit is set to 1, the A/D converter will continuously perform the data conversion after the current conversion is complete without configuring the “START” bit by application program. Note that the A/D conversion data can only be read in the A/D conversion completion interrupt service subroutine when the A/D auto-conversion mode is enabled.
- Bit 6 Unimplemented, read as “0”
- Bit 5 **IDLE_CONV:** CPU idle conversion mode enable control
0: Disable
1: Enable
When this bit is set to 1, the A/D conversion with CPU idle mode will be enabled. The CPU will not operate when the A/D converter is operating with the IDLE_CONV bit being set to 1 until the conversion is completed.
- Bit 4 **VREFS:** A/D converter reference voltage select
0: Internal A/D converter power
1: VREF pin
This bit is used to select the A/D converter reference voltage and only available when the VREFP_EXT bit in the TSC2 register is set to 1. It is recommended to keep the VREFP_EXT bit low when the internal temperature sensor signal is selected to be converted.
- Bit 3 Unimplemented, read as “0”
- Bit 2~0 **ADCK2~ADCK0:** A/D conversion clock source select
000: f_{sys}
001: f_{sys}/2
010: f_{sys}/4
011: f_{sys}/8
100: f_{sys}/16
101: f_{sys}/32
110: f_{sys}/64
111: f_{sys}/128
These bits are used to select the clock source for the A/D converter. It is recommended that the A/D conversion clock frequency should be in the range from 500 kHz to 1MHz by properly configuring the ADCK2~ADCK0 bits when the internal temperature sensor signal is selected to be converted as temperature sensor enabled.

• **TSC0 Register**

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Name	BGMEN	G5XEN	K_REFO	—	—	—	—	—
R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	—	—	—	—	—
POR	0	1	0	—	—	—	—	—

- Bit 7 **BGMEN**: Temperature sensor reference voltage output function enable control
0: Disable
1: Enable
This bit controls the internal temperature sensor reference voltage output function and is only available when the TSE bit is set to 1. The internal temperature sensor reference voltage can be converted when the TSE and BGMEN bits are set to 1 and the ACS bit field is set to “1xxx”. However, the internal temperature sensor output voltage will be converted if the TSE bit is set to 1 and the BGMEN bit is cleared to 0 together with ACS bit field equal to “1xxx”.
- Bit 6 **G5XEN**: OPA2 gain select
0: Gain=4
1: Gain=5
This bit controls the OPA2 gain selection. This bit should be properly selected for different temperature range applications to avoid the saturated code.
- Bit 5 **K_REFO**: OPA1 gain select
0: Gain=1.675
1: Gain=1
This bit is used to select the OPA1 gain to determine the temperature sensor reference voltage output value.
- Bit 4~0 Unimplemented, read as “0”

• **TSC1 Register**

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Name	TSE	OP2EN	OP1EN	—	—	—	—	—
R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	—	—	—	—	—
POR	0	0	0	—	—	—	—	—

- Bit 7 **TSE**: Temperature sensor circuitry enable control
0: Disable
1: Enable
This bit controls the internal temperature sensor circuitry. When the temperature sensor is enabled by setting the TSE bit to 1, a time named as t_{RSS} should be allowed for the temperature sensor circuit to stabilise before implementing relevant temperature sensor operation.
- Bit 6 **OP2EN**: Temperature sensor OPA2 enable control
0: Disable
1: Enable
- Bit 5 **OP1EN**: Temperature sensor OPA1 enable control
0: Disable
1: Enable
- Bit 4~0 Unimplemented, read as “0”

• **TSC2 Register**

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Name	VREFP_EXT	BIAS	D5	D4	D3	D2	TSCLK_S1	TSCLK_S0
R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W
POR	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

- Bit 7 **VREFP_EXT**: A/D converter positive reference voltage select
0: Temperature reference voltage – V_{TSVREF}
1: Determined by VREFS bit
- This bit is used to select the A/D converter positive reference voltage. When this bit is set to 1, the A/D converter reference voltage is determined by the VREFS bit in the ADCR1 register. However, this bit should be set low to select the V_{TSVREF} voltage as the A/D converter reference voltage together with proper configurations of the OPA2 input signal and gain.
- Bit 6 **BIAS**: OPA2 bias voltage select
0: V_{TSVREF}
1: Internal A/D converter power
- Bit 5~2 **D5~D2**: Data bits for internal used
These bits should be kept low and can not be changed.
- Bit 1~0 **TSCLK_S1~TSCLK_S0**: Temperature sensor clock source t_{TSCLK} select
00: $t_{TSCLK}=t_{ADCK}/4$
01: $t_{TSCLK}=t_{ADCK}/8$
1x: $t_{TSCLK}=t_{ADCK}/16$
- The temperature sensor signal conversion time can be obtained using the equation:
Temperature sensor signal conversion time = $(5 \times N + 1 + 16) \times t_{ADCK}$
In the above equation “N” represents the divided ratio, 4, 8 or 16, which is determined by the TSCLK_S1 and TSCLK_S0 bits.

• **TSC3 Register**

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Name	—	—	K_VPTAT	—	—	—	—	—
R/W	—	—	R/W	—	—	—	—	—
POR	—	—	0	—	—	—	—	—

- Bit 7~6 Unimplemented, read as “0”
- Bit 5 **K_VPTAT**: OPA1 input voltage select
0: V_{BG}
1: V_{PTAT}
- This bit is used to select the OPA1 input voltage to obtain the internal temperature sensor reference voltage.
- Bit 4~0 Unimplemented, read as “0”

A/D Operation

The START bit in the ADCR0 register is used to start the AD conversion. When the microcontroller sets this bit from low to high and then low again, an analog to digital conversion cycle will be initiated.

The ADBZ bit in the ADCR0 register is used to indicate whether the analog to digital conversion process is in progress or not. This bit will be automatically set to 1 by the microcontroller after an A/D conversion is successfully initiated. When the A/D conversion is complete, the ADBZ will be cleared to 0. In addition, the corresponding A/D interrupt request flag will be set in the interrupt control register, and if the interrupts are enabled, an internal interrupt signal will be generated. This A/D internal interrupt signal will direct the program flow to the associated A/D internal interrupt address for processing. If the A/D internal interrupt is disabled, the microcontroller can poll the ADBZ bit in the ADCR0 register to check whether it has been cleared as an alternative method of detecting the end of an A/D conversion cycle.

The clock source for the A/D converter, which originates from the system clock f_{SYS} , can be chosen to be either f_{SYS} or a subdivided version of f_{SYS} . The division ratio value is determined by the ADCK2~ADCK0 bits in the ADCR1 register. Although the A/D clock source is determined by the system clock f_{SYS} and by bits ADCK2~ADCK0, there are some limitations on the maximum A/D clock source speed that can be selected. As the recommended range of permissible A/D clock period, t_{ADCK} , is from 0.5 μ s to 10 μ s, care must be taken for system clock frequencies. For example, as the system clock operates at a frequency of 8MHz, the ADCK2~ADCK0 bits should not be set to 000, 001 or 111. Doing so will give A/D clock periods that are less than the minimum A/D clock period which may result in inaccurate A/D conversion values. Refer to the following table for examples, where values marked with an asterisk * show where, depending upon the device, special care must be taken, as the values may be less than the specified minimum A/D Clock Period.

However, the recommended A/D clock period is from 1 μ s to 2 μ s if the input signal to be converted is the temperature sensor output voltage or reference voltage.

f_{SYS}	A/D Clock Period (t_{ADCK})							
	ADCK[2:0] = 000 (f_{SYS})	ADCK[2:0] = 001 ($f_{SYS}/2$)	ADCK[2:0] = 010 ($f_{SYS}/4$)	ADCK[2:0] = 011 ($f_{SYS}/8$)	ADCK[2:0] = 100 ($f_{SYS}/16$)	ADCK[2:0] = 101 ($f_{SYS}/32$)	ADCK[2:0] = 110 ($f_{SYS}/64$)	ADCK[2:0] = 111 ($f_{SYS}/128$)
1MHz	1 μ s	2 μ s	4 μ s	8 μ s	16 μ s *	32 μ s *	64 μ s *	128 μ s *
2MHz	500ns	1 μ s	2 μ s	4 μ s	8 μ s	16 μ s *	32 μ s *	64 μ s *
4MHz	250ns *	500ns	1 μ s	2 μ s	4 μ s	8 μ s	16 μ s *	32 μ s *
8MHz	125ns *	250ns *	500ns	1 μ s	2 μ s	4 μ s	8 μ s	16 μ s *
12MHz	83ns *	167ns *	333ns *	667ns	1.33 μ s	2.67 μ s	5.33 μ s	10.67 μ s *
16MHz	62.5ns *	125ns *	250ns *	500ns	1 μ s	2 μ s	4 μ s	8 μ s

A/D Clock Period Examples for External Analog Inputs

Controlling the power on/off function of the A/D converter circuitry is implemented using the ADCEN bit in the ADCR0 register. This bit must be set high to power on the A/D converter. When the ADCEN bit is set high to power on the A/D converter internal circuitry a certain delay, as indicated in the timing diagram, must be allowed before an A/D conversion is initiated. Even if no pins are selected for use as A/D inputs, if the ADCEN bit is high, then some power will still be consumed. In power conscious applications it is therefore recommended that the ADCEN is set low to reduce power consumption when the A/D converter function is not being used.

A/D Reference Voltage

The reference voltage supply to the A/D Converter can be supplied from the positive power supply pin, V_{DD} , an external reference source supplied on pin VREF or an internal temperature sensor reference voltage V_{TSVREF} . The internal temperature sensor reference voltage can be derived from the internal V_{BG} or V_{PTAT} voltage selected using the K_VPTAT bit in the TSC3 register and then amplified through a programmable gain amplifier except the one sourced from V_{DD} . The PGA gain can be equal to 1.675 or 1 selected by the K_REFO bit in the TSC0 register. As the VREF pin is pin-shared with other functions, when the VREF pin is selected as the reference voltage supply pin, the VREF pin-shared function control bits should first be properly configured to disable other pin-shared functions.

A/D Input Pins

All of the external A/D analog input pins are pin-shared with the I/O pins as well as other functions. The corresponding pin-shared function selection bits in the PXS0 and PXS1 registers, determine whether the external input pins are setup as A/D converter analog channel inputs or whether they have other functions. If the corresponding pin is setup to be an A/D converter analog channel input, the original pin functions will be disabled. In this way, pins can be changed under program control to change their function between A/D inputs and other functions. All pull-high resistors, which are setup through register programming, will be automatically disconnected if the pins are setup as A/D inputs. Note that it is not necessary to first setup the A/D pin as an input in the port control register to enable the A/D input as when the relevant A/D input function selection bits enable an A/D input, the status of the port control register will be overridden.

The A/D converter has its own reference voltage pin, VREF. However, the reference voltage can also be supplied from the power supply pin or an internal temperature sensor circuit, a choice which is made through the VREFP_EXT and VREFS bits in the TSC2 and ADCR1 register respectively. Note that the analog input signal values must not be allowed to exceed the value of the selected A/D reference voltage.

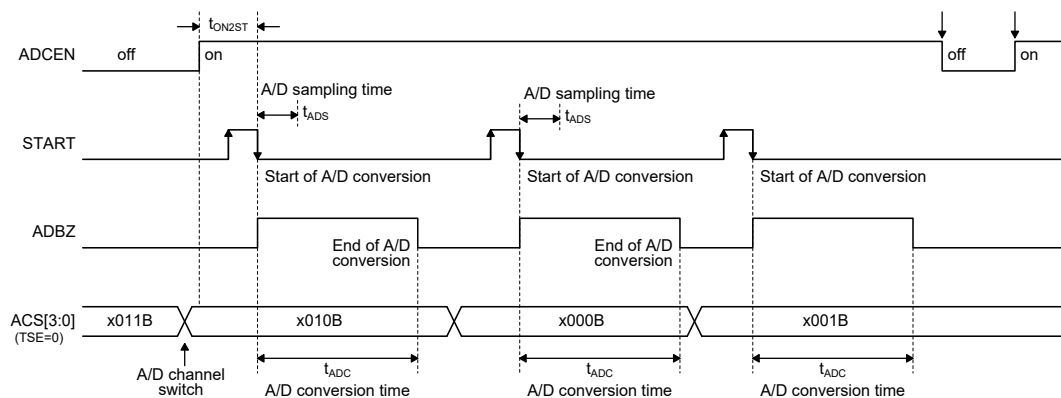
Conversion Rate and Timing Diagram

A complete A/D conversion contains two parts, data sampling and data conversion. The data sampling which is defined as t_{ADS} takes 4 A/D clock cycles and the data conversion takes 12 A/D clock cycles. Therefore a total of 16 A/D clock cycles for an external input A/D conversion which is defined as t_{ADC} are necessary. However, an A/D conversion for an internal temperature sensor signal will take a total of 56 A/D clock cycles.

Maximum single A/D conversion rate = A/D clock period/16 (External channel input signal)

Maximum single A/D conversion rate = A/D clock period/56 (Internal Temperature sensor signal)

The accompanying diagram shows graphically the various stages involved in an analog to digital conversion process and its associated timing. After an A/D conversion process has been initiated by the application program, the microcontroller internal hardware will begin to carry out the conversion, during which time the program can continue with other functions. The time taken for the A/D conversion is $16 t_{ADCK}$ clock cycles where t_{ADCK} is equal to the A/D clock period.



A/D Conversion Timing – External Channel Input

Summary of A/D Conversion Steps

The following summarises the individual steps that should be executed in order to implement an A/D conversion process.

- Step 1
Select the required A/D conversion clock by properly programming the ADCK2~ADCK0 bits in the ADCR1 register.
- Step 2
Enable the A/D converter by setting the ADCEN bit in the ADCR0 register to one.
- Step 3
Select which signal is to be connected to the internal A/D converter by correctly configuring the ACS3~ACS0 bits
If the TSE bit is 0 and ACS3~ACS0 bits are equal to x000~x111, then an external channel input is selected.
If the TSE bit is 1 and ACS3~ACS0 bits are equal to 1xxx, then the relevant internal temperature sensor signal is selected.
- Step 4
Select the reference voltage source by configuring the K_VPTAT, K_REFO and VREFS bits.
- Step 5
Select the A/D converter output data format by configuring the ADRFS bit.
- Step 6
If A/D conversion interrupt is used, the interrupt control registers must be correctly configured to ensure the A/D interrupt function is active. The master interrupt control bit, EMI, and the A/D conversion interrupt control bit, ADE, must both be set high in advance.
- Step 7
The A/D conversion procedure can now be initialized by setting the START bit from low to high and then low again.
- Step 8
If A/D conversion is in progress, the ADBZ flag will be set high. After the A/D conversion process is complete, the ADBZ flag will go low and then the output data can be read from ADRH and ADRL registers.

Note: When checking for the end of the conversion process, if the method of polling the ADBZ bit in the ADCR0 register is used, the interrupt enable step above can be omitted. However, the interrupt method must be used to check for the end of the conversion process and obtain the corresponding digital output data if the auto-conversion mode is enabled.

Programming Considerations

During microcontroller operations where the A/D converter is not being used, the A/D internal circuitry can be switched off to reduce power consumption, by setting bit ADCEN low in the ADCR register. When this happens, the internal A/D converter circuits will not consume power irrespective of what analog voltage is applied to their input lines. If the A/D converter input lines are used as normal I/Os, then care must be taken as if the input voltage is not at a valid logic level, then this may lead to some increase in power consumption.

A/D Transfer Function

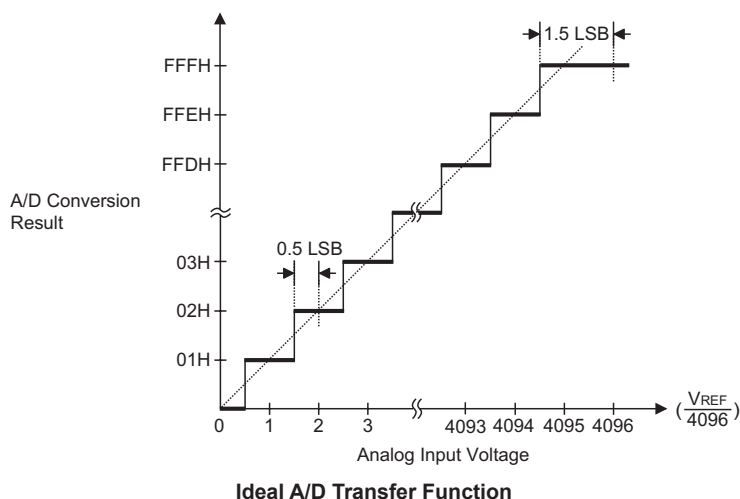
As the devices contain a 12-bit A/D converter, its full-scale converted digitised value is equal to FFFH. Since the full-scale analog input value is equal to the reference voltage, this gives a single bit analog input value of reference voltage value divided by 4096.

$$1 \text{ LSB} = V_{\text{REF}} \div 4096$$

The A/D Converter input voltage value can be calculated using the following equation:

$$\text{A/D input voltage} = \text{A/D output digital value} \times V_{\text{REF}} \div 4096$$

The diagram shows the ideal transfer function between the analog input value and the digitised output value for the A/D converter. Except for the digitised zero value, the subsequent digitised values will change at a point 0.5 LSB below where they would change without the offset, and the last full scale digitised value will change at a point 1.5 LSB below the V_{REF} level.



A/D Programming Examples

The following two programming examples illustrate how to setup and implement an A/D conversion. In the first example, the method of polling the ADBZ bit in the ADCR register is used to detect when the conversion cycle is complete, whereas in the second example, the A/D interrupt is used to determine when the conversion is complete.

Example: using an ADBZ polling method to detect the end of conversion

```
clr ADE                ; disable ADC interrupt
set VREFP_EXT          ; deselect the temperature sensor reference voltage
mov a,03H              ; select fsys/8 as A/D clock and A/D internal power supply
mov ADCR1,a            ; as reference voltage
set ADCEN
mov a,03H              ; setup PBS0 to configure pin AN0
mov PBS0,a
mov a,20H
mov ADCR0,a            ; enable and connect AN0 channel to A/D converter
:
start_conversion:
clr START              ; high pulse on start bit to initiate conversion
set START              ; reset A/D
clr START              ; start A/D
:
polling_EOC:
sz ADBZ                ; poll the ADCR0 register ADBZ bit to detect end of A/D conversion
jmp polling_EOC        ; continue polling
:
mov a,ADRL             ; read low byte conversion result value
mov ADRL_buffer,a      ; save result to user defined register
mov a,ADRH             ; read high byte conversion result value
mov ADRH_buffer,a      ; save result to user defined register
:
jmp start_conversion   ; start next A/D conversion
```

Example: using the interrupt method to detect the end of conversion

```

clr ADE                ; disable ADC interrupt
set VREFP_EXT          ; deselect the temperature sensor reference voltage
mov a,03H              ; select fsys/8 as A/D clock and A/D internal power supply
mov ADCR1,a            ; as reference voltage
set ADCEN
mov a,03H              ; setup PBS0 to configure pin AN0
mov PBS0,a
mov a,20H
mov ADCR0,a            ; enable and connect AN0 channel to A/D converter
:
Start_conversion:
clr START              ; high pulse on START bit to initiate conversion
set START              ; reset A/D
clr START              ; start A/D
clr ADF                ; clear ADC interrupt request flag
set ADE                ; enable ADC interrupt
set EMI                ; enable global interrupt
:
:
ADC_ISR:               ; ADC interrupt service routine
mov acc_stack,a        ; save ACC to user defined memory
mov a,STATUS
mov status_stack,a     ; save STATUS to user defined memory
:
mov a, ADRL             ; read low byte conversion result value
mov ADRL_buffer,a      ; save result to user defined register
mov a, ADRH             ; read high byte conversion result value
mov ADRH_buffer,a      ; save result to user defined register
:
EXIT_INT_ISR:
mov a,status_stack
mov STATUS,a           ; restore STATUS from user defined memory
mov a,acc_stack        ; restore ACC from user defined memory
reti

```

Serial Interface Module – SIM

These devices contain a Serial Interface Module, which includes both the four-line SPI interface or two-line I²C interface types, to allow an easy method of communication with external peripheral hardware. Having relatively simple communication protocols, these serial interface types allow the microcontroller to interface to external SPI or I²C based hardware such as sensors, Flash or EEPROM memory, etc. The SIM interface pins are pin-shared with other I/O pins and therefore the SIM interface functional pins must first be selected using the corresponding pin-shared function selection bits. As both interface types share the same pins and registers, the choice of whether the SPI or I²C type is used is made using the SIM operating mode control bits, named SIM2~SIM0, in the SIMC0 register. These pull-high resistors of the SIM pin-shared I/O pins are selected using pull-high control registers when the SIM function is enabled and the corresponding pins are used as SIM input pins.

SPI Interface

The SPI interface is often used to communicate with external peripheral devices such as sensors, Flash or EEPROM memory devices, etc. Originally developed by Motorola, the four line SPI interface is a synchronous serial data interface that has a relatively simple communication protocol simplifying the programming requirements when communicating with external hardware devices.

The communication is full duplex and operates as a slave/master type, where the devices can be either master or slave. Although the SPI interface specification can control multiple slave devices from a single master, these devices provided only one $\overline{\text{SCS}}$ pin. If the master needs to control multiple slave devices from a single master, the master can use I/O pin to select the slave devices.

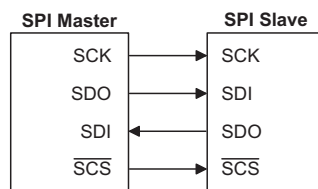
SPI Interface Operation

The SPI interface is a full duplex synchronous serial data link. It is a four line interface with pin names SDI, SDO, SCK and $\overline{\text{SCS}}$. Pins SDI and SDO are the Serial Data Input and Serial Data Output lines, SCK is the Serial Clock line and $\overline{\text{SCS}}$ is the Slave Select line. As the SPI interface pins are pin-shared with normal I/O pins and with the I²C function pins, the SPI interface pins must first be selected by configuring the pin-shared function selection bits and setting the correct bits in the SIMC0 and SIMC2 registers. After the desired SPI configuration has been set it can be disabled or enabled using the SIMEN bit in the SIMC0 register. Communication between devices connected to the SPI interface is carried out in a slave/master mode with all data transfer initiations being implemented by the master. The Master also controls the clock signal. As the device only contains a single $\overline{\text{SCS}}$ pin only one slave device can be utilized. The $\overline{\text{SCS}}$ pin is controlled by software, set CSEN bit to 1 to enable $\overline{\text{SCS}}$ pin function, set CSEN bit to 0 the $\overline{\text{SCS}}$ pin will be floating state.

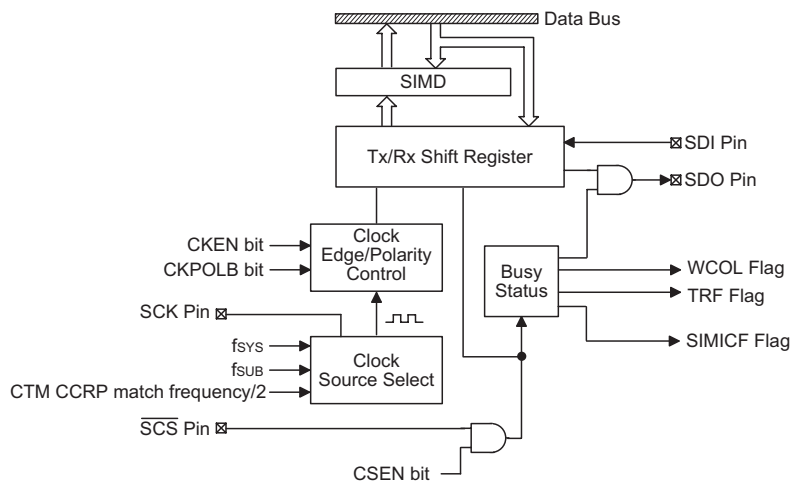
The SPI function in this device offers the following features:

- Full duplex synchronous data transfer
- Both Master and Slave modes
- LSB first or MSB first data transmission modes
- Transmission complete flag
- Rising or falling active clock edge

The status of the SPI interface pins is determined by a number of factors such as whether the device is in the master or slave mode and upon the condition of certain control bits such as CSEN and SIMEN.



SPI Master/Slave Connection



SPI Block Diagram

SPI Registers

There are three internal registers which control the overall operation of the SPI interface. These are the SIMD data register and two registers SIMC0 and SIMC2. Note that the SIMC1 register is only used by the I²C interface.

Register Name	Bit							
	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
SIMC0	SIM2	SIM1	SIM0	—	SIMDEB1	SIMDEB0	SIMEN	SIMICF
SIMC2	D7	D6	CKPOLB	CKEG	MLS	CSEN	WCOL	TRF
SIMD	D7	D6	D5	D4	D3	D2	D1	D0

SPI Registers List

• SIMD Register

The SIMD register is used to store the data being transmitted and received. The same register is used by both the SPI and I²C functions. Before the device writes data to the SPI bus, the actual data to be transmitted must be placed in the SIMD register. After the data is received from the SPI bus, the device can read it from the SIMD register. Any transmission or reception of data from the SPI bus must be made via the SIMD register.

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Name	D7	D6	D5	D4	D3	D2	D1	D0
R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W
POR	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x

"x": unknown

There are also two control registers for the SPI interface, SIMC0 and SIMC2. Note that the SIMC2 register also has the name SIMA which is used by the I²C function. The SIMC1 register is not used by the SPI function, only by the I²C function. Register SIMC0 is used to control the enable/disable function and to set the data transmission clock frequency. Register SIMC2 is used for other control functions such as LSB/MSB selection, write collision flag, etc.

• **SIMC0 Register**

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Name	SIM2	SIM1	SIM0	—	SIMDEB1	SIMDEB0	SIMEN	SIMICF
R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	—	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W
POR	1	1	1	—	0	0	0	0

Bit 7~5 SIM2~SIM0: SIM Operating Mode Control
 000: SPI master mode; SPI clock is $f_{SYS}/4$
 001: SPI master mode; SPI clock is $f_{SYS}/16$
 010: SPI master mode; SPI clock is $f_{SYS}/64$
 011: SPI master mode; SPI clock is f_{SUB}
 100: SPI master mode; SPI clock is CTM0 CCRP match frequency/2
 101: SPI slave mode
 110: I²C slave mode
 111: Non SIM function

These bits setup the overall operating mode of the SIM function. As well as selecting if the I²C or SPI function, they are used to control the SPI Master/Slave selection and the SPI Master clock frequency. The SPI clock is a function of the system clock but can also be chosen to be sourced from CTM0. If the SPI Slave Mode is selected then the clock will be supplied by an external Master device.

Bit 4 Unimplemented, read as “0”

Bit 3~2 SIMDEB1~SIMDEB0: I²C Debounce Time Selection
 Described elsewhere.

Bit 1 SIMEN: SIM Enable Control
 0: Disable
 1: Enable

The bit is the overall on/off control for the SIM interface. When the SIMEN bit is cleared to zero to disable the SIM interface, the SDI, SDO, SCK and SCS, or SDA and SCL lines will lose their SPI or I²C function and the SIM operating current will be reduced to a minimum value. When the bit is high the SIM interface is enabled. The SIM configuration option must have first enabled the SIM interface for this bit to be effective. If the SIM is configured to operate as an SPI interface via the SIM2~SIM0 bits, the contents of the SPI control registers will remain at the previous settings when the SIMEN bit changes from low to high and should therefore be first initialised by the application program. If the SIM is configured to operate as an I²C interface via the SIM2~SIM0 bits and the SIMEN bit changes from low to high, the contents of the I²C control bits such as HTX and TXAK will remain at the previous settings and should therefore be first initialised by the application program while the relevant I²C flags such as HCF, HAAS, HBB, SRW and RXAK will be set to their default states.

Bit 0 SIMICF: SIM SPI slave mode Incomplete Transfer Flag
 0: SIM SPI slave mode incomplete condition not occurred
 1: SIM SPI slave mode incomplete condition occurred

This bit is only available when the SIM is configured to operate in an SPI slave mode. If the SPI operates in the slave mode with the SIMEN and CSEN bits both being set to 1 but the SCS line is pulled high by the external master device before the SPI data transfer is completely finished, the SIMICF bit will be set to 1 together with the TRF bit. When this condition occurs, the corresponding interrupt will occur if the interrupt function is enabled. However, the TRF bit will not be set to 1 if the SIMICF bit is set to 1 by software application program.

• **SIMC2 Register**

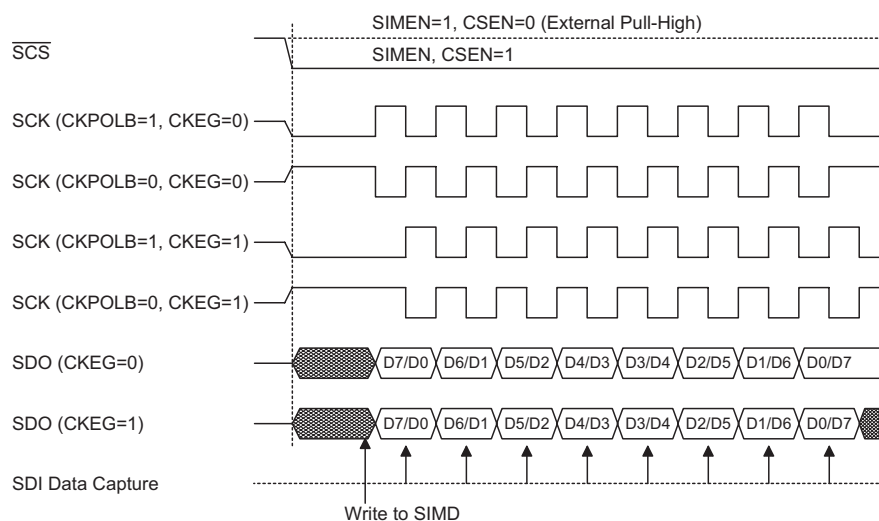
Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Name	D7	D6	CKPOLB	CKEG	MLS	CSEN	WCOL	TRF
R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W
POR	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

- Bit 7~6 Undefined bits
 These bits can be read or written by the application program.
- Bit 5 **CKPOLB**: SPI clock line base condition selection
 0: The SCK line will be high when the clock is inactive.
 1: The SCK line will be low when the clock is inactive.
 The CKPOLB bit determines the base condition of the clock line, if the bit is high, then the SCK line will be low when the clock is inactive. When the CKPOLB bit is low, then the SCK line will be high when the clock is inactive.
- Bit 4 **CKEG**: SPI SCK clock active edge type selection
 CKPOLB=0
 0: SCK is high base level and data capture at SCK rising edge
 1: SCK is high base level and data capture at SCK falling edge
 CKPOLB=1
 0: SCK is low base level and data capture at SCK falling edge
 1: SCK is low base level and data capture at SCK rising edge
 The CKEG and CKPOLB bits are used to setup the way that the clock signal outputs and inputs data on the SPI bus. These two bits must be configured before data transfer is executed otherwise an erroneous clock edge may be generated. The CKPOLB bit determines the base condition of the clock line, if the bit is high, then the SCK line will be low when the clock is inactive. When the CKPOLB bit is low, then the SCK line will be high when the clock is inactive. The CKEG bit determines active clock edge type which depends upon the condition of CKPOLB bit.
- Bit 3 **MLS**: SPI data shift order
 0: LSB first
 1: MSB first
 This is the data shift select bit and is used to select how the data is transferred, either MSB or LSB first. Setting the bit high will select MSB first and low for LSB first.
- Bit 2 **CSEN**: SPI \overline{SCS} pin control
 0: Disable
 1: Enable
 The CSEN bit is used as an enable/disable for the \overline{SCS} pin. If this bit is low, then the \overline{SCS} pin will be disabled and placed into I/O pin or other pin-shared functions. If the bit is high, the \overline{SCS} pin will be enabled and used as a select pin.
- Bit 1 **WCOL**: SPI write collision flag
 0: No collision
 1: Collision
 The WCOL flag is used to detect whether a data collision has occurred or not. If this bit is high, it means that data has been attempted to be written to the SIMD register during a data transfer operation. This writing operation will be ignored if data is being transferred. This bit can be cleared by the application program.
- Bit 0 **TRF**: SPI Transmit/Receive complete flag
 0: SPI data is being transferred
 1: SPI data transfer is completed
 The TRF bit is the Transmit/Receive Complete flag and is set to 1 automatically when an SPI data transfer is completed, but must cleared to 0 by the application program. It can be used to generate an interrupt.

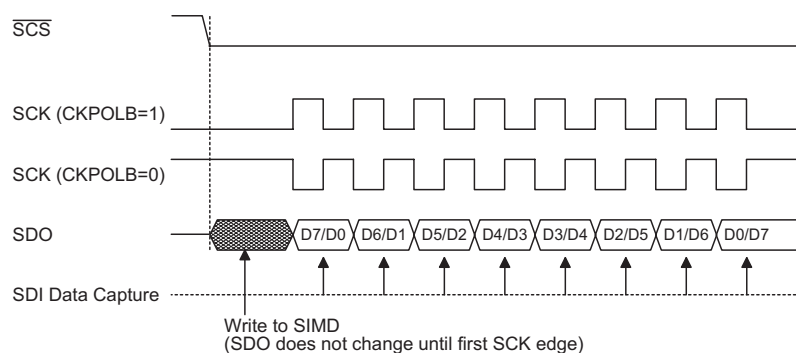
SPI Communication

After the SPI interface is enabled by setting the SIMEN bit high, then in the Master Mode, when data is written to the SIMD register, transmission/reception will begin simultaneously. When the data transfer is complete, the TRF flag will be set automatically, but must be cleared using the application program. In the Slave Mode, when the clock signal from the master has been received, any data in the SIMD register will be transmitted and any data on the SDI pin will be shifted into the SIMD register. The master should output a \overline{SCS} signal to enable the slave devices before a clock signal is provided. The slave data to be transferred should be well prepared at the appropriate moment relative to the \overline{SCS} signal depending upon the configurations of the CKPOLB bit and CKEG bit. The accompanying timing diagram shows the relationship between the slave data and \overline{SCS} signal for various configurations of the CKPOLB and CKEG bits.

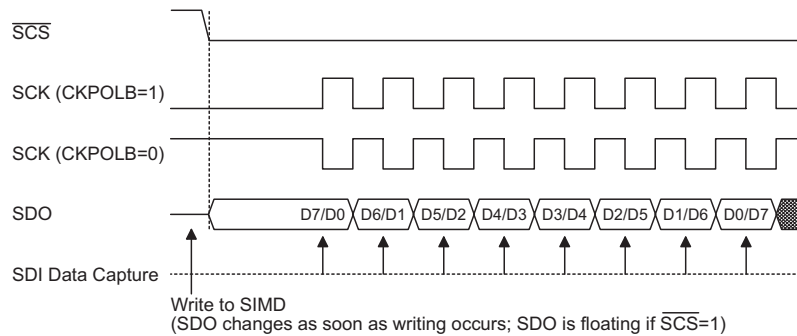
The SPI will continue to function even in the IDLE Mode.



SPI Master Mode Timing

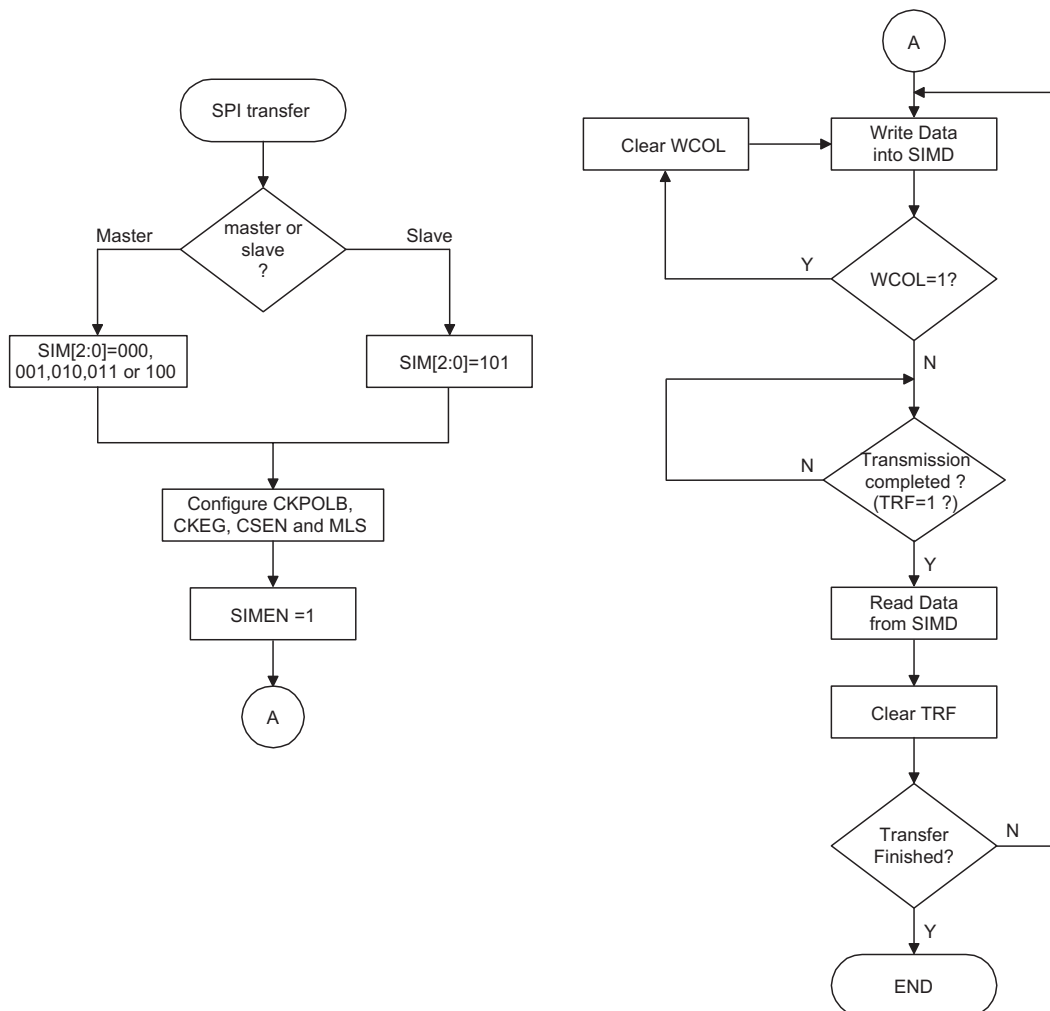


SPI Slave Mode Timing – CKEG=0



Note: For SPI slave mode, if $SIMEN=1$ and $CSEN=0$, the SPI is always enabled and ignores the \overline{SCS} level.

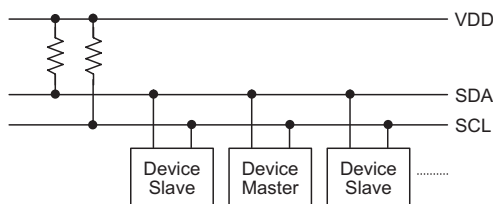
SPI Slave Mode Timing – CKEG=1



SPI Transfer Control Flow Chart

I²C Interface

The I²C interface is used to communicate with external peripheral devices such as sensors, EEPROM memory etc. Originally developed by Philips, it is a two line low speed serial interface for synchronous serial data transfer. The advantage of only two lines for communication, relatively simple communication protocol and the ability to accommodate multiple devices on the same bus has made it an extremely popular interface type for many applications.

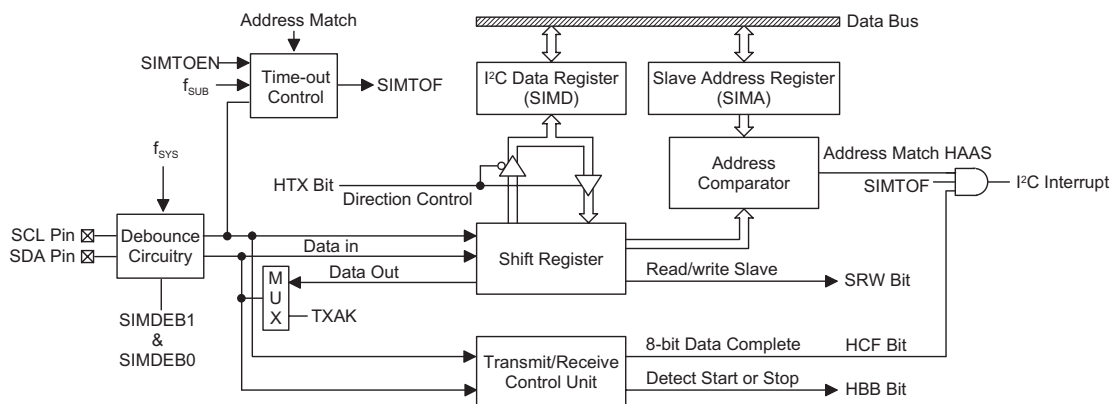


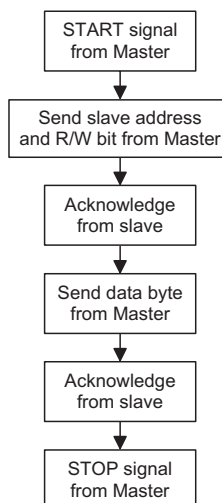
I²C Master/Slave Bus Connection

I²C interface Operation

The I²C serial interface is a two line interface, a serial data line, SDA, and serial clock line, SCL. As many devices may be connected together on the same bus, their outputs are both open drain types. For this reason it is necessary that external pull-high resistors are connected to these outputs. Note that no chip select line exists, as each device on the I²C bus is identified by a unique address which will be transmitted and received on the I²C bus.

When two devices communicate with each other on the bidirectional I²C bus, one is known as the master device and one as the slave device. Both master and slave can transmit and receive data, however, it is the master device that has overall control of the bus. For these devices, which only operate in slave mode, there are two methods of transferring data on the I²C bus, the slave transmit mode and the slave receive mode.





The SIMDEB1 and SIMDEB0 bits determine the debounce time of the I²C interface. This uses the system clock to in effect add a debounce time to the external clock to reduce the possibility of glitches on the clock line causing erroneous operation. The debounce time, if selected, can be chosen to be either 2 or 4 system clocks. To achieve the required I²C data transfer speed, there exists a relationship between the system clock, f_{SYS} , and the I²C debounce time. For either the I²C Standard or Fast mode operation, users must take care of the selected system clock frequency and the configured debounce time to match the criterion shown in the following table.

I ² C Debounce Time Selection	I ² C Standard Mode (100kHz)	I ² C Fast Mode (400kHz)
No Devounce	$f_{SYS} > 2 \text{ MHz}$	$f_{SYS} > 5 \text{ MHz}$
2 system clock debounce	$f_{SYS} > 4 \text{ MHz}$	$f_{SYS} > 10 \text{ MHz}$
4 system clock debounce	$f_{SYS} > 8 \text{ MHz}$	$f_{SYS} > 20 \text{ MHz}$

I²C Minimum f_{SYS} Frequency

I²C Registers

There are three control registers associated with the I²C bus, SIMC0, SIMC1 and SIMA, and one data register, SIMD. The SIMD register, which is shown in the above SPI section, is used to store the data being transmitted and received on the I²C bus.

Note that the SIMA register also has the name SIMC2 which is used by the SPI function. Bit SIMEN and bits SIM2~SIM0 in register SIMC0 are used by the I²C interface.

Register Name	Bit							
	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
SIMC0	SIM2	SIM1	SIM0	—	SIMDEB1	SIMDEB0	SIMEN	SIMICF
SIMC1	HCF	HAAS	HBB	HTX	TXAK	SRW	IAMWU	RXAK
SIMA	IICA6	IICA5	IICA4	IICA3	IICA2	IICA1	IICA0	D0
SIMD	D7	D6	D5	D4	D3	D2	D1	D0
SIMTOC	SIMTOEN	SIMTOF	SIMTOS5	SIMTOS4	SIMTOS3	SIMTOS2	SIMTOS1	SIMTOS0

I²C Registers List

• **SIMD Register**

The SIMD register is used to store the data being transmitted and received. The same register is used by both the SPI and I²C functions. Before the device writes data to the I²C bus, the actual data to be transmitted must be placed in the SIMD register. After the data is received from the I²C bus, the device can read it from the SIMD register. Any transmission or reception of data from the I²C bus must be made via the SIMD register.

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Name	D7	D6	D5	D4	D3	D2	D1	D0
R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W
POR	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x

"x": unknown

• **SIMA Register**

The SIMA register is also used by the SPI interface but has the name SIMC2. The SIMA register is the location where the 7-bit slave address of the slave device is stored. Bits 7~1 of the SIMA register define the device slave address. Bit 0 is not defined.

When a master device, which is connected to the I²C bus, sends out an address, which matches the slave address in the SIMA register, the slave device will be selected. Note that the SIMA register is the same register address as SIMC2 which is used by the SPI interface.

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Name	IICA6	IICA5	IICA4	IICA3	IICA2	IICA1	IICA0	D0
R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W
POR	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x

"x": unknown

Bit 7~1 **IICA6~IICA0**: I²C slave address
IICA6~IICA0 is the I²C slave address bit 6 ~ bit 0

Bit 0 Undefined bit
The bit can be read or written by the application program.

There are also two control registers for the I²C interface, SIMC0 and SIMC1. The register SIMC0 is used to control the enable/disable function and to set the data transmission clock frequency. The SIMC1 register contains the relevant flags which are used to indicate the I²C communication status.

• **SIMC0 Register**

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Name	SIM2	SIM1	SIM0	—	SIMDEB1	SIMDEB0	SIMEN	SIMICF
R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	—	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W
POR	1	1	1	—	0	0	0	0

Bit 7~5

SIM2~SIM0: SIM Operating Mode Control

- 000: SPI master mode; SPI clock is $f_{SYS}/4$
- 001: SPI master mode; SPI clock is $f_{SYS}/16$
- 010: SPI master mode; SPI clock is $f_{SYS}/64$
- 011: SPI master mode; SPI clock is f_{SUB}
- 100: SPI master mode; SPI clock is CTM0 CCRP match frequency/2
- 101: SPI slave mode
- 110: I²C slave mode
- 111: Non SIM function

These bits setup the overall operating mode of the SIM function. As well as selecting if the I²C or SPI function, they are used to control the SPI Master/Slave selection and the SPI Master clock frequency. The SPI clock is a function of the system clock but can also be chosen to be sourced from TM0. If the SPI Slave Mode is selected then the clock will be supplied by an external Master device.

Bit 4

Unimplemented, read as “0”

Bit 3~2

SIMDEB1~SIMDEB0: I²C Debounce Time Selection

- 00: No debounce
- 01: 2 system clock debounce
- 1x: 4 system clock debounce

Bit 1

SIMEN: SIM Enable Control

- 0: Disable
- 1: Enable

The bit is the overall on/off control for the SIM interface. When the SIMEN bit is cleared to zero to disable the SIM interface, the SDI, SDO, SCK and SCS, or SDA and SCL lines will lose their SPI or I²C function and the SIM operating current will be reduced to a minimum value. When the bit is high the SIM interface is enabled. The SIM configuration option must have first enabled the SIM interface for this bit to be effective. If the SIM is configured to operate as an SPI interface via the SIM2~SIM0 bits, the contents of the SPI control registers will remain at the previous settings when the SIMEN bit changes from low to high and should therefore be first initialised by the application program. If the SIM is configured to operate as an I²C interface via the SIM2~SIM0 bits and the SIMEN bit changes from low to high, the contents of the I²C control bits such as HTX and TXAK will remain at the previous settings and should therefore be first initialised by the application program while the relevant I²C flags such as HCF, HAAS, HBB, SRW and RXAK will be set to their default states.

Bit 0

SIMICF: SIM SPI slave mode Incomplete Transfer Flag

Described elsewhere.

• **SIMC1 Register**

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Name	HCF	HAAS	HBB	HTX	TXAK	SRW	IAMWU	RXAK
R/W	R	R	R	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R
POR	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	1

- Bit 7 HCF:** I²C Bus data transfer completion flag
0: Data is being transferred
1: Completion of an 8-bit data transfer
The HCF flag is the data transfer flag. This flag will be zero when data is being transferred. Upon completion of an 8-bit data transfer the flag will go high and an interrupt will be generated.
- Bit 6 HAAS:** I²C Bus data transfer completion flag
0: Not address match
1: Address match
The HAAS flag is the address match flag. This flag is used to determine if the slave device address is the same as the master transmit address. If the addresses match then this bit will be high, if there is no match then the flag will be low.
- Bit 5 HBB:** I²C Bus busy flag
0: I²C Bus is not busy
1: I²C Bus is busy
The HBB flag is the I²C busy flag. This flag will be “1” when the I²C bus is busy which will occur when a START signal is detected. The flag will be set to “0” when the bus is free which will occur when a STOP signal is detected.
- Bit 4 HTX:** I²C slave device transmitter/receiver selection
0: Slave device is the receiver
1: Slave device is the transmitter
- Bit 3 TXAK:** I²C bus transmit acknowledge flag
0: Slave send acknowledge flag
1: Slave does not send acknowledge flag
The TXAK bit is the transmit acknowledge flag. After the slave device receipt of 8-bits of data, this bit will be transmitted to the bus on the 9th clock from the slave device. The slave device must always set TXAK bit to “0” before further data is received.
- Bit 2 SRW:** I²C slave read/write flag
0: Slave device should be in receive mode
1: Slave device should be in transmit mode
The SRW flag is the I²C Slave Read/Write flag. This flag determines whether the master device wishes to transmit or receive data from the I²C bus. When the transmitted address and slave address is match, that is when the HAAS flag is set high, the slave device will check the SRW flag to determine whether it should be in transmit mode or receive mode. If the SRW flag is high, the master is requesting to read data from the bus, so the slave device should be in transmit mode. When the SRW flag is zero, the master will write data to the bus, therefore the slave device should be in receive mode to read this data.
- Bit 1 IAMWU:** I²C Address Match Wake-Up control
0: Disable
1: Enable – must be cleared by the application program after wake-up
This bit should be set to 1 to enable the I²C address match wake up from the SLEEP or IDLE Mode. If the IAMWU bit has been set before entering either the SLEEP or IDLE mode to enable the I²C address match wake up, then this bit must be cleared by the application program after wake-up to ensure correction device operation.

Bit 0 **RXAK:** I²C bus receive acknowledge flag

0: Slave receives acknowledge flag

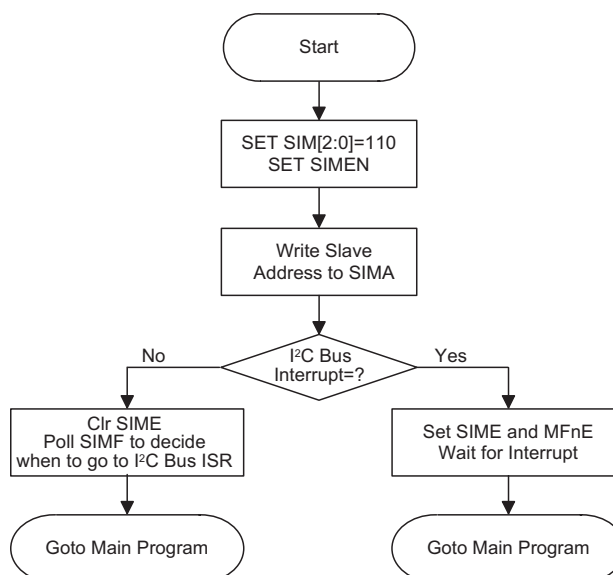
1: Slave does not receive acknowledge flag

The RXAK flag is the receiver acknowledge flag. When the RXAK flag is “0”, it means that a acknowledge signal has been received at the 9th clock, after 8 bits of data have been transmitted. When the slave device in the transmit mode, the slave device checks the RXAK flag to determine if the master receiver wishes to receive the next byte. The slave transmitter will therefore continue sending out data until the RXAK flag is “1”. When this occurs, the slave transmitter will release the SDA line to allow the master to send a STOP signal to release the I²C Bus.

I²C Bus Communication

Communication on the I²C bus requires four separate steps, a START signal, a slave device address transmission, a data transmission and finally a STOP signal. When a START signal is placed on the I²C bus, all devices on the bus will receive this signal and be notified of the imminent arrival of data on the bus. The first seven bits of the data will be the slave address with the first bit being the MSB. If the address of the slave device matches that of the transmitted address, the HAAS bit in the SIMC1 register will be set and an I²C interrupt will be generated. After entering the interrupt service routine, the slave device must first check the condition of the HAAS and SIMTOF bits to determine whether the interrupt source originates from an address match, 8-bit data transfer completion or I²C bus time-out occurrence. During a data transfer, note that after the 7-bit slave address has been transmitted, the following bit, which is the 8th bit, is the read/write bit whose value will be placed in the SRW bit. This bit will be checked by the slave device to determine whether to go into transmit or receive mode. Before any transfer of data to or from the I²C bus, the microcontroller must initialise the bus, the following are steps to achieve this:

- Step 1
Set the SIM2~SIM0 bits to “110” and SIMEN bit to “1” in the SIMC0 register to enable the I²C bus.
- Step 2
Write the slave address of the device to the I²C bus address register SIMA.
- Step 3
Set the SIME and SIM Muti-Function interrupt enable bit of the interrupt control register to enable the SIM interrupt and Multi-function interrupt.



I²C Bus Initialisation Flow Chart

I²C Bus Start Signal

The START signal can only be generated by the master device connected to the I²C bus and not by the slave device. This START signal will be detected by all devices connected to the I²C bus. When detected, this indicates that the I²C bus is busy and therefore the HBB bit will be set. A START condition occurs when a high to low transition on the SDA line takes place when the SCL line remains high.

I²C Slave Address

The transmission of a START signal by the master will be detected by all devices on the I²C bus. To determine which slave device the master wishes to communicate with, the address of the slave device will be sent out immediately following the START signal. All slave devices, after receiving this 7-bit address data, will compare it with their own 7-bit slave address. If the address sent out by the master matches the internal address of the microcontroller slave device, then an internal I²C bus interrupt signal will be generated. The next bit following the address, which is the 8th bit, defines the read/write status and will be saved to the SRW bit of the SIMC1 register. The slave device will then transmit an acknowledge bit, which is a low level, as the 9th bit. The slave device will also set the status flag HAAS when the addresses match.

As an I²C bus interrupt can come from three sources, when the program enters the interrupt subroutine, the HAAS and SIMTOF bits should be examined to see whether the interrupt source has come from a matching slave address, the completion of a data byte transfer or the I²C bus time-out occurrence. When a slave address is matched, the devices must be placed in either the transmit mode and then write data to the SIMD register, or in the receive mode where it must implement a dummy read from the SIMD register to release the SCL line.

I²C Bus Read/Write Signal

The SRW bit in the SIMC1 register defines whether the slave device wishes to read data from the I²C bus or write data to the I²C bus. The slave device should examine this bit to determine if it is to be a transmitter or a receiver. If the SRW flag is "1" then this indicates that the master device wishes to read data from the I²C bus, therefore the slave device must be setup to send data to the I²C bus as a transmitter. If the SRW flag is "0" then this indicates that the master wishes to send data to the I²C bus, therefore the slave device must be setup to read data from the I²C bus as a receiver.

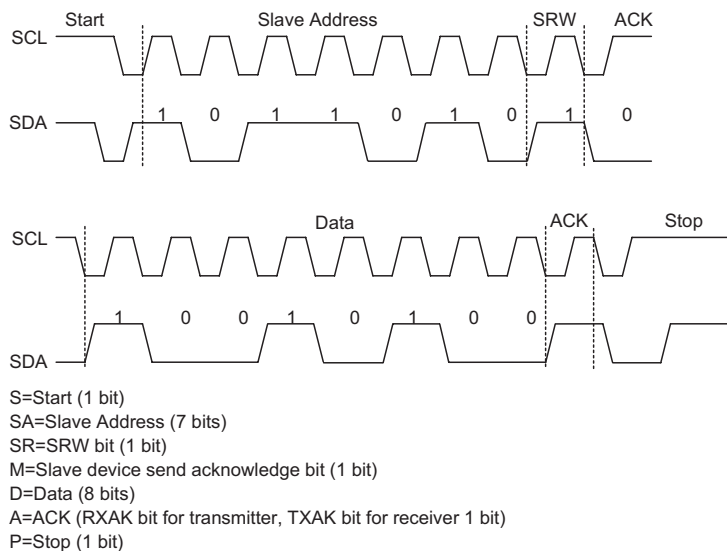
I²C Bus Slave Address Acknowledge Signal

After the master has transmitted a calling address, any slave device on the I²C bus, whose own internal address matches the calling address, must generate an acknowledge signal. The acknowledge signal will inform the master that a slave device has accepted its calling address. If no acknowledge signal is received by the master then a STOP signal must be transmitted by the master to end the communication. When the HAAS flag is high, the addresses have matched and the slave device must check the SRW flag to determine if it is to be a transmitter or a receiver. If the SRW flag is high, the slave device should be setup to be a transmitter so the HTX bit in the SIMC1 register should be set to “1”. If the SRW flag is low, then the microcontroller slave device should be setup as a receiver and the HTX bit in the SIMC1 register should be set to “0”.

I²C Bus Data and Acknowledge Signal

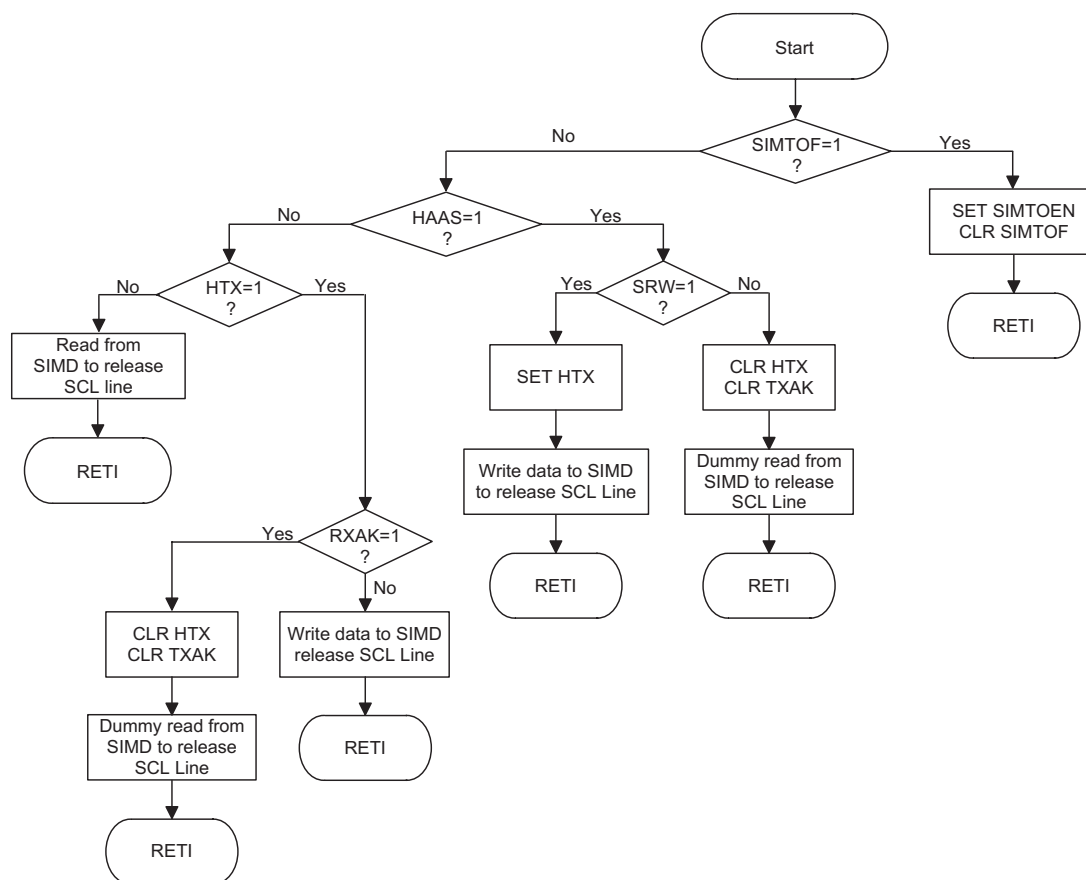
The transmitted data is 8-bits wide and is transmitted after the slave device has acknowledged receipt of its slave address. The order of serial bit transmission is the MSB first and the LSB last. After receipt of 8-bits of data, the receiver must transmit an acknowledge signal, level “0”, before it can receive the next data byte. If the slave transmitter does not receive an acknowledge bit signal from the master receiver, then the slave transmitter will release the SDA line to allow the master to send a STOP signal to release the I²C Bus. The corresponding data will be stored in the SIMD register. If setup as a transmitter, the slave device must first write the data to be transmitted into the SIMD register. If setup as a receiver, the slave device must read the transmitted data from the SIMD register.

When the slave receiver receives the data byte, it must generate an acknowledge bit, known as TXAK, on the 9th clock. The slave device, which is setup as a transmitter will check the RXAK bit in the SIMC1 register to determine if it is to send another data byte, if not then it will release the SDA line and await the receipt of a STOP signal from the master.



Note: *When a slave address is matched, the devices must be placed in either the transmit mode and then write data to the SIMD register, or in the receive mode where it must implement a dummy read from the SIMD register to release the SCL line.

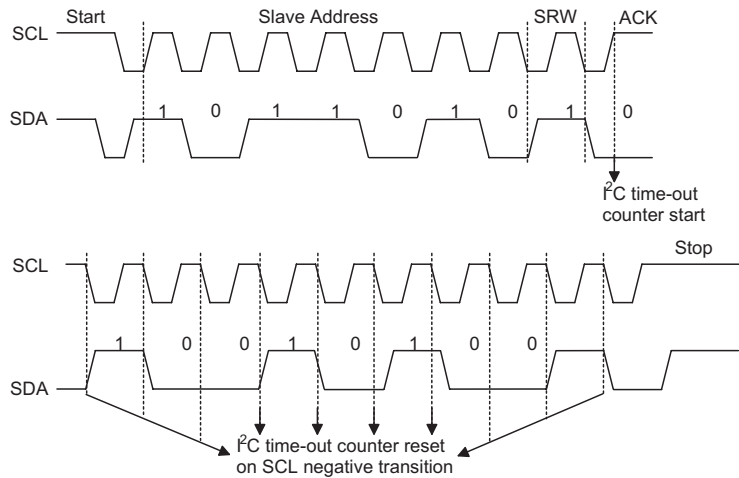
I²C Communication Timing Diagram



I²C Bus ISR Flow Chart

I²C Time-out Control

In order to reduce the I²C lockup problem due to reception of erroneous clock sources, a time-out function is provided. If the clock source connected to the I²C bus is not received for a while, then the I²C circuitry and registers will be reset after a certain time-out period. The time-out counter starts to count on an I²C bus “START” & “address match” condition, and is cleared by an SCL falling edge. Before the next SCL falling edge arrives, if the time elapsed is greater than the time-out period specified by the SIMTOC register, then a time-out condition will occur. The time-out function will stop when an I²C “STOP” condition occurs.



I²C Time-out

When an I²C time-out counter overflow occurs, the counter will stop and the SIMTOEN bit will be cleared to zero and the SIMTOF bit will be set high to indicate that a time-out condition has occurred. The time-out condition will also generate an interrupt which uses the I²C interrupt vector. When an I²C time-out occurs, the I²C internal circuitry will be reset and the registers will be reset into the following condition:

Register	After I ² C Time-out
SIMD, SIMA, SIMC0	No change
SIMC1	Reset to POR condition

I²C Register after Time-out

The SIMTOF flag can be cleared by the application program. There are 64 time-out period selections which can be selected using the SIMTOS bits in the SIMTOC register. The time-out duration is calculated by the formula: $((1 \sim 64) \times (32/f_{SUB}))$. This gives a time-out period which ranges from about 1ms to 64ms.

SIMTOC Register

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Name	SIMTOEN	SIMTOF	SIMTOS5	SIMTOS4	SIMTOS3	SIMTOS2	SIMTOS1	SIMTOS0
R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W
POR	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit 7 **SIMTOEN**: SIM I²C Time-out control

0: Disable

1: Enable

Bit 6 **SIMTOF**: SIM I²C Time-out flag

0: No time-out occurred

1: Time-out occurred

Bit 5~0 **SIMTOS5~SIMTOS0**: SIM I²C Time-out period selection

I²C Time-out clock source is $f_{SUB}/32$

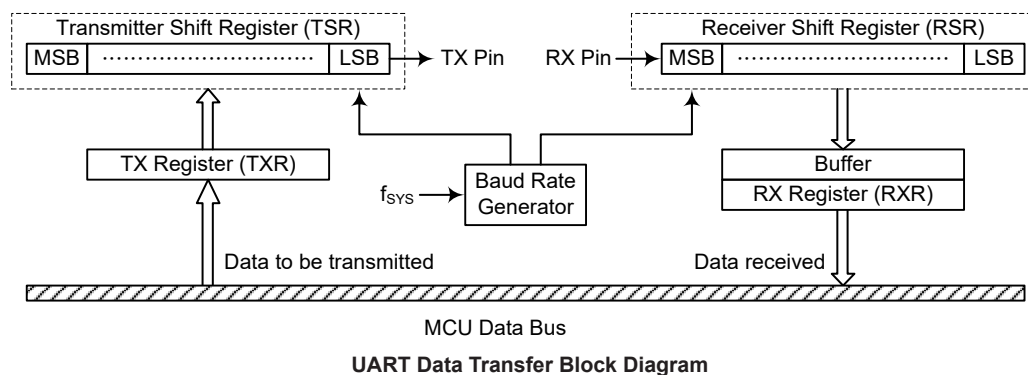
I²C Time-out period is equal to $(SIMTOS[5:0] + 1) \times \frac{32}{f_{SUB}}$

UART Interface

These devices contain an integrated full-duplex asynchronous serial communications UART interface that enables communication with external devices that contain a serial interface. The UART function has many features and can transmit and receive data serially by transferring a frame of data with eight or nine data bits per transmission as well as being able to detect errors when the data is overwritten or incorrectly framed. The UART function possesses its own internal interrupt which can be used to indicate when a reception occurs or when a transmission terminates.

The integrated UART function contains the following features:

- Full-duplex, asynchronous communication
- 8 or 9 bits character length
- Even, odd or no parity options
- One or two stop bits
- Baud rate generator with 8-bit prescaler
- Parity, framing, noise and overrun error detection
- Support for interrupt on address detect (last character bit=1)
- Separately enabled transmitter and receiver
- 2-byte Deep FIFO Receive Data Buffer
- RX pin wake-up function
- Transmit and receive interrupts
- Interrupts can be initialized by the following conditions:
 - ♦ Transmitter Empty
 - ♦ Transmitter Idle
 - ♦ Receiver Full
 - ♦ Receiver Overrun
 - ♦ Address Mode Detect



UART External Pin

To communicate with an external serial interface, the internal UART has two external pins known as TX and RX. The TX and RX pins are the UART transmitter and receiver pins respectively. The TX and RX pin function should first be selected by the corresponding pin-shared function selection register before the UART function is used. Along with the UARTEN bit, the TXEN and RXEN bits, if set, will automatically setup these I/O or other pin-shared functional pins to their respective TX output and RX input conditions and disable any pull-high resistor option which may exist on the TX and RX pins. When the TX or RX pin function is disabled by clearing the UARTEN, TXEN or RXEN bit, the TX or RX pin will be set to a floating state. At this time whether the internal pull-high resistor is connected to the TX or RX pin or not is determined by the corresponding I/O pull-high function control bit.

UART Data Transfer Scheme

The above diagram shows the overall data transfer structure arrangement for the UART interface. The actual data to be transmitted from the MCU is first transferred to the TXR register by the application program. The data will then be transferred to the Transmit Shift Register from where it will be shifted out, LSB first, onto the TX pin at a rate controlled by the Baud Rate Generator. Only the TXR register is mapped onto the MCU Data Memory, the Transmit Shift Register is not mapped and is therefore inaccessible to the application program.

Data to be received by the UART is accepted on the external RX pin, from where it is shifted in, LSB first, to the Receiver Shift Register at a rate controlled by the Baud Rate Generator. When the shift register is full, the data will then be transferred from the shift register to the internal RXR register, where it is buffered and can be manipulated by the application program. Only the TXR register is mapped onto the MCU Data Memory, the Receiver Shift Register is not mapped and is therefore inaccessible to the application program.

It should be noted that the actual register for data transmission and reception, although referred to in the text, and in application programs, as separate TXR and RXR registers, only exists as a single shared register in the Data Memory. This shared register known as the TXR_RXR register is used for both data transmission and data reception.

UART Status and Control Registers

There are five control registers associated with the UART function. The USR, UCR1 and UCR2 registers control the overall function of the UART, while the BRG register controls the Baud rate. The actual data to be transmitted and received on the serial interface is managed through the TXR_RXR data registers.

• TXR_RXR Register

The TXR_RXR register is the data register which is used to store the data to be transmitted on the TX pin or being received from the RX pin.

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Name	TXRX7	TXRX6	TXRX5	TXRX4	TXRX3	TXRX2	TXRX1	TXRX0
R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W
POR	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x

"x": unknown

Bit 7~0 **TXRX7~TXRX0**: UART Transmit/Receive Data bits

• **USR Register**

The USR register is the status register for the UART, which can be read by the program to determine the present status of the UART. All flags within the USR register are read only and further explanations are given below.

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Name	PERR	NF	FERR	OERR	RIDLE	RXIF	TIDLE	TXIF
R/W	R	R	R	R	R	R	R	R
POR	0	0	0	0	1	0	1	1

- Bit 7 PERR:** Parity error flag
 0: No parity error is detected
 1: Parity error is detected
 The PERR flag is the parity error flag. When this read only flag is “0”, it indicates a parity error has not been detected. When the flag is “1”, it indicates that the parity of the received word is incorrect. This error flag is applicable only if Parity mode (odd or even) is selected. The flag can also be cleared by a software sequence which involves a read to the status register USR followed by an access to the RXR data register.
- Bit 6 NF:** Noise flag
 0: No noise is detected
 1: Noise is detected
 The NF flag is the noise flag. When this read only flag is “0”, it indicates no noise condition. When the flag is “1”, it indicates that the UART has detected noise on the receiver input. The NF flag is set during the same cycle as the RXIF flag but will not be set in the case of as overrun. The NF flag can be cleared by a software sequence which will involve a read to the status register USR followed by an access to the RXR data register.
- Bit 5 FERR:** Framing error flag
 0: No framing error is detected
 1: Framing error is detected
 The FERR flag is the framing error flag. When this read only flag is “0”, it indicates that there is no framing error. When the flag is “1”, it indicates that a framing error has been detected for the current character. The flag can also be cleared by a software sequence which will involve a read to the status register USR followed by an access to the RXR data register.
- Bit 4 OERR:** Overrun error flag
 0: No overrun error is detected
 1: Overrun error is detected
 The OERR flag is the overrun error flag which indicates when the receiver buffer has overflowed. When this read only flag is “0”, it indicates that there is no overrun error. When the flag is “1”, it indicates that an overrun error occurs which will inhibit further transfers to the RXR receive data register. The flag is cleared by a software sequence, which is a read to the status register USR followed by an access to the RXR data register.

Bit 3	<p>RIDLE: Receiver status</p> <p>0: data reception is in progress (data being received)</p> <p>1: no data reception is in progress (receiver is idle)</p> <p>The RIDLE flag is the receiver status flag. When this read only flag is “0”, it indicates that the receiver is between the initial detection of the start bit and the completion of the stop bit. When the flag is “1”, it indicates that the receiver is idle. Between the completion of the stop bit and the detection of the next start bit, the RIDLE bit is “1” indicating that the UART receiver is idle and the RX pin stays in logic high condition.</p>
Bit 2	<p>RXIF: Receive RXR data register status</p> <p>0: RXR data register is empty</p> <p>1: RXR data register has available data</p> <p>The RXIF flag is the receive data register status flag. When this read only flag is “0”, it indicates that the RXR read data register is empty. When the flag is “1”, it indicates that the RXR read data register contains new data. When the contents of the shift register are transferred to the RXR register, an interrupt is generated if RIE=1 in the UCR2 register. If one or more errors are detected in the received word, the appropriate receive-related flags NF, FERR, and/or PERR are set within the same clock cycle. The RXIF flag is cleared when the USR register is read with RXIF set, followed by a read from the RXR register, and if the RXR register has no data available.</p>
Bit 1	<p>TIDLE: Transmission status</p> <p>0: data transmission is in progress (data being transmitted)</p> <p>1: no data transmission is in progress (transmitter is idle)</p> <p>The TIDLE flag is known as the transmission complete flag. When this read only flag is “0”, it indicates that a transmission is in progress. This flag will be set to “1” when the TXIF flag is “1” and when there is no transmit data or break character being transmitted. When TIDLE is equal to 1, the TX pin becomes idle with the pin state in logic high condition. The TIDLE flag is cleared by reading the USR register with TIDLE set and then writing to the TXR register. The flag is not generated when a data character or a break is queued and ready to be sent.</p>
Bit 0	<p>TXIF: Transmit TXR data register status</p> <p>0: character is not transferred to the transmit shift register</p> <p>1: character has transferred to the transmit shift register (TXR data register is empty)</p> <p>The TXIF flag is the transmit data register empty flag. When this read only flag is “0”, it indicates that the character is not transferred to the transmitter shift register. When the flag is “1”, it indicates that the transmitter shift register has received a character from the TXR data register. The TXIF flag is cleared by reading the UART status register (USR) with TXIF set and then writing to the TXR data register. Note that when the TXEN bit is set, the TXIF flag bit will also be set since the transmit data register is not yet full.</p>

• **UCR1 Register**

The UCR1 register together with the UCR2 register are the UART control registers that are used to set the various options for the UART function such as overall on/off control, parity control, data transfer bit length, etc. Further explanation on each of the bits is given below.

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Name	UARTEN	BNO	PREN	PRT	STOPS	TXBRK	RX8	TX8
R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R	W
POR	0	0	0	0	0	0	x	0

"x": unknown

Bit 7 **UARTEN**: UART function enable control

0: Disable UART; TX and RX pins are in a floating state.

1: Enable UART; TX and RX pins function as UART pins

The UARTEN bit is the UART enable bit. When this bit is equal to "0", the UART will be disabled and the RX pin as well as the TX pin will be set in a floating state. When the bit is equal to "1", the UART will be enabled and the TX and RX pins will function as defined by the TXEN and RXEN enable control bits. When the UART is disabled, it will empty the buffer so any character remaining in the buffer will be discarded. In addition, the value of the baud rate counter will be reset. If the UART is disabled, all error and status flags will be reset. Also the TXEN, RXEN, TXBRK, RXIF, OERR, FERR, PERR and NF bits will be cleared, while the TIDLE, TXIF and RIDLE bits will be set. Other control bits in UCR1, UCR2 and BRG registers will remain unaffected. If the UART is active and the UARTEN bit is cleared, all pending transmissions and receptions will be terminated and the module will be reset as defined above. When the UART is re-enabled, it will restart in the same configuration.

Bit 6 **BNO**: Number of data transfer bits selection

0: 8-bit data transfer

1: 9-bit data transfer

This bit is used to select the data length format, which can have a choice of either 8-bit or 9-bit format. When this bit is equal to "1", a 9-bit data length format will be selected. If the bit is equal to "0", then an 8-bit data length format will be selected. If 9-bit data length format is selected, then bits RX8 and TX8 will be used to store the 9th bit of the received and transmitted data respectively.

Bit 5 **PREN**: Parity function enable control

0: Parity function is disabled

1: Parity function is enabled

This bit is the parity function enable bit. When this bit is equal to 1, the parity function will be enabled. If the bit is equal to 0, then the parity function will be disabled.

Bit 4 **PRT**: Parity type selection bit

0: Even parity for parity generator

1: Odd parity for parity generator

This bit is the parity type selection bit. When this bit is equal to 1, odd parity type will be selected. If the bit is equal to 0, then even parity type will be selected.

Bit 3 **STOPS**: Number of stop bits selection

0: One stop bit format is used

1: Two stop bits format is used

This bit determines if one or two stop bits are to be used. When this bit is equal to "1", two stop bits format are used. If the bit is equal to "0", then only one stop bit format is used.

- Bit 2 **TXBRK**: Transmit break character
 0: No break character is transmitted
 1: Break characters transmit
 The TXBRK bit is the Transmit Break Character bit. When this bit is equal to “0”, there are no break characters and the TX pin operates normally. When the bit is equal to “1”, there are transmit break characters and the transmitter will send logic zeros. When this bit is equal to “1”, after the buffered data has been transmitted, the transmitter output is held low for a minimum of a 13-bit length and until the TXBRK bit is reset.
- Bit 1 **RX8**: Receive data bit 8 for 9-bit data transfer format (read only)
 This bit is only used if 9-bit data transfers are used, in which case this bit location will store the 9th bit of the received data known as RX8. The BNO bit is used to determine whether data transfers are in 8-bit or 9-bit format.
- Bit 0 **TX8**: Transmit data bit 8 for 9-bit data transfer format (write only)
 This bit is only used if 9-bit data transfers are used, in which case this bit location will store the 9th bit of the transmitted data known as TX8. The BNO bit is used to determine whether data transfers are in 8-bit or 9-bit format.

• **UCR2 Register**

The UCR2 register is the second of the UART control registers and serves several purposes. One of its main functions is to control the basic enable/disable operation of the UART Transmitter and Receiver as well as enabling the various UART interrupt sources. The register also serves to control the baud rate speed, receiver wake-up function enable and the address detect function enable. Further explanation on each of the bits is given below.

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Name	TXEN	RXEN	BRGH	ADDEN	WAKE	RIE	TIIE	TEIE
R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W
POR	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

- Bit 7 **TXEN**: UART Transmitter enable control
 0: UART Transmitter is disabled
 1: UART Transmitter is enabled
 The TXEN bit is the Transmitter Enable Bit. When this bit is equal to “0”, the transmitter will be disabled with any pending data transmissions being aborted. In addition the buffers will be reset. In this situation the TX pin will be set in a floating state. If the TXEN bit is equal to “1” and the UARTEN bit is also equal to 1, the transmitter will be enabled and the TX pin will be controlled by the UART. Clearing the TXEN bit during a transmission will cause the data transmission to be aborted and will reset the transmitter. If this situation occurs, the TX pin will be set in a floating state.
- Bit 6 **RXEN**: UART Receiver enable control
 0: UART Receiver is disabled
 1: UART Receiver is enabled
 The RXEN bit is the Receiver Enable Bit. When this bit is equal to “0”, the receiver will be disabled with any pending data receptions being aborted. In addition the receiver buffers will be reset. In this situation the RX pin will be set in a floating state. If the RXEN bit is equal to “1” and the UARTEN bit is also equal to 1, the receiver will be enabled and the RX pin will be controlled by the UART. Clearing the RXEN bit during a reception will cause the data reception to be aborted and will reset the receiver. If this situation occurs, the RX pin will be set in a floating state.

Bit 5	<p>BRGH: Baud Rate speed selection</p> <p>0: Low speed baud rate</p> <p>1: High speed baud rate</p> <p>The bit named BRGH selects the high or low speed mode of the Baud Rate Generator. This bit, together with the value placed in the baud rate register, BRG, controls the baud rate of the UART. If the bit is equal to 0, the low speed mode is selected.</p>
Bit 4	<p>ADDEN: Address detect function enable control</p> <p>0: Address detection function is disabled</p> <p>1: Address detection function is enabled</p> <p>The bit named ADDEN is the address detection function enable control bit. When this bit is equal to 1, the address detection function is enabled. When it occurs, if the 8th bit, which corresponds to RX7 if BNO=0, or the 9th bit, which corresponds to RX8 if BNO=1, has a value of “1”, then the received word will be identified as an address, rather than data. If the corresponding interrupt is enabled, an interrupt request will be generated each time the received word has the address bit set, which is the 8th or 9th bit depending on the value of the BNO bit. If the address bit known as the 8th or 9th bit of the received word is “0” with the address detection function being enabled, an interrupt will not be generated and the received data will be discarded.</p>
Bit 3	<p>WAKE: RX pin falling edge wake-up function enable control</p> <p>0: RX pin wake-up function is disabled</p> <p>1: RX pin wake-up function is enabled</p> <p>The bit enables or disables the receiver wake-up function. If this bit is equal to 1 and the device is in IDLE0 or SLEEP mode, a falling edge on the RX pin will wake up the device. If this bit is equal to 0 and the device is in IDLE or SLEEP mode, any edge transitions on the RX pin will not wake up the device.</p>
Bit 2	<p>RIE: Receiver interrupt enable control</p> <p>0: Receiver related interrupt is disabled</p> <p>1: Receiver related interrupt is enabled</p> <p>The bit enables or disables the receiver interrupt. If this bit is equal to 1 and when the receiver overrun flag OERR or received data available flag RXIF is set, the UART interrupt request flag will be set. If this bit is equal to 0, the UART interrupt request flag will not be influenced by the condition of the OERR or RXIF flags.</p>
Bit 1	<p>TIE: Transmitter Idle interrupt enable control</p> <p>0: Transmitter idle interrupt is disabled</p> <p>1: Transmitter idle interrupt is enabled</p> <p>The bit enables or disables the transmitter idle interrupt. If this bit is equal to 1 and when the transmitter idle flag TIDLE is set, due to a transmitter idle condition, the UART interrupt request flag will be set. If this bit is equal to 0, the UART interrupt request flag will not be influenced by the condition of the TIDLE flag.</p>
Bit 0	<p>TEIE: Transmitter Empty interrupt enable control</p> <p>0: Transmitter empty interrupt is disabled</p> <p>1: Transmitter empty interrupt is enabled</p> <p>The bit enables or disables the transmitter empty interrupt. If this bit is equal to 1 and when the transmitter empty flag TXIF is set, due to a transmitter empty condition, the UART interrupt request flag will be set. If this bit is equal to 0, the UART interrupt request flag will not be influenced by the condition of the TXIF flag.</p>

Baud Rate Generator

To setup the speed of the serial data communication, the UART function contains its own dedicated baud rate generator. The baud rate is controlled by its own internal free running 8-bit timer, the period of which is determined by two factors. The first of these is the value placed in the BRG register and the second is the value of the BRGH bit within the UCR2 control register. The BRGH bit decides, if the baud rate generator is to be used in a high speed mode or low speed mode, which in turn determines the formula that is used to calculate the baud rate. The value in the BRG register, N, which is used in the following baud rate calculation formula determines the division factor. Note that N is the decimal value placed in the BRG register and has a range of between 0 and 255.

UCR2 BRGH Bit	0	1
Baud Rate (BR)	$\frac{f_{sys}}{[64(N+1)]}$	$\frac{f_{sys}}{[16(N+1)]}$

By programming the BRGH bit which allows selection of the related formula and programming the required value in the BRG register, the required baud rate can be setup. Note that because the actual baud rate is determined using a discrete value, N, placed in the BRG register, there will be an error associated between the actual and requested value. The following example shows how the BRG register value N and the error value can be calculated.

• BRG Register

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Name	BRG7	BRG6	BRG5	BRG4	BRG3	BRG2	BRG1	BRG0
R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W
POR	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x

"x": unknown

Bit 7~0 **BRG7~BRG0:** Baud Rate values

By programming the BRGH bit in the UCR2 register which allows selection of the related formula described above and programming the required value in the BRG register, the required baud rate can be setup.

Calculating the Baud Rate and Error Values

For a clock frequency of 4MHz, and with BRGH set to 0 determine the BRG register value N, the actual baud rate and the error value for a desired baud rate of 4800.

From the above table the desired baud rate $BR = \frac{f_{sys}}{[64(N+1)]}$

Re-arranging this equation gives $N = \frac{f_{sys}}{(BR \times 64)} - 1$

Giving a value for $N = \frac{4000000}{(4800 \times 64)} - 1 = 12.0208$

To obtain the closest value, a decimal value of 12 should be placed into the BRG register. This gives an actual or calculated baud rate value of $BR = \frac{4000000}{[64(12+1)]} = 4808$

Therefore the error is equal to $\frac{4808-4800}{4800} = 0.16\%$

UART Setup and Control

For data transfer, the UART function utilizes a non-return-to-zero, more commonly known as NRZ, format. This is composed of one start bit, eight or nine data bits and one or two stop bits. Parity is supported by the UART hardware and can be setup to be even, odd or no parity. For the most common data format, 8 data bits along with no parity and one stop bit, denoted as 8, N, 1, is used as the default setting, which is the setting at power-on. The number of data bits and stop bits, along with the parity, are setup by programming the corresponding BNO, PRT, PREN and STOPS bits in the UCR1 register. The baud rate used to transmit and receive data is setup using the internal 8-bit baud rate generator, while the data is transmitted and received LSB first. Although the transmitter and receiver of the UART are functionally independent, they both use the same data format and baud rate. In all cases stop bits will be used for data transmission.

Enabling/Disabling the UART Interface

The basic on/off function of the internal UART function is controlled using the UARTEN bit in the UCR1 register. If the UARTEN, TXEN and RXEN bits are set, then these two UART pins will act as normal TX output pin and RX input pin respectively. If no data is being transmitted on the TX pin, then it will default to a logic high value.

Clearing the UARTEN bit will disable the TX and RX pins and these two pins will be in a floating state. When the UART function is disabled, the buffer will be reset to an empty condition, at the same time discarding any remaining residual data. Disabling the UART will also reset the enable control, the error and status flags with bits TXEN, RXEN, TXBRK, RXIF, OERR, FERR, PERR and NF being cleared while bits TIDLE, TXIF and RIDLE will be set. The remaining control bits in the UCR1, UCR2 and BRG registers will remain unaffected. If the UARTEN bit in the UCR1 register is cleared while the UART is active, then all pending transmissions and receptions will be immediately suspended and the UART will be reset to a condition as defined above. If the UART is then subsequently re-enabled, it will restart again in the same configuration.

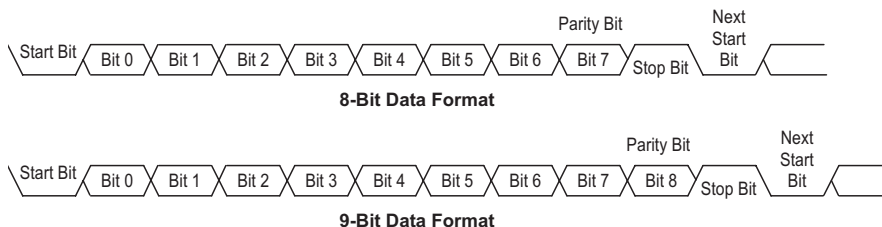
Data, Parity and Stop Bit Selection

The format of the data to be transferred is composed of various factors such as data bit length, parity on/off, parity type, address bits and the number of stop bits. These factors are determined by the setup of various bits within the UCR1 register. The BNO bit controls the number of data bits which can be set to either 8 or 9. The PRT bit controls the choice if odd or even parity. The PREN bit controls the parity on/off function. The STOPS bit decides whether one or two stop bits are to be used. The following table shows various formats for data transmission. The address bit, which is the MSB of the data byte, identifies the frame as an address character or data if the address detect function is enabled. The number of stop bits, which can be either one or two, is independent of the data length.

Start Bit	Data Bits	Address Bits	Parity Bit	Stop Bit
Example of 8-bit Data Formats				
1	8	0	0	1
1	7	0	1	1
1	7	1	0	1
Example of 9-bit Data Formats				
1	9	0	0	1
1	8	0	1	1
1	8	1	0	1

Transmitter Receiver Data Format

The following diagram shows the transmit and receive waveforms for both 8-bit and 9-bit data formats.



UART Transmitter

Data word lengths of either 8 or 9 bits can be selected by programming the BNO bit in the UCR1 register. When BNO bit is set, the word length will be set to 9 bits. In this case the 9th bit, which is the MSB, needs to be stored in the TX8 bit in the UCR1 register. At the transmitter core lies the Transmitter Shift Register, more commonly known as the TSR, whose data is obtained from the transmit data register, which is known as the TXR register. The data to be transmitted is loaded into this TXR register by the application program. The TSR register is not written to with new data until the stop bit from the previous transmission has been sent out. As soon as this stop bit has been transmitted, the TSR can then be loaded with new data from the TXR register, if it is available. It should be noted that the TSR register, unlike many other registers, is not directly mapped into the Data Memory area and as such is not available to the application program for direct read/write operations. An actual transmission of data will normally be enabled when the TXEN bit is set, but the data will not be transmitted until the TXR register has been loaded with data and the baud rate generator has defined a shift clock source. However, the transmission can also be initiated by first loading data into the TXR register, after which the TXEN bit can be set. When a transmission of data begins, the TSR is normally empty, in which case a transfer to the TXR register will result in an immediate transfer to the TSR. If during a transmission the TXEN bit is cleared, the transmission will immediately cease and the transmitter will be reset. The TX output pin will be in a floating state.

Transmitting Data

When the UART is transmitting data, the data is shifted on the TX pin from the shift register, with the least significant bit LSB first. In the transmit mode, the TXR register forms a buffer between the internal bus and the transmitter shift register. It should be noted that if 9-bit data format has been selected, then the MSB will be taken from the TX8 bit in the UCR1 register. The steps to initiate a data transfer can be summarized as follows:

- Make the correct selection of the BNO, PRT, PREN and STOPS bits to define the required word length, parity type and number of stop bits.
- Setup the BRG register to select the desired baud rate.
- Set the TXEN bit to ensure that the UART transmitter is enabled and the TX pin is used as a UART transmitter pin.
- Access the USR register and write the data that is to be transmitted into the TXR register. Note that this step will clear the TXIF bit.

This sequence of events can now be repeated to send additional data. It should be noted that when TXIF=0, data will be inhibited from being written to the TXR register. Clearing the TXIF flag is always achieved using the following software sequence:

1. A USR register access
2. A TXR register write execution

The read-only TXIF flag is set by the UART hardware and if set indicates that the TXR register is empty and that other data can now be written into the TXR register without overwriting the previous data. If the TEIE bit is set, then the TXIF flag will generate an interrupt. During a data transmission, a write instruction to the TXR register will place the data into the TXR register, which will be copied to the shift register at the end of the present transmission. When there is no data transmission in progress, a write instruction to the TXR register will place the data directly into the shift register, resulting in the commencement of data transmission, and the TXIF bit being immediately set. When a frame transmission is complete, which happens after stop bits are sent or after the break frame, the TIDLE bit will be set. To clear the TIDLE bit the following software sequence is used:

1. A USR register access
2. A TXR register write execution

Note that both the TXIF and TIDLE bits are cleared by the same software sequence.

Transmitting Break

If the TXBRK bit is set, then the break characters will be sent on the next transmission. Break character transmission consists of a start bit, followed by 13xN “0” bits, where N=1, 2, etc. If a break character is to be transmitted, then the TXBRK bit must be first set by the application program and then cleared to generate the stop bits. Transmitting a break character will not generate a transmit interrupt. Note that a break condition length is at least 13 bits long. If the TXBRK bit is continually kept at a logic high level, then the transmitter circuitry will transmit continuous break characters. After the application program has cleared the TXBRK bit, the transmitter will finish transmitting the last break character and subsequently send out one or two stop bits. The automatic logic high at the end of the last break character will ensure that the start bit of the next frame is recognized.

UART Receiver

The UART is capable of receiving word lengths of either 8 or 9 bits can be selected by programming the BNO bit in the UCR1 register. When BNO bit is set, the word length will be set to 9 bits. In this case the 9th bit, which is the MSB, will be stored in the RX8 bit in the UCR1 register. At the receiver core lies the Receiver Shift Register more commonly known as the RSR. The data which is received on the RX external input pin is sent to the data recovery block. The data recovery block operating speed is 16 times that of the baud rate, while the main receive serial shifter operates at the baud rate. After the RX pin is sampled for the stop bit, the received data in RSR is transferred to the receive data register, if the register is empty. The data which is received on the external RX input pin is sampled three times by a majority detect circuit to determine the logic level that has been placed onto the RX pin. It should be noted that the RSR register, unlike many other registers, is not directly mapped into the Data Memory area and as such is not available to the application program for direct read/write operations.

Receiving Data

When the UART receiver is receiving data, the data is serially shifted in on the external RX input pin to the shift register, with the least significant bit LSB first. The RXR register is a two byte deep FIFO data buffer, where two bytes can be held in the FIFO while the 3rd byte can continue to be received. Note that the application program must ensure that the data is read from RXR before the 3rd byte has been completely shifted in, otherwise the 3rd byte will be discarded and an overrun error OERR will be subsequently indicated. The steps to initiate a data transfer can be summarized as follows:

- Make the correct selection of the BNO, PRT, PREN and STOPS bits to define the required word length, parity type and number of stop bits.

- Setup the BRG register to select the desired baud rate.
- Set the RXEN bit to ensure that the UART receiver is enabled and the RX pin is used as a UART receiver pin.

At this point the receiver will be enabled which will begin to look for a start bit.

When a character is received, the following sequence of events will occur:

- The RXIF bit in the USR register will be set when the RXR register has data available. There will be at most one more character available before an overrun error occurs.
- When the contents of the shift register have been transferred to the RXR register and if the RIE bit is set, then an interrupt will be generated.
- If during reception, a frame error, noise error, parity error or an overrun error has been detected, then the error flags can be set.

The RXIF bit can be cleared using the following software sequence:

1. A USR register access
2. A RXR register read execution

Receiving Break

Any break character received by the UART will be managed as a framing error. The receiver will count and expect a certain number of bit times as specified by the values programmed into the BNO and STOPS bits. If the break is much longer than 13 bit times, the reception will be considered as complete after the number of bit times specified by BNO plus one stop bit. The RXIF bit is set, FERR is set, zeros are loaded into the receive data register, interrupts are generated if appropriate and the RIDLE bit is set. A break is regarded as a character that contains only zeros with the FERR flag set. If a long break signal has been detected, the receiver will regard it as a data frame including a start bit, data bits and the invalid stop bit and the FERR flag will be set. The receiver must wait for a valid stop bit before looking for the next start bit. The receiver will not make the assumption that the break condition on the line is the next start bit. The break character will be loaded into the buffer and no further data will be received until stop bits are received. It should be noted that the RIDLE read only flag will go high when the stop bits have not yet been received. The reception of a break character on the UART registers will result in the following:

- The framing error flag, FERR, will be set.
- The receive data register, RXR, will be cleared.
- The OERR, NF, PERR, RIDLE or RXIF flags will possibly be set.

Idle Status

When the receiver is reading data, which means it will be in between the detection of a start bit and the reading of a stop bit, the receiver status flag in the USR register, otherwise known as the RIDLE flag, will have a zero value. In between the reception of a stop bit and the detection of the next start bit, the RIDLE flag will have a high value, which indicates the receiver is in an idle condition.

Receiver Interrupt

The read only receive interrupt flag, RXIF, in the USR register is set by an edge generated by the receiver. An interrupt is generated if RIE=1, when a word is transferred from the Receive Shift Register, RSR, to the Receive Data Register, RXR. An overrun error can also generate an interrupt if RIE=1.

Managing Receiver Errors

Several types of reception errors can occur within the UART module, the following section describes the various types and how they are managed by the UART.

Overrun Error – OERR

The RXR register is composed of a two byte deep FIFO data buffer, where two bytes can be held in the FIFO register, while a 3th byte can continue to be received. Before the 3th byte has been entirely shifted in, the data should be read from the RXR register. If this is not done, the overrun error flag OERR will be consequently indicated.

In the event of an overrun error occurring, the following will happen:

- The OERR flag in the USR register will be set.
- The RXR contents will not be lost.
- The shift register will be overwritten.
- An interrupt will be generated if the RIE bit is set.

The OERR flag can be cleared by an access to the USR register followed by a read to the RXR register.

Noise Error – NF

Over-sampling is used for data recovery to identify valid incoming data and noise. If noise is detected within a frame, the following will occur:

- The read only noise flag, NF, in the USR register will be set on the rising edge of the RXIF bit.
- Data will be transferred from the shift register to the RXR register.
- No interrupt will be generated. However this bit rises at the same time as the RXIF bit which itself generates an interrupt.

Note that the NF flag is reset by a USR register read operation followed by an RXR register read operation.

Framing Error – FERR

The read only framing error flag, FERR, in the USR register, is set if a zero is detected instead of stop bits. If two stop bits are selected, both stop bits must be high. Otherwise the FERR flag will be set. The FERR flag and the received data will be recorded in the USR and RXR registers respectively, and the flag is cleared in any reset.

Parity Error – PERR

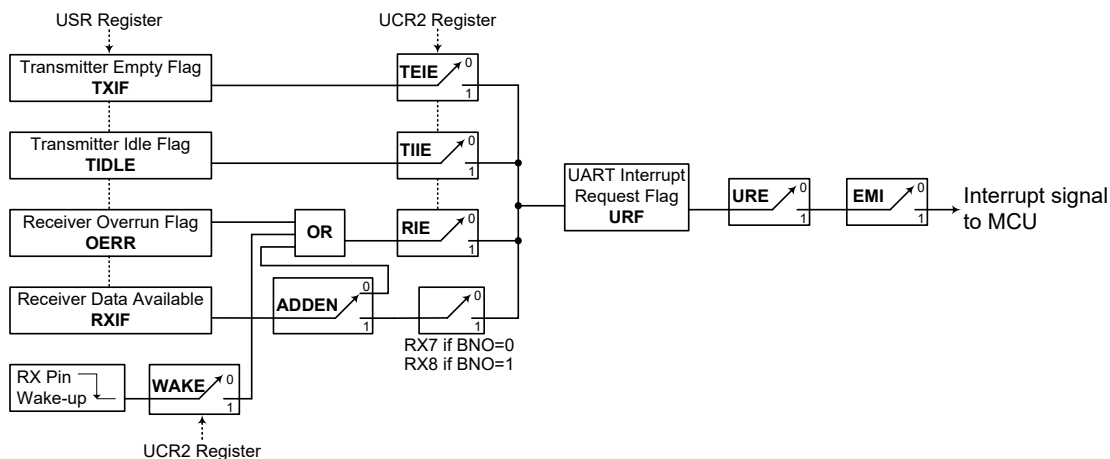
The read only parity error flag, PERR, in the USR register, is set if the parity of the received word is incorrect. This error flag is only applicable if the parity function is enabled, PREN=1, and if the parity type, odd or even, is selected. The read only PERR flag and the received data will be recorded in the USR and RXR registers respectively. It is cleared on any reset, it should be noted that the flags, FERR and PERR, in the USR register should first be read by the application program before reading the data word.

UART Interrupt Structure

Several individual UART conditions can generate a UART interrupt. When these conditions exist, a low pulse will be generated to get the attention of the microcontroller. These conditions are a transmitter data register empty, transmitter idle, receiver data available, receiver overrun, address detect and an RX pin wake-up. When any of these conditions are created, if its corresponding interrupt control is enabled and the stack is not full, the program will jump to its corresponding interrupt vector where it can be serviced before returning to the main program. Four of these conditions have the corresponding USR register flags which will generate a UART interrupt if its associated interrupt enable control bit in the UCR2 register is set. The two transmitter interrupt conditions have their own corresponding enable control bits, while the two receiver interrupt conditions have a shared enable control bit. These enable bits can be used to mask out individual UART interrupt sources.

The address detect condition, which is also a UART interrupt source, does not have an associated flag, but will generate a UART interrupt when an address detect condition occurs if its function is enabled by setting the ADDEN bit in the UCR2 register. An RX pin wake-up, which is also a UART interrupt source, does not have an associated flag, but will generate a UART interrupt if the microcontroller is woken up from IDLE0 or SLEEP mode by a falling edge on the RX pin, if the WAKE and RIE bits in the UCR2 register are set. Note that in the event of an RX wake-up interrupt occurring, there will be a certain period of delay, commonly known as the System Start-up Time, for the oscillator to restart and stabilize before the system resumes normal operation.

Note that the USR register flags are read only and cannot be cleared or set by the application program, neither will they be cleared when the program jumps to the corresponding interrupt servicing routine, as is the case for some of the other interrupts. The flags will be cleared automatically when certain actions are taken by the UART, the details of which are given in the UART register section. The overall UART interrupt can be disabled or enabled by the related interrupt enable control bits in the interrupt control registers of the microcontroller to decide whether the interrupt requested by the UART module is masked out or allowed.



UART Interrupt Structure

Address Detect Mode

Setting the Address Detect function enable control bit, ADDEN, in the UCR2 register, enables this special function. If this bit is set to 1, then an additional qualifier will be placed on the generation of a Receiver Data Available interrupt, which is requested by the RXIF flag. If the ADDEN bit is equal to 1, then when the data is available, an interrupt will only be generated, if the highest received bit has a high value. Note that the related interrupt enable control bit and the EMI bit of the microcontroller must also be enabled for correct interrupt generation. The highest address bit is the 9th bit if the bit BNO=1 or the 8th bit if the bit BNO=0. If the highest bit is high, then the received word will be defined as an address rather than data. A Data Available interrupt will be generated every time the last bit of the received word is set. If the ADDEN bit is equal to 0, then a Receive Data Available interrupt will be generated each time the RXIF flag is set, irrespective of the data last bit status. The address detection and parity functions are mutually exclusive functions. Therefore, if the address detect function is enabled, then to ensure correct operation, the parity function should be disabled by resetting the parity function enable bit PREN to zero.

ADDEN	Bit 9 if BNO=1 Bit 8 if BNO=0	UART Interrupt Generated
0	0	√
	1	√
1	0	×
	1	√

ADDEN Bit Function

UART Power Down and Wake-up

When the MCU system clock is switched off, the UART will cease to function. If the MCU executes the “HALT” instruction and switches off the system clock while a transmission is still in progress, then the transmission will be paused until the UART clock source derived from the microcontroller is activated. In a similar way, if the MCU executes the “HALT” instruction and switches off the system clock while receiving data, then the reception of data will likewise be paused. When the MCU enters the IDLE or SLEEP Mode, note that the USR, UCR1, UCR2, transmit and receive registers, as well as the BRG register will not be affected. It is recommended to make sure first that the UART data transmission or reception has been finished before the microcontroller enters the IDLE or SLEEP mode.

The UART function contains a receiver RX pin wake-up function, which is enabled or disabled by the WAKE bit in the UCR2 register. If this bit, along with the UART enable bit, UARTEN, the receiver enable bit, RXEN and the receiver interrupt bit, RIE, are all set before the MCU enters the IDLE0 or SLEEP Mode, then a falling edge on the RX pin will wake up the MCU from the IDLE0 or SLEEP Mode. Note that as it takes certain system clock cycles after a wake-up, before normal microcontroller operation resumes, any data received during this time on the RX pin will be ignored.

For a UART wake-up interrupt to occur, in addition to the bits for the wake-up being set, the global interrupt enable bit, EMI, and the UART interrupt enable bit, URE, must be set. If the EMI and URE bits are not set then only a wake up event will occur and no interrupt will be generated. Note also that as it takes certain system clock cycles after a wake-up before normal microcontroller resumes, the UART interrupt will not be generated until after this time has elapsed.

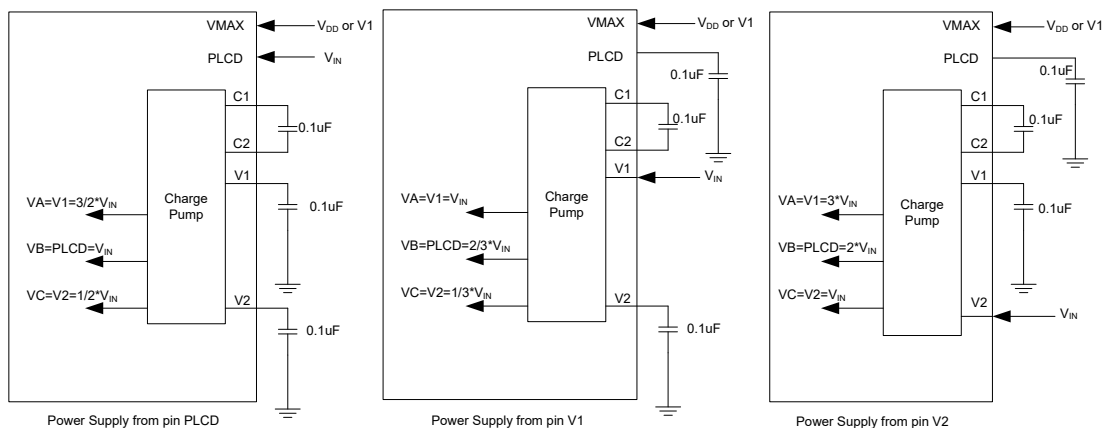
LCD Driver

For large volume applications, which incorporate an LCD in their design, the use of a custom display rather than a more expensive character based display reduces costs significantly. However, the corresponding COM and SEG signals required, which vary in both amplitude and time, to drive such a custom display require many special considerations for proper LCD operation to occur.

These devices all contain an LCD Driver function, which with their internal LCD signal generating circuitry and various options, will automatically generate these time and amplitude varying signals to provide a means of direct driving and easy interfacing to a range of custom LCDs.

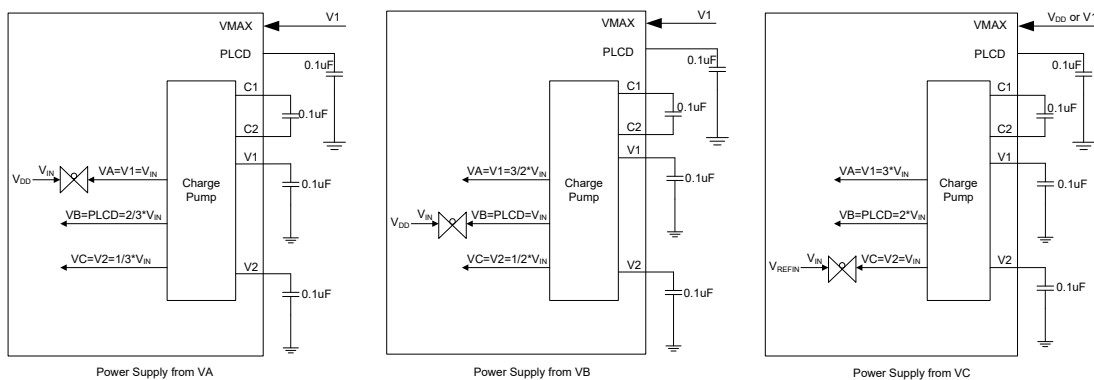
Device	Duty	Bias	Bias Type	Wave Type
BS67F340 BS67F350 BS67F360 BS67F370	1/4	1/3	R or C	A or B

LCD Selections



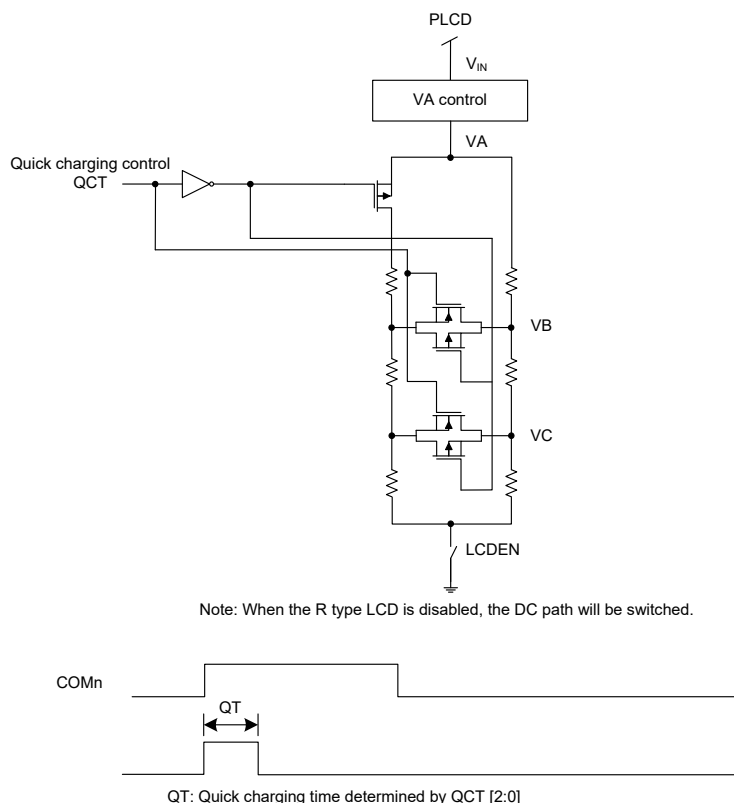
Note: The pin VMAX must be connected to the maximum voltage to prevent from the pad leakage.

C Type Bias External Power Supply Configuration – 1/3 Bias



Note: The pin VMAX must be connected to the maximum voltage to prevent from the pad leakage.

C Type Bias Internal Power Supply Configuration – 1/3 Bias



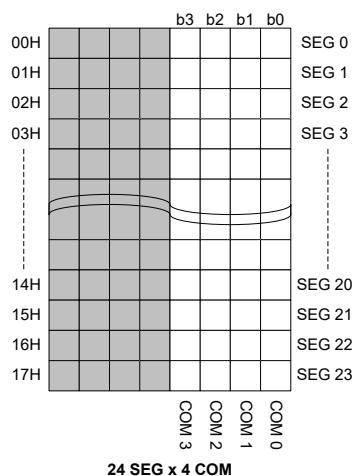
R Type Bias Configuration – 1/3 Bias

LCD Memory

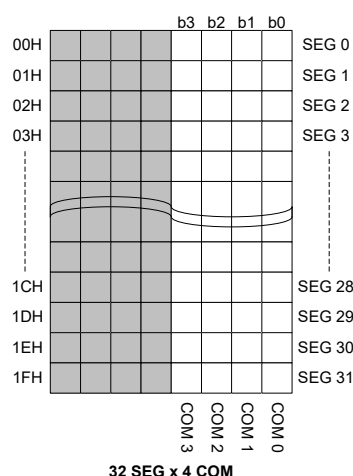
An area of Data Memory is especially reserved for use for the LCD display data. This data area is known as the LCD Memory. Any data written here will be automatically read by the internal display driver circuits, which will in turn automatically generate the necessary LCD driving signals. Therefore any data written into this Memory will be immediately reflected into the actual display connected to the microcontroller.

As the LCD Memory addresses overlap those of the General Purpose Data Memory, it is stored in its own independent Sector 4 area. The Data Memory sector to be used is chosen by using the Memory Pointer high byte register, which is a special function register in the Data Memory, with the name, MP1H or MP2H. To access the LCD Memory therefore requires first that Sector 4 is selected by writing a value of 04H to the MP1H or MP2H register. After this, the memory can then be accessed by using indirect addressing through the use of Memory Pointer low byte, MP1L or MP2L. With Sector 4 selected, then using MP1L or MP2L to read or write to the memory area, starting with address “00H” for all the devices, will result in operations to the LCD Memory. Directly addressing the LCD Display Memory can be applicable using the extended instructions for the full range address access.

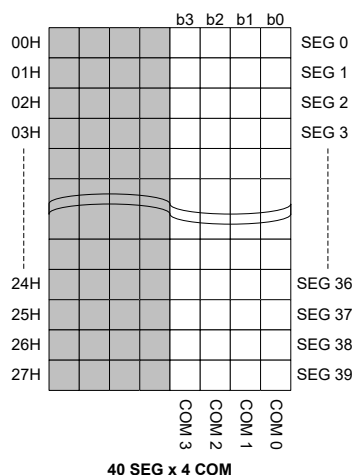
The accompanying LCD Memory Map diagrams shows how the internal LCD Memory is mapped to the Segments and Commons of the display for the devices.



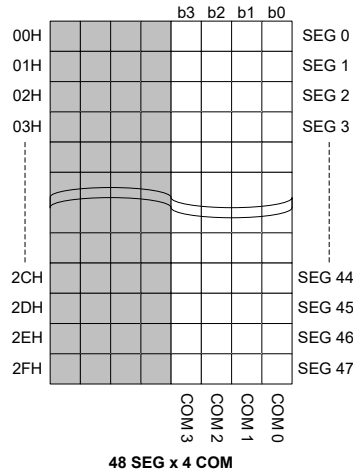
BS67F340 LCD Memory Map



BS67F350 LCD Memory Map



BS67F360 LCD Memory Map



BS67F370 LCD Memory Map

LCD Clock Source

The LCD clock source is the internal clock signal, f_{SUB} , divided by 8 using an internal divider circuit. The f_{SUB} internal clock is supplied by either the LIRC or LXT oscillator, the choice of which is determined by a software control bit. For proper LCD operation, this arrangement is provided to generate an ideal LCD clock source frequency of 4 kHz.

LCD Register

There are control registers, named as LCDC0 and LCDC1, in the Data Memory which is used to control the various setup features of the LCD Driver.

Various bits in this registers control functions such as LCD wave type, bias type, supply power selection, total bias resistor selection together with the overall LCD enable and disable control. The LCDEN bit in the LCDC0 register, which provides the overall LCD enable/disable function, will only be effective when the device is in the NOAMRL, SLOW or IDLE Mode. If the device is in the SLEEP Mode then the display will always be disabled. Bits, RSEL2 ~ RSEL0, in the LCDC0 register select the internal total bias resistors to supply the LCD panel with the proper bias current. A choice to best match the LCD panel used in the application can be selected also to minimise bias current. The TYPE bit in the LCDC0 register is used to select whether Type A or Type B LCD waveform signals are used. The RCT bit in the same register is used to select whether R Type or C Type LCD bias is used. The LCDP1 and LCDP0 bits are used to select that the LCD supply power comes from either the external pin or internal power supply for C type bias application.

The PLCD3~PLCD0 bits in the LCDC1 register are used to select the V_A voltage for R type bias circuitry. The QCT2~QCT0 bits in the same register are used to determine the quick charge time period.

Register Name	Bit							
	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
LCDC0	TYPE	RCT	LCDP1	LCDP0	RSEL2	RSEL1	RSEL0	LCDEN
LCDC1	QCT2	QCT1	QCT0	—	PLCD3	PLCD2	PLCD1	PLCD0

LCD Registers List

• **LCDC0 Register**

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Name	TYPE	RCT	LCDP1	LCDP0	RSEL2	RSEL1	RSEL0	LCDEN
R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W
POR	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit 7 **TYPE**: LCD waveform type selection

0: Type A

1: Type B

Bit 6 **RCT**: LCD bias type selection

0: R type

1: C type

When the RCT bit is cleared to 0, the LCDP[1:0] bits should be fixed at “00” and the power source is from the PLCD pin.

If the C1, C2 and V2 pin has pin-shared I/O or other pin-shared functions, when the RCT=1, the selected I/O or other pin-shared functions will interference with the C1, C2 and V2 functions.

Bit 5~4 **LCDP1~LCDP0**: C type bias LCD power supply selection

00: From external pin PLCD, V1 or V2

01: From internal reference voltage V_{REFIN} supplied to VC

10: From internal voltage V_{DD} supplied to VB

11: From internal voltage V_{DD} supplied to VA

The V_{REFIN} is an internal reference voltage with an approximate level of 1.08V.

Bit 3~1 **RSEL2~RSEL0**: R type total bias resistors selection

000: 1170 k Ω

001: 225 k Ω

010: 60 k Ω

011: Quick charging mode – switching between 60 k Ω and 1170 k Ω

1xx: Quick charging mode – switching between 60 k Ω and 225 k Ω

The device provides the low power quick charging mode for R type LCD display. In quick charging mode the LCD will provide more bias current at the beginning of each COMn phase as LCD display refreshes and then provide less bias current to reduce the bias current consumption in the remaining time duration in the same COMn phase.

Bit 0 **LCDEN**: LCD Enable control

0: Disable

1: Enable

In the NORMAL, SLOW or IDLE mode, the LCD on/off function can be controlled by this bit. However, in the SLEEP mode, the LCD function is always switched off.

• **LCDC1 Register**

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Name	QCT2	QCT1	QCT0	—	PLCD3	PLCD2	PLCD1	PLCD0
R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	—	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W
POR	0	0	0	—	0	0	0	0

Bit 7~5 **QCT2~QCT0**: R type quick charging time selection

000: 1 t_{SUB}
 001: 2 t_{SUB}
 010: 3 t_{SUB}
 011: 4 t_{SUB}
 100: 5 t_{SUB}
 101: 6 t_{SUB}
 110: 7 t_{SUB}
 111: 8 t_{SUB}

The t_{SUB} is the period of the LCD clock source f_{SUB} , i.e., $1/f_{SUB}$.

Bit 4 Unimplemented, read as “0”

Bit 3~0 **PLCD3~PLCD0**: R type bias supply voltage selection for V_A

0000: $8/16 \times PLCD$
 0001: $9/16 \times PLCD$
 0010: $10/16 \times PLCD$
 0011: $11/16 \times PLCD$
 0100: $12/16 \times PLCD$
 0101: $13/16 \times PLCD$
 0110: $14/16 \times PLCD$
 0111: $15/16 \times PLCD$
 1xxx: $PLCD$

Note that the V_A voltage level has to be equal to or greater than 2.1V.

LCD Voltage Source and Biasing

The time and amplitude varying signals generated by the LCD Driver function require the generation of several voltage levels for their operation. The devices can have either R type or C type biasing selected via a software control bit named RCT. Selecting the C type biasing will enable an internal charge pump circuitry.

R Type Biasing

For R type biasing an external LCD voltage source must be supplied on pin PLCD to generate the internal biasing voltages. This could be the microcontroller power supply V_{DD} or some other voltage source equal to or less than V_{DD} . For the R type 1/3 bias scheme, four voltage levels V_{SS} , V_A , V_B and V_C are utilised. The voltage V_A is selected by the PLCD3~PLCD0 bits to be equal to a specific ratio of V_{PLCD} varying from $8/16 V_{PLCD}$ to V_{PLCD} . The voltage V_B is equal to $V_A \times 2/3$ while the voltage V_C is equal to $V_A \times 1/3$.

Different values of internal bias resistors can be selected using the RSEL2~RSEL0 bits in the LCDC0 register. This along with the voltage on pin PLCD will determine the bias current. The VMAX pin should be connected to the VDD pin since the available maximum voltage applied to the PLCD pin is equal to V_{DD} . Note that no external capacitors or resistors are required to be connected if R type biasing is used.

C Type Biasing

For C type biasing the LCD voltage source can be supplied on the external pin PLCD, V1 or V2 or derived from the internal voltage source to generate the required biasing voltages. The C type bias voltage source is selected using the LCDP1 and LCDP0 bits in the LCDC0 register. The C type biasing scheme uses an internal charge pump circuit can generate voltages higher than what is supplied on PLCD or V2. This feature is useful in applications where the microcontroller supply voltage is less than the supply voltage required by the LCD. Additional charge pump capacitors must also be connected between pins C1 and C2 to generate the necessary voltage levels.

For C type 1/3 bias external power supply scheme, the LCD power can be supplied on PLCD, V1 or V2 pin. However, the LCD power is internally supplied on VA, VB or VC for C type 1/3 bias internal power supply scheme. Four internally generated voltage levels V_{SS} , V_A , V_B and V_C are utilised. These bias voltages have different levels depending upon different LCD power supply schemes.

LCD Power Supply		VA voltage	VB voltage	VC voltage
External Power Supply	V_{IN} on V1	V_{IN}	$2/3 \times V_{IN}$	$1/3 \times V_{IN}$
	V_{IN} on PLCD	$3/2 \times V_{IN}$	V_{IN}	$1/2 \times V_{IN}$
	V_{IN} on V2	$3 \times V_{IN}$	$2 \times V_{IN}$	V_{IN}
Internal Power Supply	V_{DD} on VA	V_{DD}	$2/3 \times V_{DD}$	$1/3 \times V_{DD}$
	V_{DD} on VB	$3/2 \times V_{DD}$	V_{DD}	$1/2 \times V_{DD}$
	V_{REFIN} on VC	$3 \times V_{REFIN}$	$2 \times V_{REFIN}$	V_{REFIN}

C Type Bias Power Supply Scheme

The connection to the VMAX pin depends upon the LCD power supply scheme. It is extremely important to ensure that these charge pump generated internal voltages do not exceed the maximum VDD voltage of 5.5V.

Condition	VMAX Connection
$V_{DD} > V_{IN} \times 1.5$	Connect VMAX to VDD
Otherwise	Connect VMAX to V1

C Type Bias VMAX Pin Connection

LCD Reset Function

The LCD has an internal reset function that is an OR function of the inverted LCDEN bit in the LCDC0 register and the SLEEP function. When the LCDEN bit is set to 1 to enable the LCD driver function before the device enters the SLEEP mode, the LCD function will be reset after the device enters the SLEEP mode. Clearing the LCDEN bit to zero will also reset the LCD function.

SLEEP Mode	LCDEN	LCD Reset	COM & SEG Voltage Level
Off	1	No	Normal Operation
Off	0	Yes	Low
On	x	Yes	Low

"x": Don't care

LCD Reset Function

LCD Driver Output

The number of COM and SEG outputs supplied by the LCD driver, as well as its biasing and wave type selections, are dependent upon how the LCD control bits are programmed. The Bias Type, whether C or R type is also selected by a software control bit.

The nature of Liquid Crystal Displays require that only AC voltages can be applied to their pixels as the application of DC voltages to LCD pixels may cause permanent damage. For this reason the relative contrast of an LCD display is controlled by the actual RMS voltage applied to each pixel, which is equal to the RMS value of the voltage on the COM pin minus the voltage applied to the SEG pin. This differential RMS voltage must be greater than the LCD saturation voltage for the pixel to be on and less than the threshold voltage for the pixel to be off.

The requirement to limit the DC voltage to zero and to control as many pixels as possible with a minimum number of connections requires that both a time and amplitude signal is generated and applied to the application LCD. These time and amplitude varying signals are automatically generated by the LCD driver circuits in the microcontroller. What is known as the duty determines the number of common lines used, which are also known as backplanes or COMs. The duty, which is to have a value of 1/4 and which equates to a COM number of 4, therefore defines the number of time divisions within each LCD signal frame. Two types of signal generation are also provided, known as Type A and Type B, the required type is selected via the TYPE bit in the LCDC0 register. Type B offers lower frequency signals, however, lower frequencies may introduce flickering and influence display clarity.





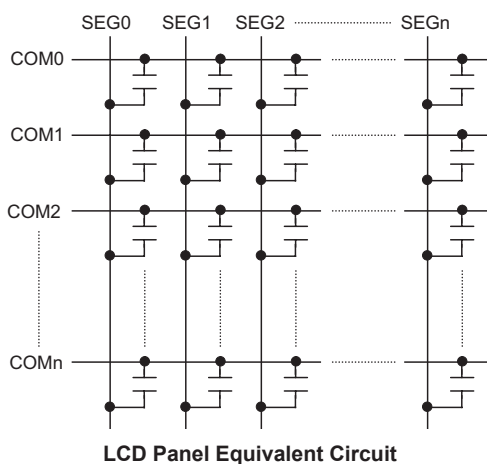
Programming Considerations

Certain precautions must be taken when programming the LCD. One of these is to ensure that the LCD Memory is properly initialised after the microcontroller is powered on. Like the General Purpose Data Memory, the contents of the LCD Memory are in an unknown condition after power-on. As the contents of the LCD Memory will be mapped into the actual display, it is important to initialise this memory area into a known condition soon after applying power to obtain a proper display pattern.

Consideration must also be given to the capacitive load of the actual LCD used in the application. As the load presented to the microcontroller by LCD pixels can be generally modeled as mainly capacitive in nature, it is important that this is not excessive, a point that is particularly true in the case of the COM lines which may be connected to many LCD pixels. The accompanying diagram depicts the equivalent circuit of the LCD.

One additional consideration that must be taken into account is what happens when the microcontroller enters the IDLE or SLOW Mode. The LCDEN control bit in the LCDC0 register permits the display to be powered off to reduce power consumption. If this bit is zero, the driving signals to the display will cease, producing a blank display pattern but reducing any power consumption associated with the LCD.

After Power-on, note that as the LCDEN bit will be cleared to zero, the display function will be disabled.



Touch Key Function

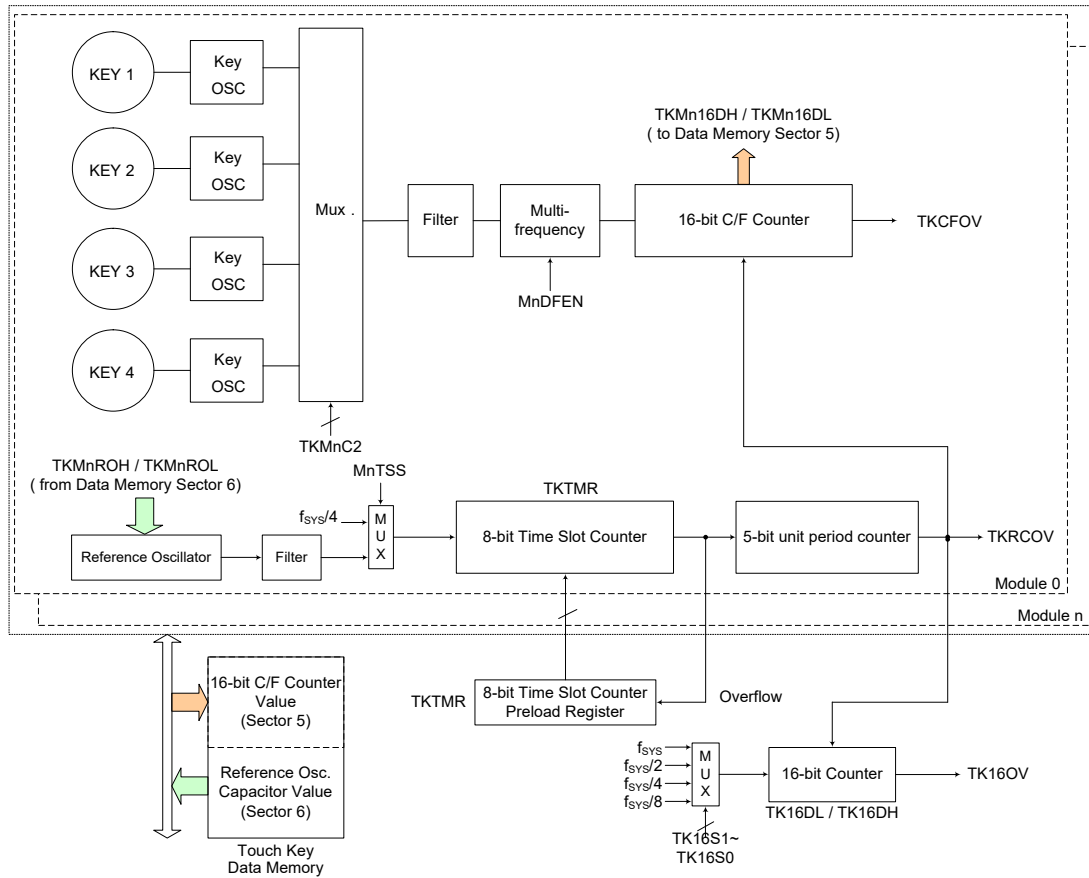
Each device provides multiple touch key functions. The touch key function is fully integrated and requires no external components, allowing touch key functions to be implemented by the simple manipulation of internal registers.

Touch Key Structure

The touch keys are pin shared with the I/O pins, with the desired function chosen via the pin-shared selection register bit. Keys are organised into several groups, with each group known as a module and having a module number, M0 to Mn. Each module is a fully independent set of four Touch Keys and each Touch Key has its own oscillator. Each module contains its own control logic circuits and register set. Examination of the register names will reveal the module number it is referring to.

Device	Total Key Number	Touch Key Module	Touch Key
BS67F370	36	M0	KEY1~KEY4
		M1	KEY5~KEY8
		M2	KEY9~KEY12
		M3	KEY13~KEY16
		M4	KEY17~KEY20
		M5	KEY21~KEY24
		M6	KEY25~KEY28
		M7	KEY29~KEY32
BS67F360	28	M8	KEY33~KEY36
		M0	KEY1~KEY4
		M1	KEY5~KEY8
		M2	KEY9~KEY12
		M3	KEY13~KEY16
		M4	KEY17~KEY20
		M5	KEY21~KEY24
BS67F350	20	M6	KEY25~KEY28
		M0	KEY1~KEY4
		M1	KEY5~KEY8
		M2	KEY9~KEY12
		M3	KEY13~KEY16
BS67F340	16	M4	KEY17~KEY20
		M0	KEY1~KEY4
		M1	KEY5~KEY8
		M2	KEY9~KEY12
		M3	KEY13~KEY16

Touch Key Structure



Note: The structure contained in the dash line is identical for each touch key module which contains four touch keys.

Touch Key Function Block Diagram

Touch Key Register Definition

Each touch key module, which contains four touch key functions, has its own suite registers. The following table shows the register set for each touch key module. The Mn within the register name refers to the Touch Key module number. The series of devices has up to seven Touch Key Modules dependent upon the selected device.

Name	Description
TKTMR	Touch key time slot 8-bit counter proload register
TKC0	Touch key function Control register 0
TKC1	Touch key function Control register 1
TK16DL	Touch key function 16-bit counter low byte
TK16DH	Touch key function 16-bit counter high byte
TKMn16DL	Touch key module n 16-bit C/F counter low byte
TKMn16DH	Touch key module n 16-bit C/F counter high byte
TKMnROL	Touch key module n reference oscillator capacitor select low byte
TKMnROH	Touch key module n reference oscillator capacitor select high byte
TKMnC0	Touch key module n Control register 0
TKMnC1	Touch key module n Control register 1
TKMnC2	Touch key module n Control register 2

Touch Key Module Registers List

Register Name	Bit							
	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
TKTMR	D7	D6	D5	D4	D3	D2	D1	D0
TKC0	TKRAMC	TKRCOV	TKST	TKCFOV	TK16OV	—	TKMOD	TKBUSY
TKC1	D7	D6	D5	TSCS	TK16S1	TK16S0	TKFS1	TKFS0
TK16DL	D7	D6	D5	D4	D3	D2	D1	D0
TK16DH	D15	D14	D13	D12	D11	D10	D9	D8
TKMn16DL	D7	D6	D5	D4	D3	D2	D1	D0
TKMn16DH	D15	D14	D13	D12	D11	D10	D9	D8
TKMnROL	D7	D6	D5	D4	D3	D2	D1	D0
TKMnROH	—	—	—	—	—	—	D9	D8
TKMnC0	—	—	MnDFEN	D4	MnSOFC	MnSOF2	MnSOF1	MnSOF0
TKMnC1	MnTSS	—	MnROEN	MnKOEN	MnK4EN	MnK3EN	MnK2EN	MnK1EN
TKMnC2	MnSK31	MnSK30	MnSK21	MnSK20	MnSK11	MnSK10	MnSK01	MnSK00

Touch Key Function Registers List

• **TKTMR Register**

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Name	D7	D6	D5	D4	D3	D2	D1	D0
R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W
POR	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit 7~0 **D7~D0:** Touch key time slot 8-bit counter preload register

The touch key time slot counter preload register is used to determine the touch key time slot overflow time. The time slot unit period is obtained by a 5-bit counter and equal to 32 time slot clock cycles. Therefore, the time slot counter overflow time is equal to the following equation shown.

Time slot counter overflow time = $(256 - \text{TKTMR}[7:0]) \times 32t_{\text{TSC}}$, where t_{TSC} is the time slot counter clock.

• **TKC0 Register**

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Name	TKRAMC	TKRCOV	TKST	TKCFOV	TK16OV	—	TKMOD	TKBUSY
R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	—	R/W	R/W
POR	0	0	0	0	0	—	0	0

Bit 7 **TKRAMC:** Touch key Data RAM access control

0: Accessed by MCU

1: Accessed by Touch key module

This bit determines that the touch key RAM is used by the MCU or touch key module. However, the touch key module will have the priority to access the touch key RAM when the touch key module operates in the auto scan mode, i.e., the TKST bit state is changed from 0 to 1 when the TKMOD bit is set low. After the touch key auto scan operation is completed, i.e., the TKBUSY bit state is changed from 1 to 0, the touch key RAM access will be controlled by the TKRAMC bit. Therefore, it is recommended to set the TKRAMC bit to 1 when the touch key module operates in the auto scan mode. Otherwise, the contents of the touch key RAM may be modified as this RAM space is configured by the touch key module followed by the MCU access.

Bit 6 **TKRCOV:** Touch key time slot counter overflow flag

0: No overflow occurs

1: Overflow occurs

This bit can be accessed by application programs. When this bit is set by touch key time slot counter overflow, the corresponding touch key interrupt request flag will be set. However, if this bit is set by application programs, the touch key interrupt request flag will not be affected.

In auto scan mode, if the time slot counter overflows but the touch key auto scan operation is not completed, the TKRCOV bit will not be set. At this time, the touch key module n 16-bit C/F counter, touch key function 16-bit counter and 5-bit time slot unit period counter will be automatically cleared but the 8-bit time slot counter will be reloaded from the 8-bit time slot counter preload register. When the touch key auto scan operation is completed, the TKRCOV bit and the Touch Key Interrupt request flag, TKMF, will be set and all modules key and reference oscillators will automatically stop. The touch key modules 16-bit C/F counter, touch key function 16-bit counter, 5-bit time slot unit period counter and 8-bit time slot counter will be automatically switched off.

In manual scan mode, if the time slot counter overflows, the TKRCOV bit and the Touch Key Interrupt request flag, TKMF, will be set and all modules key and reference oscillators will automatically stop. The touch key module 16-bit C/F counter, touch key function 16-bit counter, 5-bit time slot unit period counter and 8-bit time slot counter will be automatically switched off.

Bit 5	<p>TKST: Touch key detection Start control</p> <p>0: Stopped or no operation 0→1: Start detection</p> <p>In all modules the touch key module 16-bit C/F counter, touch key function 16-bit counter and 5-bit time slot unit period counter will automatically be cleared when this bit is cleared to zero. However, the 8-bit programmable time slot counter will not be cleared. When this bit is changed from low to high, the touch key module 16-bit C/F counter, touch key function 16-bit counter, 5-bit time slot unit period counter and 8-bit time slot counter will be switched on together with the key and reference oscillators to drive the corresponding counters.</p>
Bit 4	<p>TKCFOV: Touch key module 16-bit C/F counter overflow flag</p> <p>0: No overflow occurs 1: Overflow occurs</p> <p>This bit is set by touch key module 16-bit C/F counter overflow and must be cleared to 0 by application programs.</p>
Bit 3	<p>TK16OV: Touch key function 16-bit counter overflow flag</p> <p>0: No overflow occurs 1: Overflow occurs</p> <p>This bit is set by touch key function 16-bit counter overflow and must be cleared to 0 by application programs.</p>
Bit 2	Unimplemented, read as “0”
Bit 1	<p>TKMOD: Touch key scan mode select</p> <p>0: Auto scan mode 1: Manual scan mode</p> <p>In manual scan mode the reference oscillator capacitor value should be properly configured before the scan operation begins and the touch key module 16-bit C/F counter value should be read after the scan operation finishes by application program.</p> <p>In auto scan mode the data movement which is described above is implemented by hardware. The individual reference oscillator capacitor value and 16-bit C/F counter content for all scanned keys will be read from and written into a dedicated Touch Key Data Memory area. In auto scan mode the keys to be scanned can be arranged in a specific sequence which is determined by the MnSK3[1:0] ~ MnSK0[1:0] bits in the TKMnC2 register. The scan operation will not be stopped until all arranged keys are scanned.</p>
Bit 0	<p>TKBUSY: Touch key scan operation busy flag</p> <p>0: Not busy – no scan operation is executed or scan operation is complete 1: Busy – scan operation is executing</p> <p>This bit indicates whether the touch key scan operation is executing or not. It is set to 1 when the TKST bit is set high to start the scan operation and cleared to 0 when the touch key time slot counter overflows.</p>

• **TKC1 Register**

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Name	D7	D6	D5	TSCS	TK16S1	TK16S0	TKFS1	TKFS0
R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W
POR	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	1

- Bit 7~5 **D7~D5**: Data bits for test only
 These bits are used for test purpose only and must be kept as “000” for normal operations.
- Bit 4 **TSCS**: Touch key time slot counter select
 0: Each touch key module uses its own time slot counter
 1: All touch key modules use Module 0 time slot counter
- Bit 3~2 **TK16S1~TK16S0**: Touch key function 16-bit counter clock source select
 00: f_{sys}
 01: $f_{sys}/2$
 10: $f_{sys}/4$
 11: $f_{sys}/8$
- Bit 1~0 **TKFS1~TKFS0**: Touch key oscillator and Reference oscillator frequency select
 00: 500 kHz
 01: 1000 kHz
 10: 1500 kHz
 11: 2000 kHz

• **TK16DH/TK16DL – Touch Key Function 16-bit Counter Register Pair**

Register	TK16DH								TK16DL							
Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Name	D15	D14	D13	D12	D11	D10	D9	D8	D7	D6	D5	D4	D3	D2	D1	D0
R/W	R	R	R	R	R	R	R	R	R	R	R	R	R	R	R	R
POR	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

This register pair is used to store the touch key function 16-bit counter value. This 16-bit counter can be used to calibrate the reference or key oscillator frequency. When the touch key time slot counter overflows in the manual scan mode, this 16-bit counter will be stopped and the counter content will be unchanged. However, this 16-bit counter content will be cleared to zero at the end of the time slot 0, slot 1 and slot 2 but kept unchanged at the end of the time slot 3 in the auto scan mode. This register pair will be cleared to zero when the TKST bit is set low.

• **TKMn16DH/TKMn16DL – Touch Key Module n 16-bit C/F Counter Register Pair**

Register	TKMn16DH								TKMn16DL							
Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Name	D15	D14	D13	D12	D11	D10	D9	D8	D7	D6	D5	D4	D3	D2	D1	D0
R/W	R	R	R	R	R	R	R	R	R	R	R	R	R	R	R	R
POR	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

This register pair is used to store the touch key module n 16-bit C/F counter value. This 16-bit C/F counter will be stopped and the counter content will be kept unchanged when the touch key time slot counter overflows in the manual scan mode. However, this 16-bit C/F counter content will be cleared to zero at the end of the time slot 0, slot 1 and slot 2 but kept unchanged at the end of the time slot 3 when the auto scan mode is selected. This register pair will be cleared to zero when the TKST bit is set low.

• **TKMnROH/TKMnROL – Touch Key Module n Reference Oscillator Capacitor Select Register Pair**

Register	TKMnROH								TKMnROL							
Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Name	—	—	—	—	—	—	D9	D8	D7	D6	D5	D4	D3	D2	D1	D0
R/W	—	—	—	—	—	—	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W
POR	—	—	—	—	—	—	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

This register pair is used to store the touch key module n reference oscillator capacitor value. This register pair will be loaded with the corresponding next time slot capacitor value from the dedicated touch key data memory at the end of the current time slot when the auto scan mode is selected.

The reference oscillator internal capacitor value = $\frac{\text{TKMn}[9:0] \times 50\text{pF}}{1024}$.

• **TKMnC0 Register**

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Name	—	—	MnDFEN	D4	MnSOFC	MnSOF2	MnSOF1	MnSOF0
R/W	—	—	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W
POR	—	—	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit 7~6 Unimplemented, read as “0”

Bit 5 **MnDFEN**: Touch key module n multi-frequency control

0: Disable

1: Enable

This bit is used to control the touch key oscillator frequency doubling function. When this bit is set to 1, the key oscillator frequency will be doubled.

Bit 4 **D4**: Data bit for test only

The bit is used for test purpose only and must be kept as “0” for normal operations.

Bit 3 **MnSOFC**: Touch key module n C-to-F oscillator frequency hopping function control select

0: Controlled by the MnSOF2~MnSOF0

1: Controlled by hardware circuit

This bit is used to select the touch key oscillator frequency hopping function control method. When this bit is set to 1, the key oscillator frequency hopping function is controlled by the hardware circuit regardless of the MnSOF2~MnSOF0 bits value.

Bit 2~0 **MnSOF2~MnSOF0**: Touch key module n Reference and Key oscillators hopping frequency select

000: f_{HOP0} – Min. hopping frequency

001: f_{HOP1}

010: f_{HOP2}

011: f_{HOP3}

100: f_{HOP4} – Selected touch key oscillator frequency

101: f_{HOP5}

110: f_{HOP6}

111: f_{HOP7} – Max. hopping frequency

• **TKMnC1 Register**

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Name	MnTSS	—	MnROEN	MnKOEN	MnK4EN	MnK3EN	MnK2EN	MnK1EN
R/W	R/W	—	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W
POR	0	—	0	0	0	0	0	0

- Bit 7 MnTSS:** Touch key module n time slot counter clock source select
0: Touch key module n reference oscillator
1: $f_{SYS}/4$
- Bit 6** Unimplemented, read as “0”
- Bit 5 MnROEN:** Touch key module n Reference oscillator enable control
0: Disable
1: Enable
- This bit is used to enable the touch key module n reference oscillator. In auto scan mode the reference oscillator will automatically be enabled by setting the MnROEN bit high when the TKST bit is set from low to high if the reference oscillator is selected as the time slot clock source. The combination of the MnTSS, TSCS and MnK4EN~MnK1EN bits determines whether the reference oscillator is used or not. When the TKBUSY bit is changed from high to low, the MnROEN bit will automatically be set low to disable the reference oscillator.
- In manual scan mode the reference oscillator should first be enabled before setting the TKST bit from low to high if the reference oscillator is selected to be used and will be disabled when the TKBUSY bit is changed from high to low.
- Bit 4 MnKOEN:** Touch key module n Key oscillator enable control
0: Disable
1: Enable
- This bit is used to enable the touch key module n key oscillator. In auto scan mode the key oscillator will automatically be enabled by setting the MnKOEN bit high when the TKST bit is set from low to high. When the TKBUSY bit is changed from high to low, the MnKOEN bit will automatically be set low to disable the key oscillator.
- In manual scan mode the key oscillator should first be enabled before setting the TKST bit from low to high if the relevant key is enabled to be scanned and will be disabled when the TKBUSY bit is changed from high to low.
- Bit 3 MnK4EN:** Touch key module n Key 4 enable control
0: Disable
1: Enable
- Bit 2 MnK3EN:** Touch key module n Key 3 enable control
0: Disable
1: Enable
- Bit 1 MnK2EN:** Touch key module n Key 2 enable control
0: Disable
1: Enable
- Bit 0 MnK1EN:** Touch key module n Key 1 enable control
0: Disable
1: Enable

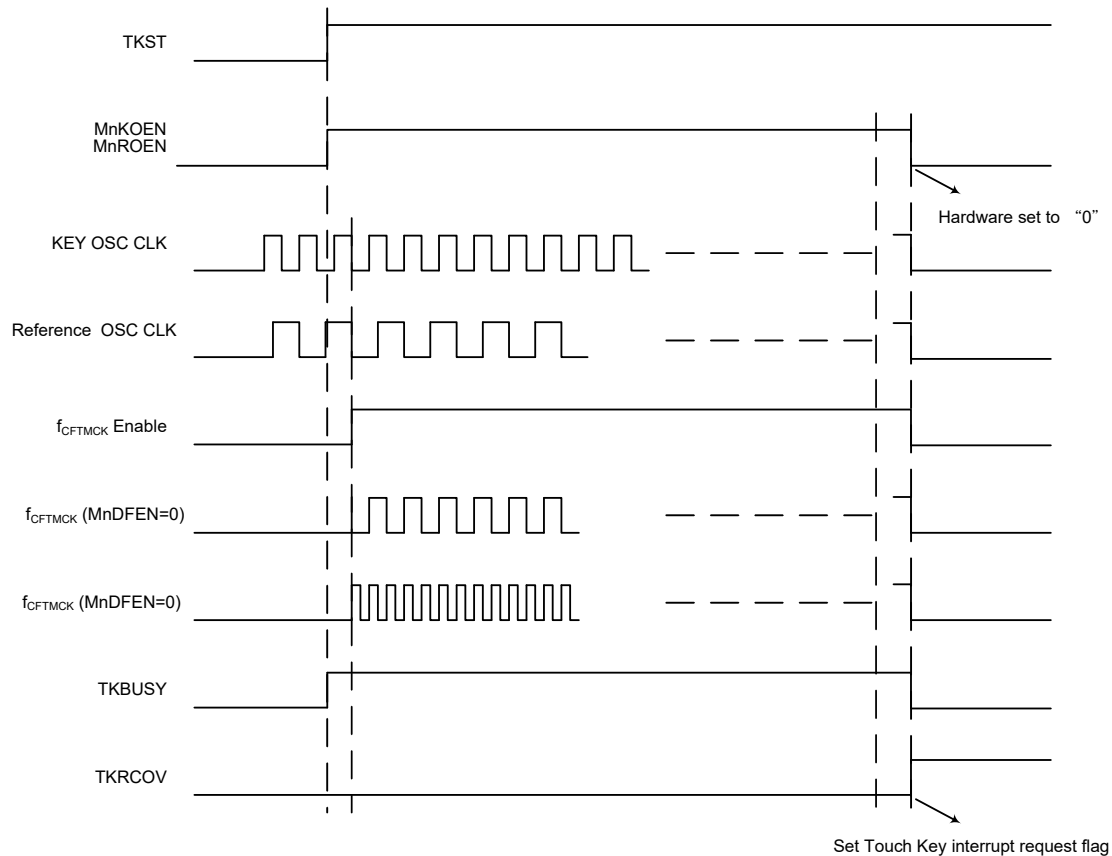
• **TKMnC2 Register**

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Name	MnSK31	MnSK30	MnSK21	MnSK20	MnSK11	MnSK10	MnSK01	MnSK00
R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W
POR	1	1	1	0	0	1	0	0

- Bit 7~6 **MnSK31~MnSK30:** Touch key module n time slot 3 key scan select
00: KEY 1
01: KEY 2
10: KEY 3
11: KEY 4
These bits are used to select the desired scan key in time slot 3 and only available in the auto scan mode.
- Bit 5~4 **MnSK21~MnSK20:** Touch key module n time slot 2 key scan select
00: KEY 1
01: KEY 2
10: KEY 3
11: KEY 4
These bits are used to select the desired scan key in time slot 2 and only available in the auto scan mode.
- Bit 3~2 **MnSK11~MnSK10:** Touch key module n time slot 1 key scan select
00: KEY 1
01: KEY 2
10: KEY 3
11: KEY 4
These bits are used to select the desired scan key in time slot 1 and only available in the auto scan mode.
- Bit 1~0 **MnSK01~MnSK00:** Touch key module n time slot 0 key scan select
00: KEY 1
01: KEY 2
10: KEY 3
11: KEY 4
These bits are used to select the desired scan key in time slot 0 in the auto scan mode or used as the multiplexer for scan key select in the manual mode.

Touch Key Operation

When a finger touches or is in proximity to a touch pad, the capacitance of the pad will increase. By using this capacitance variation to change slightly the frequency of the internal sense oscillator, touch actions can be sensed by measuring these frequency changes. Using an internal programmable divider the reference clock is used to generate a fixed time period. By counting a number of generated clock cycles from the sense oscillator during this fixed time period touch key actions can be determined.



Touch Key Manual Scan Mode Timing Diagram

Each touch key module contains four touch key inputs which are shared logical I/O pins, and the desired function is selected using register bits. Each touch key has its own independent sense oscillator. There are therefore four sense oscillators within each touch key module.

During this reference clock fixed interval, the number of clock cycles generated by the sense oscillator is measured, and it is this value that is used to determine if a touch action has been made or not. At the end of the fixed reference clock time interval a Touch Key interrupt signal will be generated in the manual scan mode.

Using the TSCS bit in the TKC1 register can select the module 0 time slot counter as the time slot counter for all modules. All modules use the same started signal, TKST, in the TKC0 register. The touch key module 16-bit C/F counter, 16-bit counter, 5-bit time slot unit period counter in all modules will be automatically cleared when the TKST bit is cleared to zero, but the 8-Bit programmable time slot counter will not be cleared. The overflow time is setup by user. When the TKST bit changes from low to high, the 16-bit C/F counter, 16-bit counter, 5-bit time slot unit period counter and 8-bit time slot timer counter will be automatically switched on.

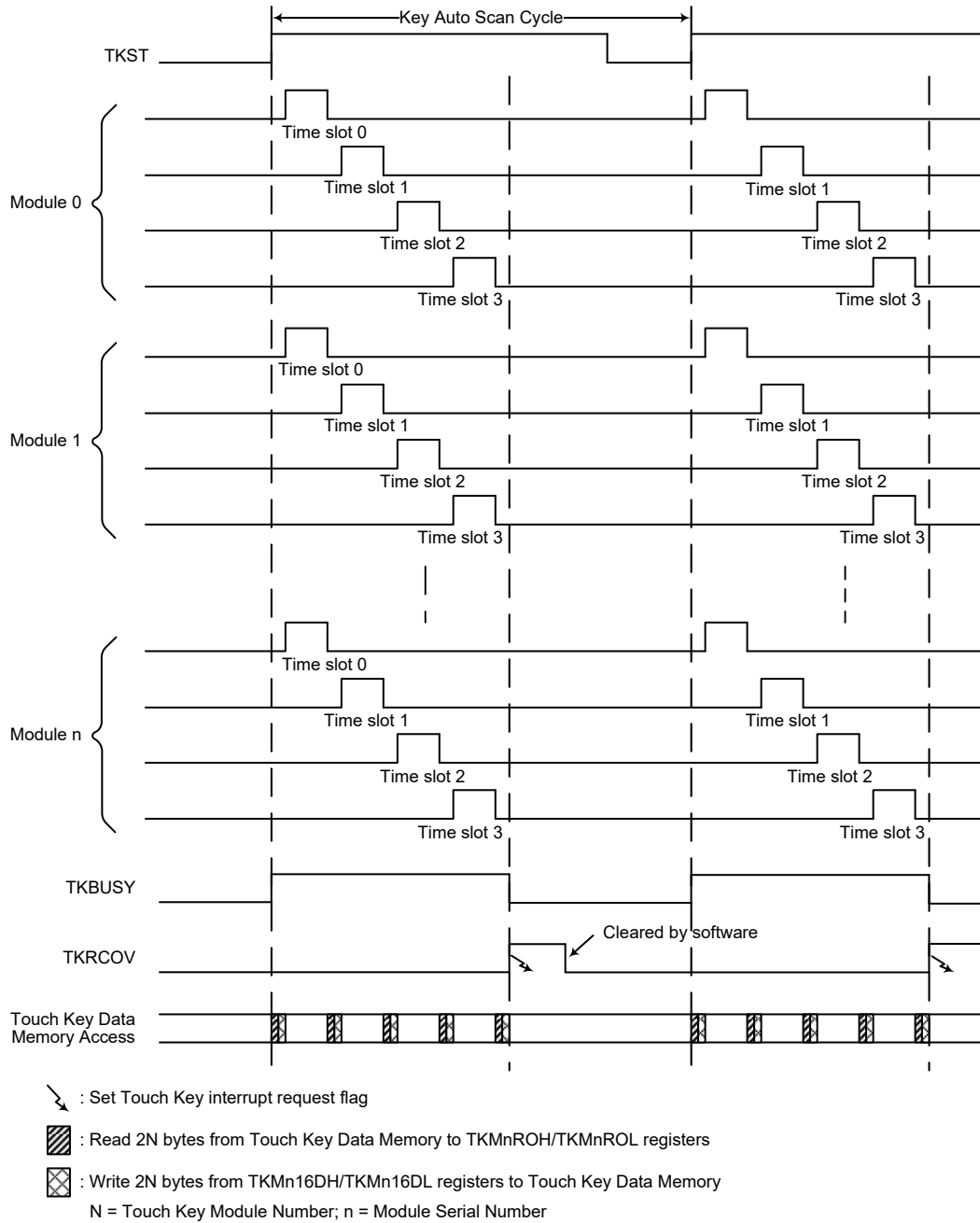
The key oscillator and reference oscillator in all modules will be automatically stopped and the 16-bit C/F counter, 16-bit counter, 5-bit time slot unit period counter and 8-bit time slot timer counter will be automatically switched off when the time slot counter overflows. The clock source for the time slot counter is sourced from the reference oscillator or $f_{sys}/4$ which is selected using the MnTSS bit in the TKMnC1 register. The reference oscillator and key oscillator will be enabled by setting the MnROEN bit and MnKOEN bits in the TKMnC1 register.

When the time slot counter in all the touch key modules or in the touch key module 0 overflows, an actual touch key interrupt will take place. The touch keys mentioned here are the keys which are enabled.

Each touch key module consists of four touch keys, KEY1 ~ KEY4 are contained in module 0, KEY5 ~ KEY8 are contained in module 1, KEY9 ~ KEY12 are contained in module 2, etc. Each touch key module has an identical structure.

Auto Scan Mode

There are two scan modes contained for the touch key function. The auto scan mode can minimize the load of the application programs and improve the touch key scan operation performance. The auto scan mode and manual scan mode are selected using the TKMOD bit in the TKC0 register. When the TKMOD bit is set low, the auto scan mode is selected to scan the keys in each module in a specific sequence determined by the MnSK3[1:0]~MnSK0[1:0] in the TKMnC2 register.

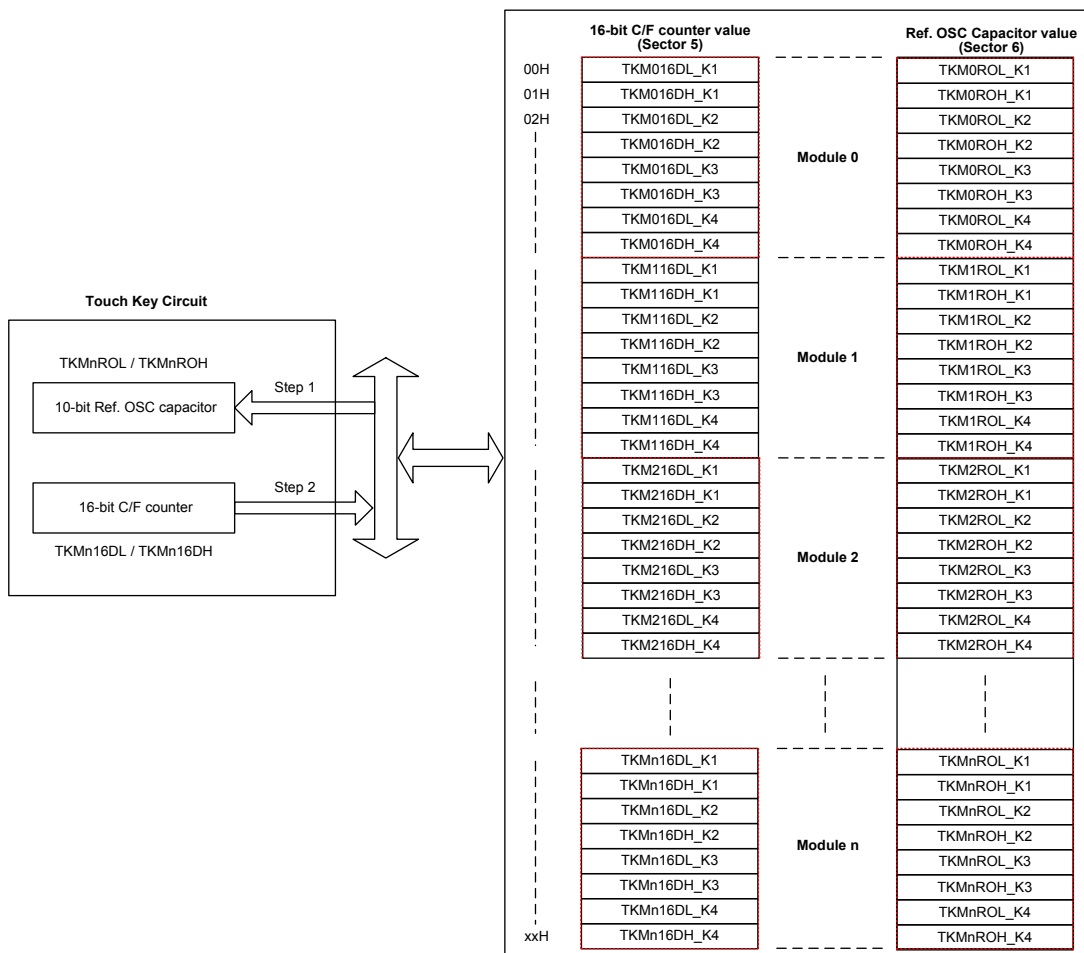


Touch Key Auto Scan Mode Timing Diagram

In the auto scan mode the key oscillator and reference oscillator will automatically be enabled when the TKST bit is set from low to high and disabled automatically when the TKBUSY bit changes from high to low. When the TKST bit is set from low to high in the auto scan mode, the first reference oscillator internal capacitor value will be read from a specific location of the dedicated touch key data memory and loaded into the corresponding TKMnROH/TKMnROL registers. Then the 16-bit C/F counter value will be written into the last location of the corresponding touch key module data memory. After this the selected key will be scanned in time slot 0. At the end of the time slot 0 key scan operation, the reference oscillator internal capacitor value for the next selected key will be read from the touch key data memory and loaded into the the next TKMnROH/TKMnROL registers. Then the 16-bit C/F counter value of the current scanned key will be written into the corresponding touch key data memory. The whole auto scan operation will sequentially be carried out in the above specific way from time slot 0 to time slot 3. After four keys are scanned, the TKRCOV bit will be set high and the TKBUSY bit will be set low. At the end of the auto scan mode, the first reference oscillator internal capacitor value will again be read from the touch key data memory and loaded into the corresponding TKMnROH/TKMnROL registers. Then the 16-bit C/F counter value will again be written into the relevant touch key data memory.

Touch Key Data Memory

Each of the devices provides two dedicated Data Memory area for the touch key auto scan mode. One area is used to store the 16-bit C/F counter values of the touch key module 0~n and located in Data Memory Sector 5. The other area is used to store the reference oscillator internal capacitor values of the touch key module 0~n and located in Data Memory Sector 6.

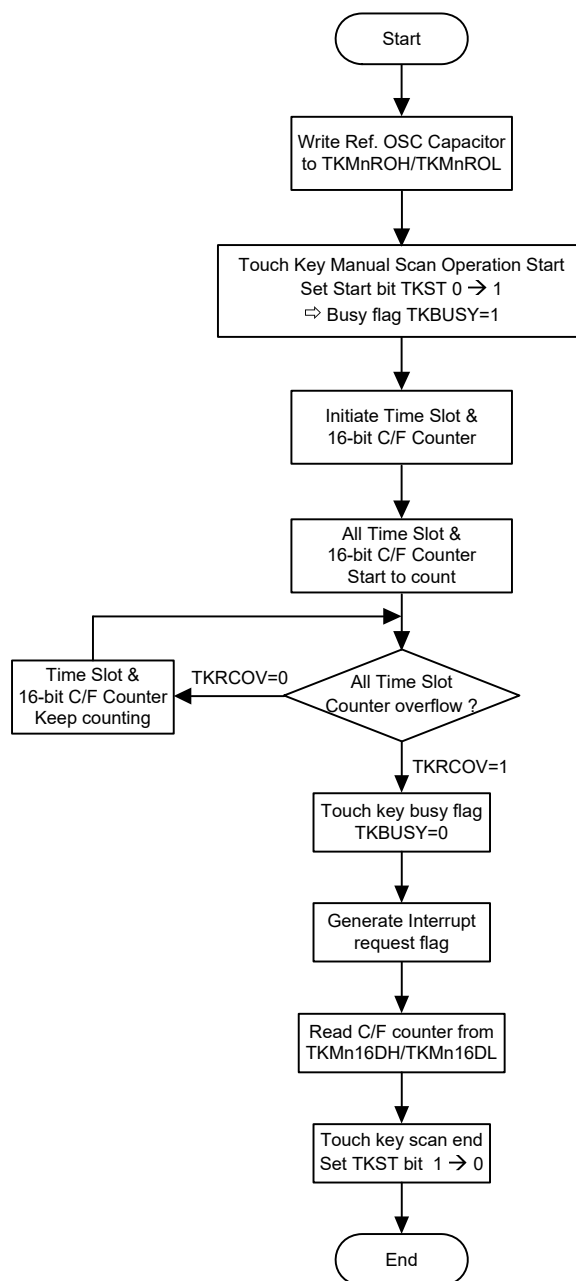


Touch Key Data Memory Map

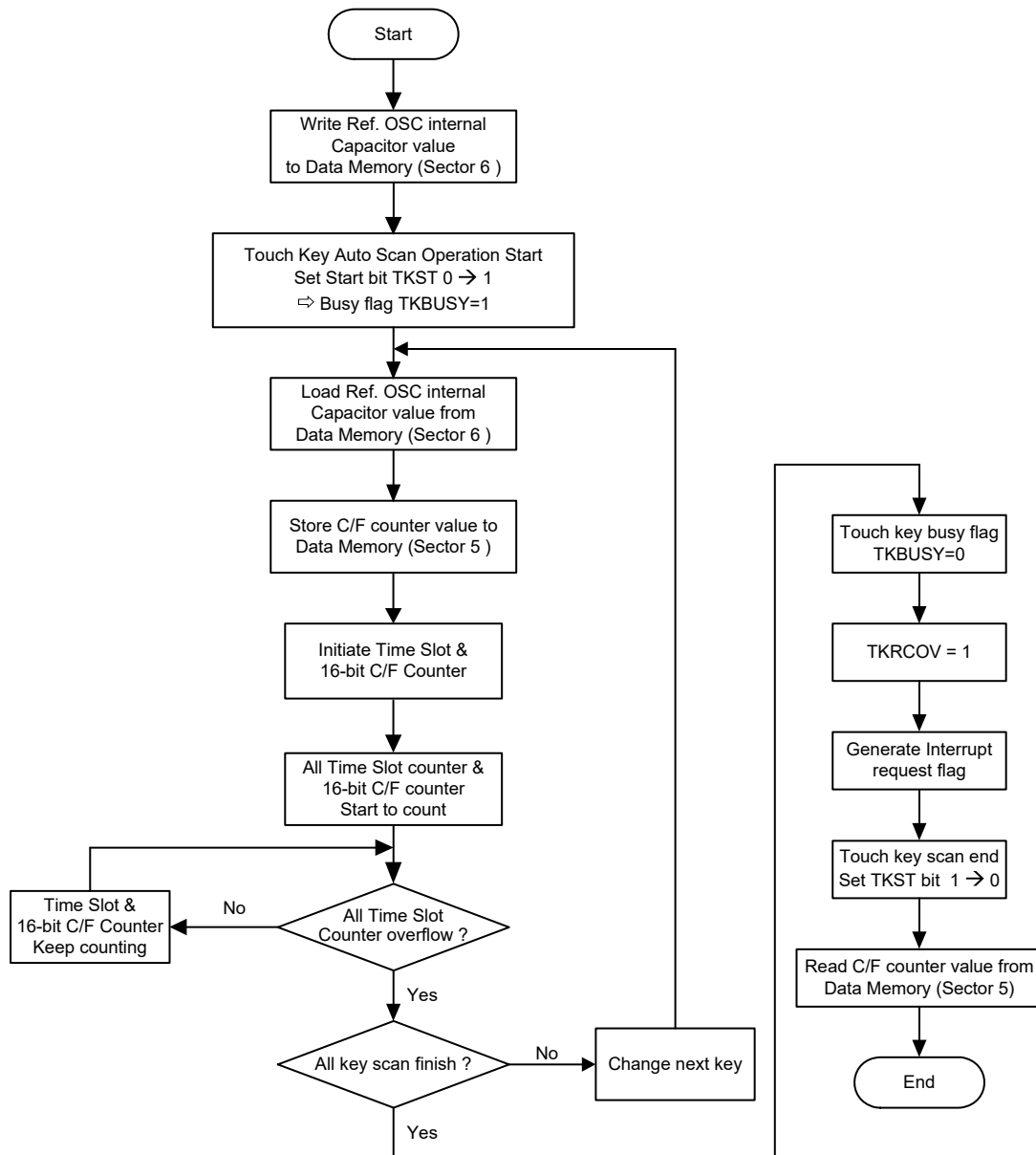
Device	Touch Key Data Memory
	Sector : Address
BS67F340	5: 00H~1FH
	6: 00H~1FH
BS67F350	5: 00H~27H
	6: 00H~27H
BS67F360	5: 00H~37H
	6: 00H~37H
BS67F370	5: 00H~47H
	6: 00H~47H

Touch Key Data Memory Summary

Touch Key Scan Operation Flow Chart



Touch Key Manual Scan Mode Flow Chart – TKMOD=1, TSCS=0



Touch Key Auto Scan Mode Flow Chart – TKMOD=0, TSCS=0

Touch Key Interrupt

The touch key only has single interrupt, when the time slot counter in all the touch key modules or in the touch key module 0 overflows, an actual touch key interrupt will take place. The touch keys mentioned here are the keys which are enabled. The 16-bit C/F counter, 16-bit counter, 5-bit time slot unit period counter and 8-bit time slot counter in all modules will be automatically cleared.

More details regarding the touch key interrupt is located in the interrupt section of the datasheet.

Progrsmming Considerations

After the relevant registers are setup, the touch key detection process is initiated the changing the TKST Bit from low to high. This will enable and synchronise all relevant oscillators. The TKRCOV flag which is the time slot counter flag will go high when the counter overflows. When this happens an interrupt signal will be generated.

When the external touch key size and layout are defined, their related capacitances will then determine the sensor oscillator frequency.

Low Voltage Detector – LVD

Each device has a Low Voltage Detector function, also known as LVD. This enabled the device to monitor the power supply voltage, V_{DD} , and provide a warning signal should it fall below a certain level. This function may be especially useful in battery applications where the supply voltage will gradually reduce as the battery ages, as it allows an early warning battery low signal to be generated. The Low Voltage Detector also has the capability of generating an interrupt signal.

LVD Register

The Low Voltage Detector function is controlled using a single register with the name LVDC. Three bits in this register, VLVD2~VLVD0, are used to select one of eight fixed voltages below which a low voltage condition will be determined. A low voltage condition is indicated when the LVDO bit is set. If the LVDO bit is low, this indicates that the V_{DD} voltage is above the preset low voltage value. The LVDEN bit is used to control the overall on/off function of the low voltage detector. Setting the bit high will enable the low voltage detector. Clearing the bit to zero will switch off the internal low voltage detector circuits. As the low voltage detector will consume a certain amount of power, it may be desirable to switch off the circuit when not in use, an important consideration in power sensitive battery powered applications.

• LVDC Register

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Name	—	—	LVDO	LVDEN	VBGEN	VLVD2	VLVD1	VLVD0
R/W	—	—	R	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W
POR	—	—	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit 7~6 Unimplemented, read as “0”

Bit 5 **LVDO**: LVD output flag
 0: No Low Voltage Detected
 1: Low Voltage Detected

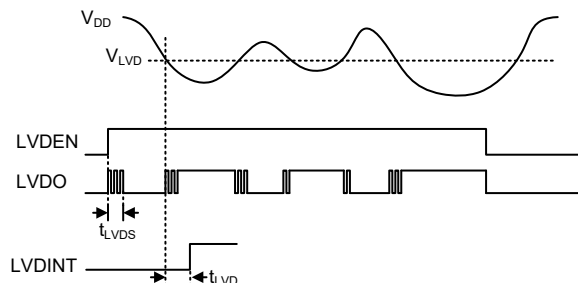
Bit 4 **LVDEN**: Low Voltage Detector Enable control
 0: Disable
 1: Enable

Bit 3 **VBGEN**: Bandgap Voltage Output Enable control
 0: Disable
 1: Enable

Bit 2~0 **VLVD2~VLVD0**: LVD Voltage selection
 000: 2.0V
 001: 2.2V
 010: 2.4V
 011: 2.7V
 100: 3.0V
 101: 3.3V
 110: 3.6V
 111: 4.0V

LVD Operation

The Low Voltage Detector function operates by comparing the power supply voltage, V_{DD} , with a pre-specified voltage level stored in the LVDC register. This has a range of between 2.0V and 4.0V. When the power supply voltage, V_{DD} , falls below this pre-determined value, the LVDO bit will be set high indicating a low power supply voltage condition. The Low Voltage Detector function is supplied by a reference voltage which will be automatically enabled. When the device is powered down the low voltage detector will remain active if the LVDEN bit is high. After enabling the Low Voltage Detector, a time delay t_{LVDS} should be allowed for the circuitry to stabilise before reading the LVDO bit. Note also that as the V_{DD} voltage may rise and fall rather slowly, at the voltage nears that of V_{LVD} , there may be multiple bit LVDO transitions.



LVD Operation

The Low Voltage Detector also has its own interrupt which is contained within one of the Multi-function interrupts, providing an alternative means of low voltage detection, in addition to polling the LVDO bit. The interrupt will only be generated after a delay of t_{LVD} after the LVDO bit has been set high by a low voltage condition. In this case, the LVF interrupt request flag will be set, causing an interrupt to be generated if V_{DD} falls below the preset LVD voltage. This will cause the device to wake-up from the SLEEP or IDLE Mode, however if the Low Voltage Detector wake up function is not required then the LVF flag should be first set high before the device enters the SLEEP or IDLE Mode.

Interrupts

Interrupts are an important part of any microcontroller system. When an external event or an internal function such as a Timer Module or an A/D converter requires microcontroller attention, their corresponding interrupt will enforce a temporary suspension of the main program allowing the microcontroller to direct attention to their respective needs. These devices contain several external interrupt and internal interrupts functions. The external interrupts are generated by the action of the external INT0 and INT1 pins, while the internal interrupts are generated by various internal functions such as the TMs, Touch Key Module, Time Base, LVD, EEPROM, SIM, UART and the A/D converter, etc.

Interrupt Registers

Overall interrupt control, which basically means the setting of request flags when certain microcontroller conditions occur and the setting of interrupt enable bits by the application program, is controlled by a series of registers, located in the Special Purpose Data Memory, as shown in the accompanying table. The number of registers depends upon the device chosen but fall into three categories. The first is the INTC0~INTC2 registers which setup the primary interrupts, the second is the MFI0~MFI3 registers which setup the Multi-function interrupts. Finally there is an INTEG register to setup the external interrupt trigger edge type.

Each register contains a number of enable bits to enable or disable individual interrupts as well as interrupt flags to indicate the presence of an interrupt request. The naming convention of these follows a specific pattern. First is listed an abbreviated interrupt type, then the (optional) number of that interrupt followed by either an “E” for enable/disable bit or “F” for request flag.

Function	Enable Bit	Request Flag	Notes
Global	EMI	—	—
INTn Pins	INTnE	INTnF	n=0 ~ 1
Touch Key	TKME	TKMF	—
UART	URE	URF	—
Multi-function	MFnE	MFnF	n=0 ~ 3
A/D Converter	ADE	ADF	—
Time Base	TBnE	TBnF	n=0 ~ 1
LVD	LVE	LVF	—
EEPROM write operation	DEE	DEF	—
SIM	SIME	SIMF	—
CTM	CTMnPE	CTMnPF	n=0 ~ 1
	CTMnAE	CTMnAF	
PTM	PTMPE	PTMPF	—
	PTMAE	PTMAF	
STM	STMPE	STMPF	—
	STMAE	STMAF	

Interrupt Register Bit Naming Conventions

Register Name	Bit							
	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
INTEG	—	—	—	—	INT1S1	INT1S0	INT0S1	INT0S0
INTC0	—	TKMF	INT1F	INT0F	TKME	INT1E	INT0E	EMI
INTC1	ADF	MF1F	MF0F	URF	ADE	MF1E	MF0E	URE
INTC2	MF3F	TB1F	TB0F	MF2F	MF3E	TB1E	TB0E	MF2E
MF10	—	—	CTM0AF	CTM0PF	—	—	CTM0AE	CTM0PE
MF11	STMAF	STMPF	CTM1AF	CTM1PF	STMAE	STMPE	CTM1AE	CTM1PE
MF12	—	SIMF	PTMAF	PTMPF	—	SIME	PTMAE	PTMPE
MF13	—	—	DEF	LVF	—	—	DEE	LVE

Interrupt Registers List

• **INTEG Register**

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Name	—	—	—	—	INT1S1	INT1S0	INT0S1	INT0S0
R/W	—	—	—	—	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W
POR	—	—	—	—	0	0	0	0

Bit 7~4 Unimplemented, read as “0”

Bit 3~2 **INT1S1~INT1S0**: Interrupt edge control for INT1 pin
 00: Disable
 01: Rising edge
 10: Falling edge
 11: Rising and falling edges

Bit 1~0 **INT0S1~INT0S0**: Interrupt edge control for INT0 pin
 00: Disable
 01: Rising edge
 10: Falling edge
 11: Rising and falling edges

• **INTC0 Register**

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Name	—	TKMF	INT1F	INT0F	TKME	INT1E	INT0E	EMI
R/W	—	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W
POR	—	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

- Bit 7 Unimplemented, read as “0”
- Bit 6 **TKMF**: Touch key interrupt request flag
0: No request
1: Interrupt request
- Bit 5 **INT1F**: INT1 interrupt request flag
0: No request
1: Interrupt request
- Bit 4 **INT0F**: INT0 interrupt request flag
0: No request
1: Interrupt request
- Bit 3 **TKME**: Touch key interrupt control
0: Disable
1: Enable
- Bit 2 **INT1E**: INT1 interrupt control
0: Disable
1: Enable
- Bit 1 **INT0E**: INT0 interrupt control
0: Disable
1: Enable
- Bit 0 **EMI**: Global interrupt control
0: Disable
1: Enable

• **INTC1 Register**

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Name	ADF	MF1F	MF0F	URF	ADE	MF1E	MF0E	URE
R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W
POR	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

- Bit 7 **ADF**: A/D Converter interrupt request flag
0: No request
1: Interrupt request
- Bit 6 **MF1F**: Multi-function 1 interrupt request flag
0: No request
1: Interrupt request
- Bit 5 **MF0F**: Multi-function 0 interrupt request flag
0: No request
1: Interrupt request
- Bit 4 **URF**: UART transfer interrupt request flag
0: No request
1: Interrupt request
- Bit 3 **ADE**: A/D Converter interrupt control
0: Disable
1: Enable
- Bit 2 **MF1E**: Multi-function 1 interrupt control
0: Disable
1: Enable

- Bit 1 **MF0E**: Multi-function 0 interrupt control
0: Disable
1: Enable
- Bit 0 **URE**: UART transfer interrupt control
0: Disable
1: Enable

• **INTC2 Register**

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Name	MF3F	TB1F	TB0F	MF2F	MF3E	TB1E	TB0E	MF2E
R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W
POR	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

- Bit 7 **MF3F**: Multi-function 3 interrupt request flag
0: No request
1: Interrupt request
- Bit 6 **TB1F**: Time Base 1 interrupt request flag
0: No request
1: Interrupt request
- Bit 5 **TB0F**: Time Base 0 interrupt request flag
0: No request
1: Interrupt request
- Bit 4 **MF2F**: Multi-function 2 interrupt request flag
0: No request
1: Interrupt request
- Bit 3 **MF3E**: Multi-function 3 interrupt control
0: Disable
1: Enable
- Bit 2 **TB1E**: Time Base 1 interrupt control
0: Disable
1: Enable
- Bit 1 **TB0E**: Time Base 0 interrupt control
0: Disable
1: Enable
- Bit 0 **MF2E**: Multi-function 2 interrupt control
0: Disable
1: Enable

• **MFIO Register**

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Name	—	—	CTM0AF	CTM0PF	—	—	CTM0AE	CTM0PE
R/W	—	—	R/W	R/W	—	—	R/W	R/W
POR	—	—	0	0	—	—	0	0

- Bit 7~6 Unimplemented, read as “0”
- Bit 5 **CTM0AF**: CTM0 Comparator A match Interrupt request flag
0: No request
1: Interrupt request
- Bit 4 **CTM0PF**: CTM0 Comparator P match Interrupt request flag
0: No request
1: Interrupt request
- Bit 3~2 Unimplemented, read as “0”

- Bit 1 **CTM0AE**: CTM0 Comparator A match Interrupt control
0: Disable
1: Enable
- Bit 0 **CTM0PE**: CTM0 Comparator P match Interrupt control
0: Disable
1: Enable

• **MF11 Register**

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Name	STMAF	STMPF	CTM1AF	CTM1PF	STMAE	STMPE	CTM1AE	CTM1PE
R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W
POR	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

- Bit 7 **STMAF**: STM Comparator A match Interrupt request flag
0: No request
1: Interrupt request
- Bit 6 **STMPF**: STM Comparator P match Interrupt request flag
0: No request
1: Interrupt request
- Bit 5 **CTM1AF**: CTM1 Comparator A match Interrupt request flag
0: No request
1: Interrupt request
- Bit 4 **CTM1PF**: CTM1 Comparator P match Interrupt request flag
0: No request
1: Interrupt request
- Bit 3 **STMAE**: STM Comparator A match Interrupt control
0: Disable
1: Enable
- Bit 2 **STMPE**: STM Comparator P match Interrupt control
0: Disable
1: Enable
- Bit 1 **CTM1AE**: CTM1 Comparator A match Interrupt control
0: Disable
1: Enable
- Bit 0 **CTM1PE**: CTM1 Comparator P match Interrupt control
0: Disable
1: Enable

• **MF12 Register**

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Name	—	SIMF	PTMAF	PTMPF	—	SIME	PTMAE	PTMPE
R/W	—	R/W	R/W	R/W	—	R/W	R/W	R/W
POR	—	0	0	0	—	0	0	0

- Bit 7 Unimplemented, read as “0”
- Bit 6 **SIMF**: SIM Interrupt request flag
0: No request
1: Interrupt request
- Bit 5 **PTMAF**: PTM Comparator A match Interrupt request flag
0: No request
1: Interrupt request
- Bit 4 **PTMPF**: PTM Comparator P match Interrupt request flag
0: No request
1: Interrupt request

- Bit 3 Unimplemented, read as “0”
- Bit 2 **SIME**: SIM Interrupt control
0: Disable
1: Enable
- Bit 1 **PTMAE**: PTM Comparator A match Interrupt control
0: Disable
1: Enable
- Bit 0 **PTMPE**: PTM Comparator P match Interrupt control
0: Disable
1: Enable

• **MF13 Register**

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Name	—	—	DEF	LVF	—	—	DEE	LVE
R/W	—	—	R/W	R/W	—	—	R/W	R/W
POR	—	—	0	0	—	—	0	0

- Bit 7~6 Unimplemented, read as “0”
- Bit 7 **DEF**: Data EEPROM Interrupt request flag
0: No request
1: Interrupt request
- Bit 4 **LVF**: LVD Interrupt request flag
0: No request
1: Interrupt request
- Bit 3~2 Unimplemented, read as “0”
- Bit 1 **DEE**: Data EEPROM Interrupt control
0: Disable
1: Enable
- Bit 0 **LVE**: LVD Interrupt control
0: Disable
1: Enable

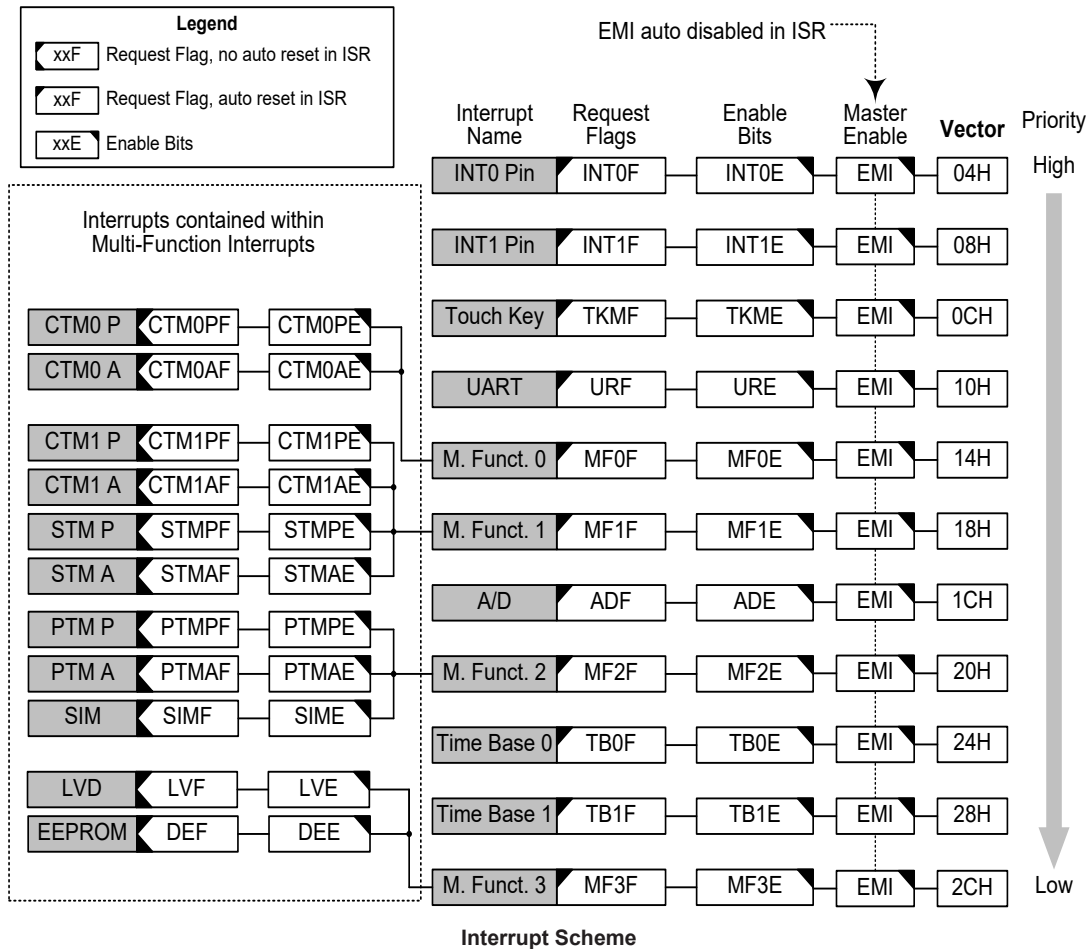
Interrupt Operation

When the conditions for an interrupt event occur, such as a TM Comparator P or Comparator A or A/D conversion completion, etc, the relevant interrupt request flag will be set. Whether the request flag actually generates a program jump to the relevant interrupt vector is determined by the condition of the interrupt enable bit. If the enable bit is set high then the program will jump to its relevant vector; if the enable bit is zero then although the interrupt request flag is set an actual interrupt will not be generated and the program will not jump to the relevant interrupt vector. The global interrupt enable bit, if cleared to zero, will disable all interrupts.

When an interrupt is generated, the Program Counter, which stores the address of the next instruction to be executed, will be transferred onto the stack. The Program Counter will then be loaded with a new address which will be the value of the corresponding interrupt vector. The microcontroller will then fetch its next instruction from this interrupt vector. The instruction at this vector will usually be a JMP which will jump to another section of program which is known as the interrupt service routine. Here is located the code to control the appropriate interrupt. The interrupt service routine must be terminated with a RETI, which retrieves the original Program Counter address from the stack and allows the microcontroller to continue with normal execution at the point where the interrupt occurred.

The various interrupt enable bits, together with their associated request flags, are shown in the accompanying diagrams with their order of priority. Some interrupt sources have their own individual vector while others share the same multi-function interrupt vector. Once an interrupt subroutine is serviced, all other interrupts will be blocked, as the global interrupt enable bit, EMI bit will be cleared automatically. This will prevent any further interrupt nesting from occurring. However, if other interrupt requests occur during this interval, although the interrupt will not be immediately serviced, the request flag will still be recorded.

If an interrupt requires immediate servicing while the program is already in another interrupt service routine, the EMI bit should be set after entering the routine to allow interrupt nesting. If the stack is full, the interrupt request will not be acknowledged, even if the related interrupt is enabled, until the Stack Pointer is decremented. If immediate service is desired, the stack must be prevented from becoming full. In case of simultaneous requests, the accompanying diagram shows the priority that is applied. All of the interrupt request flags when set will wake-up the device if it is in SLEEP or IDLE Mode, however to prevent a wake-up from occurring the corresponding flag should be set before the device is in SLEEP or IDLE Mode.



External Interrupt

The external interrupts are controlled by signal transitions on the pins INT0~INT1. An external interrupt request will take place when the external interrupt request flags, INT0F~INT1F, are set, which will occur when a transition, whose type is chosen by the edge select bits, appears on the external interrupt pins. To allow the program to branch to its respective interrupt vector address, the global interrupt enable bit, EMI, and respective external interrupt enable bit, INT0E~INT1E, must first be set. Additionally the correct interrupt edge type must be selected using the INTEG register to enable the external interrupt function and to choose the trigger edge type. As the external interrupt pins are pin-shared with I/O pins, they can only be configured as external interrupt pins if their external interrupt enable bit in the corresponding interrupt register has been set and the external interrupt pin is selected by the corresponding pin-shared function selection bits. The pin must also be setup as an input by setting the corresponding bit in the port control register. When the interrupt is enabled, the stack is not full and the correct transition type appears on the external interrupt pin, a subroutine call to the external interrupt vector, will take place. When the interrupt is serviced, the external interrupt request flags, INT0F~INT1F, will be automatically reset and the EMI bit will be automatically cleared to disable other interrupts. Note that any pull-high resistor selections on the external interrupt pins will remain valid even if the pin is used as an external interrupt input.

The INTEG register is used to select the type of active edge that will trigger the external interrupt. A choice of either rising or falling or both edge types can be chosen to trigger an external interrupt. Note that the INTEG register can also be used to disable the external interrupt function.

Touch Key Interrupt

For a Touch Key interrupt to occur, the global interrupt enable bit, EMI, and the Touch Key interrupt enable TKME must be first set. An actual Touch Key interrupt will take place when the Touch Key request flag, TKMF, is set, a situation that will occur when the time slot counter overflows. When the interrupt is enabled, the stack is not full and the Touch Key time slot counter overflow occurs, a subroutine call to the relevant touch key interrupt vector, will take place. When the interrupt is serviced, the Touch Key interrupt request flag, TKMF, will be automatically reset and the EMI Bit will be automatically cleared to disable other interrupts.

UART Transfer Interrupt

The UART Transfer Interrupt is controlled by several UART transfer conditions. When one of these conditions occurs, an interrupt pulse will be generated to get the attention of the microcontroller. These conditions are a transmitter data register empty, transmitter idle, receiver data available, receiver overrun, address detect and an RX pin wake-up. To allow the program to branch to its respective interrupt vector address, the global interrupt enable bit, EMI, and UART Interrupt enable bit, URE, must first be set. When the interrupt is enabled, the stack is not full and any of the conditions described above occurs, a subroutine call to the UART Interrupt vector, will take place. When the interrupt is serviced, the UART Interrupt flag, URF, will be automatically cleared. The EMI bit will also be automatically cleared to disable other interrupts.

A/D Converter Interrupt

The A/D Converter Interrupt is controlled by the termination of an A/D conversion process. An A/D Converter Interrupt request will take place when the A/D Converter Interrupt request flag, ADF, is set, which occurs when the A/D conversion process finishes. To allow the program to branch to its respective interrupt vector address, the global interrupt enable bit, EMI, and A/D Interrupt enable bit, ADE, must first be set. When the interrupt is enabled, the stack is not full and the A/D conversion process has ended, a subroutine call to the A/D Converter Interrupt vector, will take place. When the interrupt is serviced, the A/D Converter Interrupt flag, ADF, will be automatically cleared. The EMI bit will also be automatically cleared to disable other interrupts.

Multi-function Interrupt

Within the devices there are up to four Multi-function interrupts. Unlike the other independent interrupts, these interrupts have no independent source, but rather are formed from other existing interrupt sources, namely the TM interrupts, LVD interrupt, EEPROM write operation interrupt and SIM interface interrupts.

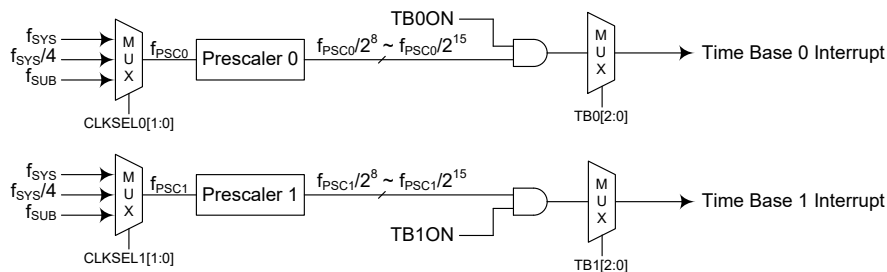
A Multi-function interrupt request will take place when any of the Multi-function interrupt request flags MFnF are set. The Multi-function interrupt flags will be set when any of their included functions generate an interrupt request flag. To allow the program to branch to its respective interrupt vector address, when the Multi-function interrupt is enabled and the stack is not full, and either one of the interrupts contained within each of Multi-function interrupt occurs, a subroutine call to one of the Multi-function interrupt vectors will take place. When the interrupt is serviced, the related Multi-Function request flag will be automatically reset and the EMI bit will be automatically cleared to disable other interrupts.

However, it must be noted that, although the Multi-function Interrupt request flags will be automatically reset when the interrupt is serviced, the request flags from the original source of the Multi-function interrupts will not be automatically reset and must be manually reset by the application program.

Time Base Interrupt

The function of the Time Base Interrupt is to provide regular time signal in the form of an internal interrupt. It is controlled by the overflow signal from its internal timer. When this happens its interrupt request flag, TBnF, will be set. To allow the program to branch to its respective interrupt vector addresses, the global interrupt enable bit, EMI and Time Base enable bit, TBnE, must first be set. When the interrupt is enabled, the stack is not full and the Time Base overflows, a subroutine call to its respective vector location will take place. When the interrupt is serviced, the interrupt request flag, TBnF, will be automatically reset and the EMI bit will be cleared to disable other interrupts.

The purpose of the Time Base Interrupt is to provide an interrupt signal at fixed time periods. Its clock source, f_{PSC0} or f_{PSC1} , originates from the internal clock source f_{SYS} , $f_{SYS}/4$ or f_{SUB} and then passes through a divider, the division ratio of which is selected by programming the appropriate bits in the TB0C and TB1C registers to obtain longer interrupt periods whose value ranges. The clock source which in turn controls the Time Base interrupt period is selected using the CLKSEL0[1:0] and CLKSEL1[1:0] bits in the PSCR0 and PSCR1 register respectively.



Time Base Interrupts

• **PSCR0 Register**

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Name	—	—	—	—	—	—	CLKSEL01	CLKSEL00
R/W	—	—	—	—	—	—	R/W	R/W
POR	—	—	—	—	—	—	0	0

Bit 7~2 Unimplemented, read as “0”

Bit 1~0 **CLKSEL01~CLKSEL00**: Prescaler 0 clock source selection

00: f_{SYS}

01: $f_{SYS}/4$

1x: f_{SUB}

• **PSCR1 Register**

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Name	—	—	—	—	—	—	CLKSEL11	CLKSEL10
R/W	—	—	—	—	—	—	R/W	R/W
POR	—	—	—	—	—	—	0	0

Bit 7~2 Unimplemented, read as “0”

Bit 1~0 **CLKSEL11~CLKSEL10**: Prescaler 1 clock source selection

00: f_{SYS}

01: $f_{SYS}/4$

1x: f_{SUB}

• **TB0C Register**

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Name	TB0ON	—	—	—	—	TB02	TB01	TB00
R/W	R/W	—	—	—	—	R/W	R/W	R/W
POR	0	—	—	—	—	0	0	0

Bit 7 **TB0ON**: Time Base 0 Enable Control

0: Disable

1: Enable

Bit 6~3 Unimplemented, read as “0”

Bit 2~0 **TB02~TB00**: Time Base 0 time-out period selection

000: $2^8/f_{PSC0}$

001: $2^9/f_{PSC0}$

010: $2^{10}/f_{PSC0}$

011: $2^{11}/f_{PSC0}$

100: $2^{12}/f_{PSC0}$

101: $2^{13}/f_{PSC0}$

110: $2^{14}/f_{PSC0}$

111: $2^{15}/f_{PSC0}$

• **TB1C Register**

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Name	TB1ON	—	—	—	—	TB12	TB11	TB10
R/W	R/W	—	—	—	—	R/W	R/W	R/W
POR	0	—	—	—	—	0	0	0

Bit 7 **TB1ON**: Time Base 1 Enable Control

0: Disable

1: Enable

Bit 6~3 Unimplemented, read as “0”

Bit 2~0	TB12~TB10: Time Base 1 time-out period selection
	000: $2^8/f_{PSC1}$
	001: $2^9/f_{PSC1}$
	010: $2^{10}/f_{PSC1}$
	011: $2^{11}/f_{PSC1}$
	100: $2^{12}/f_{PSC1}$
	101: $2^{13}/f_{PSC1}$
	110: $2^{14}/f_{PSC1}$
	111: $2^{15}/f_{PSC1}$

Serial Interface Module Interrupt

The Serial Interface Module Interrupt, also known as the SIM interrupt, is contained within the Multi-function Interrupt. A SIM Interrupt request will take place when the SIM Interrupt request flag, SIMF, is set, which occurs when a byte of data has been received or transmitted by the SIM interface, an I²C slave address match or I²C bus time-out occurrence. To allow the program to branch to its respective interrupt vector address, the global interrupt enable bit, EMI, the Serial Interface Interrupt enable bit, SIME, and Multi-function interrupt enable bit must first be set. When the interrupt is enabled, the stack is not full and any of the above described situations occurs, a subroutine call to the respective Multi-function Interrupt vector, will take place. When the Serial Interface Interrupt is serviced, the EMI bit will be automatically cleared to disable other interrupts, however only the Multi-function interrupt request flag will be also automatically cleared. As the SIMF flag will not be automatically cleared, it has to be cleared by the application program.

LVD Interrupt

The Low Voltage Detector Interrupt is contained within the Multi-function Interrupt. An LVD Interrupt request will take place when the LVD Interrupt request flag, LVF, is set, which occurs when the Low Voltage Detector function detects a low power supply voltage. To allow the program to branch to its respective interrupt vector address, the global interrupt enable bit, EMI, Low Voltage Interrupt enable bit, LVE, and associated Multi-function interrupt enable bit, must first be set. When the interrupt is enabled, the stack is not full and a low voltage condition occurs, a subroutine call to the Multi-function Interrupt vector, will take place. When the Low Voltage Interrupt is serviced, the EMI bit will be automatically cleared to disable other interrupts. However, only the Multi-function interrupt request flag will be also automatically cleared. As the LVF flag will not be automatically cleared, it has to be cleared by the application program.

EEPROM Interrupt

The EEPROM Write Interrupt is contained within the Multi-function Interrupt. An EEPROM Write Interrupt request will take place when the EEPROM Write Interrupt request flag, DEF, is set, which occurs when an EEPROM Write cycle ends. To allow the program to branch to its respective interrupt vector address, the global interrupt enable bit, EMI, EEPROM Write Interrupt enable bit, DEE, and associated Multi-function interrupt enable bit must first be set. When the interrupt is enabled, the stack is not full and an EEPROM Write cycle ends, a subroutine call to the respective Multi-function Interrupt vector will take place. When the EEPROM Write Interrupt is serviced, the EMI bit will be automatically cleared to disable other interrupts. However, only the Multi-function interrupt request flag will be automatically cleared. As the DEF flag will not be automatically cleared, it has to be cleared by the application program.

TM Interrupt

The Compact, Standard and Periodic TMs have two interrupts, one comes from the comparator A match situation and the other comes from the comparator P match situation. All of the TM interrupts are contained within the Multi-function Interrupts. For all of the TM types there are two interrupt request flags and two enable control bits. A TM interrupt request will take place when any of the TM request flags are set, a situation which occurs when a TM comparator P or A match situation happens.

To allow the program to branch to its respective interrupt vector address, the global interrupt enable bit, EMI, respective TM Interrupt enable bit, and relevant Multi-function Interrupt enable bit, MFnE, must first be set. When the interrupt is enabled, the stack is not full and a TM comparator match situation occurs, a subroutine call to the relevant Multi-function Interrupt vector locations, will take place. When the TM interrupt is serviced, the EMI bit will be automatically cleared to disable other interrupts. However, only the related MFnF flag will be automatically cleared. As the TM interrupt request flags will not be automatically cleared, they have to be cleared by the application program.

Interrupt Wake-up Function

Each of the interrupt functions has the capability of waking up the microcontroller when in the SLEEP or IDLE Mode. A wake-up is generated when an interrupt request flag changes from low to high and is independent of whether the interrupt is enabled or not. Therefore, even though these devices are in the SLEEP or IDLE Mode and its system oscillator stopped, situations such as external edge transitions on the external interrupt pins, a low power supply voltage or comparator input change may cause their respective interrupt flag to be set high and consequently generate an interrupt. Care must therefore be taken if spurious wake-up situations are to be avoided. If an interrupt wake-up function is to be disabled then the corresponding interrupt request flag should be set high before the device enters the SLEEP or IDLE Mode. The interrupt enable bits have no effect on the interrupt wake-up function.

Programming Considerations

By disabling the relevant interrupt enable bits, a requested interrupt can be prevented from being serviced, however, once an interrupt request flag is set, it will remain in this condition in the interrupt register until the corresponding interrupt is serviced or until the request flag is cleared by the application program.

Where a certain interrupt is contained within a Multi-function interrupt, then when the interrupt service routine is executed, as only the Multi-function interrupt request flags, MFnF, will be automatically cleared, the individual request flag for the function needs to be cleared by the application program.

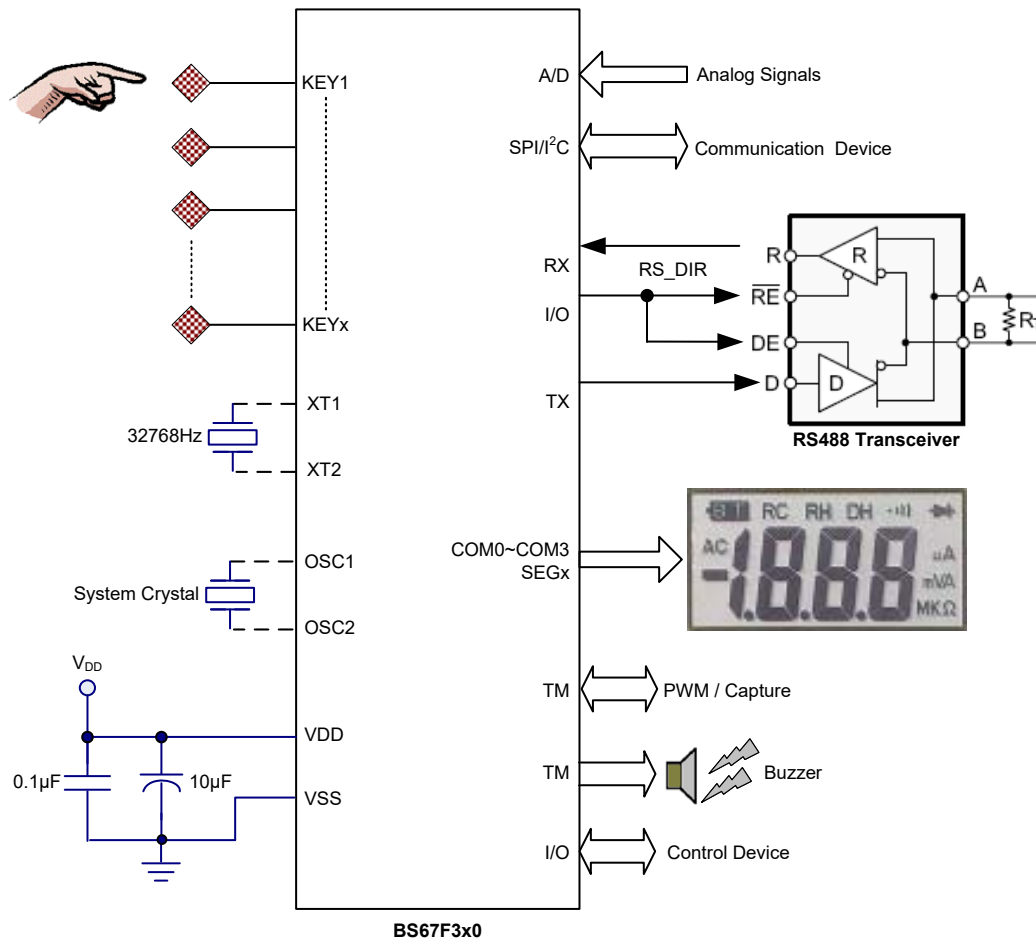
It is recommended that programs do not use the “CALL” instruction within the interrupt service subroutine. Interrupts often occur in an unpredictable manner or need to be serviced immediately. If only one stack is left and the interrupt is not well controlled, the original control sequence will be damaged once a CALL subroutine is executed in the interrupt subroutine.

Every interrupt has the capability of waking up the microcontroller when it is in the SLEEP or IDLE Mode, the wake up being generated when the interrupt request flag changes from low to high. If it is required to prevent a certain interrupt from waking up the microcontroller then its respective request flag should be first set high before enter SLEEP or IDLE Mode.

As only the Program Counter is pushed onto the stack, then when the interrupt is serviced, if the contents of the accumulator, status register or other registers are altered by the interrupt service program, their contents should be saved to the memory at the beginning of the interrupt service routine.

To return from an interrupt subroutine, either a RET or RETI instruction may be executed. The RETI instruction in addition to executing a return to the main program also automatically sets the EMI bit high to allow further interrupts. The RET instruction however only executes a return to the main program leaving the EMI bit in its present zero state and therefore disabling the execution of further interrupts.

Application Circuits



Instruction Set

Introduction

Central to the successful operation of any microcontroller is its instruction set, which is a set of program instruction codes that directs the microcontroller to perform certain operations. In the case of Holtek microcontroller, a comprehensive and flexible set of over 60 instructions is provided to enable programmers to implement their application with the minimum of programming overheads.

For easier understanding of the various instruction codes, they have been subdivided into several functional groupings.

Instruction Timing

Most instructions are implemented within one instruction cycle. The exceptions to this are branch, call, or table read instructions where two instruction cycles are required. One instruction cycle is equal to 4 system clock cycles, therefore in the case of an 8MHz system oscillator, most instructions would be implemented within 0.5 μ s and branch or call instructions would be implemented within 1 μ s. Although instructions which require one more cycle to implement are generally limited to the JMP, CALL, RET, RETI and table read instructions, it is important to realize that any other instructions which involve manipulation of the Program Counter Low register or PCL will also take one more cycle to implement. As instructions which change the contents of the PCL will imply a direct jump to that new address, one more cycle will be required. Examples of such instructions would be “CLR PCL” or “MOV PCL, A”. For the case of skip instructions, it must be noted that if the result of the comparison involves a skip operation then this will also take one more cycle, if no skip is involved then only one cycle is required.

Moving and Transferring Data

The transfer of data within the microcontroller program is one of the most frequently used operations. Making use of several kinds of MOV instructions, data can be transferred from registers to the Accumulator and vice-versa as well as being able to move specific immediate data directly into the Accumulator. One of the most important data transfer applications is to receive data from the input ports and transfer data to the output ports.

Arithmetic Operations

The ability to perform certain arithmetic operations and data manipulation is a necessary feature of most microcontroller applications. Within the Holtek microcontroller instruction set are a range of add and subtract instruction mnemonics to enable the necessary arithmetic to be carried out. Care must be taken to ensure correct handling of carry and borrow data when results exceed 255 for addition and less than 0 for subtraction. The increment and decrement instructions such as INC, INCA, DEC and DECA provide a simple means of increasing or decreasing by a value of one of the values in the destination specified.

Logical and Rotate Operation

The standard logical operations such as AND, OR, XOR and CPL all have their own instruction within the Holtek microcontroller instruction set. As with the case of most instructions involving data manipulation, data must pass through the Accumulator which may involve additional programming steps. In all logical data operations, the zero flag may be set if the result of the operation is zero. Another form of logical data manipulation comes from the rotate instructions such as RR, RL, RRC and RLC which provide a simple means of rotating one bit right or left. Different rotate instructions exist depending on program requirements. Rotate instructions are useful for serial port programming applications where data can be rotated from an internal register into the Carry bit from where it can be examined and the necessary serial bit set high or low. Another application which rotate data operations are used is to implement multiplication and division calculations.

Branches and Control Transfer

Program branching takes the form of either jumps to specified locations using the JMP instruction or to a subroutine using the CALL instruction. They differ in the sense that in the case of a subroutine call, the program must return to the instruction immediately when the subroutine has been carried out. This is done by placing a return instruction “RET” in the subroutine which will cause the program to jump back to the address right after the CALL instruction. In the case of a JMP instruction, the program simply jumps to the desired location. There is no requirement to jump back to the original jumping off point as in the case of the CALL instruction. One special and extremely useful set of branch instructions are the conditional branches. Here a decision is first made regarding the condition of a certain data memory or individual bits. Depending upon the conditions, the program will continue with the next instruction or skip over it and jump to the following instruction. These instructions are the key to decision making and branching within the program perhaps determined by the condition of certain input switches or by the condition of internal data bits.

Bit Operations

The ability to provide single bit operations on Data Memory is an extremely flexible feature of all Holtek microcontrollers. This feature is especially useful for output port bit programming where individual bits or port pins can be directly set high or low using either the “SET [m].i” or “CLR [m].i” instructions respectively. The feature removes the need for programmers to first read the 8-bit output port, manipulate the input data to ensure that other bits are not changed and then output the port with the correct new data. This read-modify-write process is taken care of automatically when these bit operation instructions are used.

Table Read Operations

Data storage is normally implemented by using registers. However, when working with large amounts of fixed data, the volume involved often makes it inconvenient to store the fixed data in the Data Memory. To overcome this problem, Holtek microcontrollers allow an area of Program Memory to be setup as a table where data can be directly stored. A set of easy to use instructions provides the means by which this fixed data can be referenced and retrieved from the Program Memory.

Other Operations

In addition to the above functional instructions, a range of other instructions also exist such as the “HALT” instruction for Power-down operations and instructions to control the operation of the Watchdog Timer for reliable program operations under extreme electric or electromagnetic environments. For their relevant operations, refer to the functional related sections.

Instruction Set Summary

The instructions related to the data memory access in the following table can be used when the desired data memory is located in Data Memory sector 0.

Table Conventions

x: Bits immediate data
m: Data Memory address
A: Accumulator
i: 0~7 number of bits
addr: Program memory address

Mnemonic	Description	Cycles	Flag Affected
Arithmetic			
ADD A,[m]	Add Data Memory to ACC	1	Z, C, AC, OV, SC
ADDM A,[m]	Add ACC to Data Memory	1 ^{Note}	Z, C, AC, OV, SC
ADD A,x	Add immediate data to ACC	1	Z, C, AC, OV, SC
ADC A,[m]	Add Data Memory to ACC with Carry	1	Z, C, AC, OV, SC
ADCM A,[m]	Add ACC to Data memory with Carry	1 ^{Note}	Z, C, AC, OV, SC
SUB A,x	Subtract immediate data from the ACC	1	Z, C, AC, OV, SC, CZ
SUB A,[m]	Subtract Data Memory from ACC	1	Z, C, AC, OV, SC, CZ
SUBM A,[m]	Subtract Data Memory from ACC with result in Data Memory	1 ^{Note}	Z, C, AC, OV, SC, CZ
SBC A,x	Subtract immediate data from ACC with Carry	1	Z, C, AC, OV, SC, CZ
SBC A,[m]	Subtract Data Memory from ACC with Carry	1	Z, C, AC, OV, SC, CZ
SBCM A,[m]	Subtract Data Memory from ACC with Carry, result in Data Memory	1 ^{Note}	Z, C, AC, OV, SC, CZ
DAA [m]	Decimal adjust ACC for Addition with result in Data Memory	1 ^{Note}	C
Logic Operation			
AND A,[m]	Logical AND Data Memory to ACC	1	Z
OR A,[m]	Logical OR Data Memory to ACC	1	Z
XOR A,[m]	Logical XOR Data Memory to ACC	1	Z
ANDM A,[m]	Logical AND ACC to Data Memory	1 ^{Note}	Z
ORM A,[m]	Logical OR ACC to Data Memory	1 ^{Note}	Z
XORM A,[m]	Logical XOR ACC to Data Memory	1 ^{Note}	Z
AND A,x	Logical AND immediate Data to ACC	1	Z
OR A,x	Logical OR immediate Data to ACC	1	Z
XOR A,x	Logical XOR immediate Data to ACC	1	Z
CPL [m]	Complement Data Memory	1 ^{Note}	Z
CPLA [m]	Complement Data Memory with result in ACC	1	Z
Increment & Decrement			
INCA [m]	Increment Data Memory with result in ACC	1	Z
INC [m]	Increment Data Memory	1 ^{Note}	Z
DECA [m]	Decrement Data Memory with result in ACC	1	Z
DEC [m]	Decrement Data Memory	1 ^{Note}	Z
Rotate			
RRA [m]	Rotate Data Memory right with result in ACC	1	None
RR [m]	Rotate Data Memory right	1 ^{Note}	None
RRCA [m]	Rotate Data Memory right through Carry with result in ACC	1	C
RRC [m]	Rotate Data Memory right through Carry	1 ^{Note}	C
RLA [m]	Rotate Data Memory left with result in ACC	1	None
RL [m]	Rotate Data Memory left	1 ^{Note}	None
RLCA [m]	Rotate Data Memory left through Carry with result in ACC	1	C
RLC [m]	Rotate Data Memory left through Carry	1 ^{Note}	C

Mnemonic	Description	Cycles	Flag Affected
Data Move			
MOV A,[m]	Move Data Memory to ACC	1	None
MOV [m],A	Move ACC to Data Memory	1 ^{Note}	None
MOV A,x	Move immediate data to ACC	1	None
Bit Operation			
CLR [m].i	Clear bit of Data Memory	1 ^{Note}	None
SET [m].i	Set bit of Data Memory	1 ^{Note}	None
Branch Operation			
JMP addr	Jump unconditionally	2	None
SZ [m]	Skip if Data Memory is zero	1 ^{Note}	None
SZA [m]	Skip if Data Memory is zero with data movement to ACC	1 ^{Note}	None
SZ [m].i	Skip if bit i of Data Memory is zero	1 ^{Note}	None
SNZ [m]	Skip if Data Memory is not zero	1 ^{Note}	None
SNZ [m].i	Skip if bit i of Data Memory is not zero	1 ^{Note}	None
SIZ [m]	Skip if increment Data Memory is zero	1 ^{Note}	None
SDZ [m]	Skip if decrement Data Memory is zero	1 ^{Note}	None
SIZA [m]	Skip if increment Data Memory is zero with result in ACC	1 ^{Note}	None
SDZA [m]	Skip if decrement Data Memory is zero with result in ACC	1 ^{Note}	None
CALL addr	Subroutine call	2	None
RET	Return from subroutine	2	None
RET A,x	Return from subroutine and load immediate data to ACC	2	None
RETI	Return from interrupt	2	None
Table Read Operation			
TABRD [m]	Read table (specific page) to TBLH and Data Memory	2 ^{Note}	None
TABRDL [m]	Read table (last page) to TBLH and Data Memory	2 ^{Note}	None
ITABRD [m]	Increment table pointer TBLP first and Read table (specific page) to TBLH and Data Memory	2 ^{Note}	None
ITABRDL [m]	Increment table pointer TBLP first and Read table (last page) to TBLH and Data Memory	2 ^{Note}	None
Miscellaneous			
NOP	No operation	1	None
CLR [m]	Clear Data Memory	1 ^{Note}	None
SET [m]	Set Data Memory	1 ^{Note}	None
CLR WDT	Clear Watchdog Timer	1	TO, PDF
SWAP [m]	Swap nibbles of Data Memory	1 ^{Note}	None
SWAPA [m]	Swap nibbles of Data Memory with result in ACC	1	None
HALT	Enter power down mode	1	TO, PDF

Note: 1. For skip instructions, if the result of the comparison involves a skip then two cycles are required, if no skip takes place only one cycle is required.

2. Any instruction which changes the contents of the PCL will also require 2 cycles for execution.

Extended Instruction Set

The extended instructions are used to support the full range address access for the data memory. When the accessed data memory is located in any data memory sector except sector 0, the extended instruction can be used to directly access the data memory instead of using the indirect addressing access. This can not only reduce the use of Flash memory space but also improve the CPU execution efficiency.

Mnemonic	Description	Cycles	Flag Affected
Arithmetic			
LADD A,[m]	Add Data Memory to ACC	2	Z, C, AC, OV, SC
LADDM A,[m]	Add ACC to Data Memory	2 ^{Note}	Z, C, AC, OV, SC
LADC A,[m]	Add Data Memory to ACC with Carry	2	Z, C, AC, OV, SC
LADCM A,[m]	Add ACC to Data memory with Carry	2 ^{Note}	Z, C, AC, OV, SC
LSUB A,[m]	Subtract Data Memory from ACC	2	Z, C, AC, OV, SC, CZ
LSUBM A,[m]	Subtract Data Memory from ACC with result in Data Memory	2 ^{Note}	Z, C, AC, OV, SC, CZ
LSBC A,[m]	Subtract Data Memory from ACC with Carry	2	Z, C, AC, OV, SC, CZ
LSBCM A,[m]	Subtract Data Memory from ACC with Carry, result in Data Memory	2 ^{Note}	Z, C, AC, OV, SC, CZ
LDAA [m]	Decimal adjust ACC for Addition with result in Data Memory	2 ^{Note}	C
Logic Operation			
LAND A,[m]	Logical AND Data Memory to ACC	2	Z
LOR A,[m]	Logical OR Data Memory to ACC	2	Z
LXOR A,[m]	Logical XOR Data Memory to ACC	2	Z
LANDM A,[m]	Logical AND ACC to Data Memory	2 ^{Note}	Z
LORM A,[m]	Logical OR ACC to Data Memory	2 ^{Note}	Z
LXORM A,[m]	Logical XOR ACC to Data Memory	2 ^{Note}	Z
LCPL [m]	Complement Data Memory	2 ^{Note}	Z
LCPLA [m]	Complement Data Memory with result in ACC	2	Z
Increment & Decrement			
LINCA [m]	Increment Data Memory with result in ACC	2	Z
LINC [m]	Increment Data Memory	2 ^{Note}	Z
LDECA [m]	Decrement Data Memory with result in ACC	2	Z
LDEC [m]	Decrement Data Memory	2 ^{Note}	Z
Rotate			
LRRA [m]	Rotate Data Memory right with result in ACC	2	None
LRR [m]	Rotate Data Memory right	2 ^{Note}	None
LRRCA [m]	Rotate Data Memory right through Carry with result in ACC	2	C
LRRC [m]	Rotate Data Memory right through Carry	2 ^{Note}	C
LRLA [m]	Rotate Data Memory left with result in ACC	2	None
LRL [m]	Rotate Data Memory left	2 ^{Note}	None
LRLCA [m]	Rotate Data Memory left through Carry with result in ACC	2	C
LRLC [m]	Rotate Data Memory left through Carry	2 ^{Note}	C
Data Move			
LMOV A,[m]	Move Data Memory to ACC	2	None
LMOV [m],A	Move ACC to Data Memory	2 ^{Note}	None
Bit Operation			
LCLR [m].i	Clear bit of Data Memory	2 ^{Note}	None
LSET [m].i	Set bit of Data Memory	2 ^{Note}	None

Mnemonic	Description	Cycles	Flag Affected
Branch			
LSZ [m]	Skip if Data Memory is zero	2 ^{Note}	None
LSZA [m]	Skip if Data Memory is zero with data movement to ACC	2 ^{Note}	None
LSNZ [m]	Skip if Data Memory is not zero	2 ^{Note}	None
LSZ [m].i	Skip if bit i of Data Memory is zero	2 ^{Note}	None
LSNZ [m].i	Skip if bit i of Data Memory is not zero	2 ^{Note}	None
LSIZ [m]	Skip if increment Data Memory is zero	2 ^{Note}	None
LSDZ [m]	Skip if decrement Data Memory is zero	2 ^{Note}	None
LSIZA [m]	Skip if increment Data Memory is zero with result in ACC	2 ^{Note}	None
LSDZA [m]	Skip if decrement Data Memory is zero with result in ACC	2 ^{Note}	None
Table Read			
LTABRD [m]	Read table (specific page) to TBLH and Data Memory	3 ^{Note}	None
LTABRDL [m]	Read table (last page) to TBLH and Data Memory	3 ^{Note}	None
LITABRD [m]	Increment table pointer TBLP first and Read table (specific page) to TBLH and Data Memory	3 ^{Note}	None
LITABRDL [m]	Increment table pointer TBLP first and Read table (last page) to TBLH and Data Memory	3 ^{Note}	None
Miscellaneous			
LCLR [m]	Clear Data Memory	2 ^{Note}	None
LSET [m]	Set Data Memory	2 ^{Note}	None
LSWAP [m]	Swap nibbles of Data Memory	2 ^{Note}	None
LSWAPA [m]	Swap nibbles of Data Memory with result in ACC	2	None

Note: 1. For these extended skip instructions, if the result of the comparison involves a skip then three cycles are required, if no skip takes place two cycles is required.

2. Any extended instruction which changes the contents of the PCL register will also require three cycles for execution.

Instruction Definition

ADC A,[m]	Add Data Memory to ACC with Carry
Description	The contents of the specified Data Memory, Accumulator and the carry flag are added. The result is stored in the Accumulator.
Operation	$ACC \leftarrow ACC + [m] + C$
Affected flag(s)	OV, Z, AC, C, SC
ADCM A,[m]	Add ACC to Data Memory with Carry
Description	The contents of the specified Data Memory, Accumulator and the carry flag are added. The result is stored in the specified Data Memory.
Operation	$[m] \leftarrow ACC + [m] + C$
Affected flag(s)	OV, Z, AC, C, SC
ADD A,[m]	Add Data Memory to ACC
Description	The contents of the specified Data Memory and the Accumulator are added. The result is stored in the Accumulator.
Operation	$ACC \leftarrow ACC + [m]$
Affected flag(s)	OV, Z, AC, C, SC
ADD A,x	Add immediate data to ACC
Description	The contents of the Accumulator and the specified immediate data are added. The result is stored in the Accumulator.
Operation	$ACC \leftarrow ACC + x$
Affected flag(s)	OV, Z, AC, C, SC
ADDM A,[m]	Add ACC to Data Memory
Description	The contents of the specified Data Memory and the Accumulator are added. The result is stored in the specified Data Memory.
Operation	$[m] \leftarrow ACC + [m]$
Affected flag(s)	OV, Z, AC, C, SC
AND A,[m]	Logical AND Data Memory to ACC
Description	Data in the Accumulator and the specified Data Memory perform a bitwise logical AND operation. The result is stored in the Accumulator.
Operation	$ACC \leftarrow ACC \text{ "AND" } [m]$
Affected flag(s)	Z
AND A,x	Logical AND immediate data to ACC
Description	Data in the Accumulator and the specified immediate data perform a bit wise logical AND operation. The result is stored in the Accumulator.
Operation	$ACC \leftarrow ACC \text{ "AND" } x$
Affected flag(s)	Z
ANDM A,[m]	Logical AND ACC to Data Memory
Description	Data in the specified Data Memory and the Accumulator perform a bitwise logical AND operation. The result is stored in the Data Memory.
Operation	$[m] \leftarrow ACC \text{ "AND" } [m]$
Affected flag(s)	Z

CALL addr	Subroutine call
Description	Unconditionally calls a subroutine at the specified address. The Program Counter then increments by 1 to obtain the address of the next instruction which is then pushed onto the stack. The specified address is then loaded and the program continues execution from this new address. As this instruction requires an additional operation, it is a two cycle instruction.
Operation	Stack \leftarrow Program Counter + 1 Program Counter \leftarrow addr
Affected flag(s)	None
CLR [m]	Clear Data Memory
Description	Each bit of the specified Data Memory is cleared to 0.
Operation	[m] \leftarrow 00H
Affected flag(s)	None
CLR [m].i	Clear bit of Data Memory
Description	Bit i of the specified Data Memory is cleared to 0.
Operation	[m].i \leftarrow 0
Affected flag(s)	None
CLR WDT	Clear Watchdog Timer
Description	The TO, PDF flags and the WDT are all cleared.
Operation	WDT cleared TO \leftarrow 0 PDF \leftarrow 0
Affected flag(s)	TO, PDF
CPL [m]	Complement Data Memory
Description	Each bit of the specified Data Memory is logically complemented (1's complement). Bits which previously contained a 1 are changed to 0 and vice versa.
Operation	[m] \leftarrow $\overline{[m]}$
Affected flag(s)	Z
CPLA [m]	Complement Data Memory with result in ACC
Description	Each bit of the specified Data Memory is logically complemented (1's complement). Bits which previously contained a 1 are changed to 0 and vice versa. The complemented result is stored in the Accumulator and the contents of the Data Memory remain unchanged.
Operation	ACC \leftarrow $\overline{[m]}$
Affected flag(s)	Z
DAA [m]	Decimal-Adjust ACC for addition with result in Data Memory
Description	Convert the contents of the Accumulator value to a BCD (Binary Coded Decimal) value resulting from the previous addition of two BCD variables. If the low nibble is greater than 9 or if AC flag is set, then a value of 6 will be added to the low nibble. Otherwise the low nibble remains unchanged. If the high nibble is greater than 9 or if the C flag is set, then a value of 6 will be added to the high nibble. Essentially, the decimal conversion is performed by adding 00H, 06H, 60H or 66H depending on the Accumulator and flag conditions. Only the C flag may be affected by this instruction which indicates that if the original BCD sum is greater than 100, it allows multiple precision decimal addition.
Operation	[m] \leftarrow ACC + 00H or [m] \leftarrow ACC + 06H or [m] \leftarrow ACC + 60H or [m] \leftarrow ACC + 66H
Affected flag(s)	C

DEC [m]	Decrement Data Memory
Description	Data in the specified Data Memory is decremented by 1.
Operation	$[m] \leftarrow [m] - 1$
Affected flag(s)	Z
DECA [m]	Decrement Data Memory with result in ACC
Description	Data in the specified Data Memory is decremented by 1. The result is stored in the Accumulator. The contents of the Data Memory remain unchanged.
Operation	$ACC \leftarrow [m] - 1$
Affected flag(s)	Z
HALT	Enter power down mode
Description	This instruction stops the program execution and turns off the system clock. The contents of the Data Memory and registers are retained. The WDT and prescaler are cleared. The power down flag PDF is set and the WDT time-out flag TO is cleared.
Operation	$TO \leftarrow 0$ $PDF \leftarrow 1$
Affected flag(s)	TO, PDF
INC [m]	Increment Data Memory
Description	Data in the specified Data Memory is incremented by 1.
Operation	$[m] \leftarrow [m] + 1$
Affected flag(s)	Z
INCA [m]	Increment Data Memory with result in ACC
Description	Data in the specified Data Memory is incremented by 1. The result is stored in the Accumulator. The contents of the Data Memory remain unchanged.
Operation	$ACC \leftarrow [m] + 1$
Affected flag(s)	Z
JMP addr	Jump unconditionally
Description	The contents of the Program Counter are replaced with the specified address. Program execution then continues from this new address. As this requires the insertion of a dummy instruction while the new address is loaded, it is a two cycle instruction.
Operation	Program Counter \leftarrow addr
Affected flag(s)	None
MOV A,[m]	Move Data Memory to ACC
Description	The contents of the specified Data Memory are copied to the Accumulator.
Operation	$ACC \leftarrow [m]$
Affected flag(s)	None
MOV A,x	Move immediate data to ACC
Description	The immediate data specified is loaded into the Accumulator.
Operation	$ACC \leftarrow x$
Affected flag(s)	None
MOV [m],A	Move ACC to Data Memory
Description	The contents of the Accumulator are copied to the specified Data Memory.
Operation	$[m] \leftarrow ACC$
Affected flag(s)	None

NOP	No operation
Description	No operation is performed. Execution continues with the next instruction.
Operation	No operation
Affected flag(s)	None
OR A,[m]	Logical OR Data Memory to ACC
Description	Data in the Accumulator and the specified Data Memory perform a bitwise logical OR operation. The result is stored in the Accumulator.
Operation	$ACC \leftarrow ACC \text{ "OR" } [m]$
Affected flag(s)	Z
OR A,x	Logical OR immediate data to ACC
Description	Data in the Accumulator and the specified immediate data perform a bitwise logical OR operation. The result is stored in the Accumulator.
Operation	$ACC \leftarrow ACC \text{ "OR" } x$
Affected flag(s)	Z
ORM A,[m]	Logical OR ACC to Data Memory
Description	Data in the specified Data Memory and the Accumulator perform a bitwise logical OR operation. The result is stored in the Data Memory.
Operation	$[m] \leftarrow ACC \text{ "OR" } [m]$
Affected flag(s)	Z
RET	Return from subroutine
Description	The Program Counter is restored from the stack. Program execution continues at the restored address.
Operation	Program Counter \leftarrow Stack
Affected flag(s)	None
RET A,x	Return from subroutine and load immediate data to ACC
Description	The Program Counter is restored from the stack and the Accumulator loaded with the specified immediate data. Program execution continues at the restored address.
Operation	Program Counter \leftarrow Stack $ACC \leftarrow x$
Affected flag(s)	None
RETI	Return from interrupt
Description	The Program Counter is restored from the stack and the interrupts are re-enabled by setting the EMI bit. EMI is the master interrupt global enable bit. If an interrupt was pending when the RETI instruction is executed, the pending Interrupt routine will be processed before returning to the main program.
Operation	Program Counter \leftarrow Stack $EMI \leftarrow 1$
Affected flag(s)	None
RL [m]	Rotate Data Memory left
Description	The contents of the specified Data Memory are rotated left by 1 bit with bit 7 rotated into bit 0.
Operation	$[m].(i+1) \leftarrow [m].i; (i=0\sim6)$ $[m].0 \leftarrow [m].7$
Affected flag(s)	None

RLA [m]	Rotate Data Memory left with result in ACC
Description	The contents of the specified Data Memory are rotated left by 1 bit with bit 7 rotated into bit 0. The rotated result is stored in the Accumulator and the contents of the Data Memory remain unchanged.
Operation	$ACC.(i+1) \leftarrow [m].i; (i=0\sim6)$ $ACC.0 \leftarrow [m].7$
Affected flag(s)	None
RLC [m]	Rotate Data Memory left through Carry
Description	The contents of the specified Data Memory and the carry flag are rotated left by 1 bit. Bit 7 replaces the Carry bit and the original carry flag is rotated into bit 0.
Operation	$[m].(i+1) \leftarrow [m].i; (i=0\sim6)$ $[m].0 \leftarrow C$ $C \leftarrow [m].7$
Affected flag(s)	C
RLCA [m]	Rotate Data Memory left through Carry with result in ACC
Description	Data in the specified Data Memory and the carry flag are rotated left by 1 bit. Bit 7 replaces the Carry bit and the original carry flag is rotated into the bit 0. The rotated result is stored in the Accumulator and the contents of the Data Memory remain unchanged.
Operation	$ACC.(i+1) \leftarrow [m].i; (i=0\sim6)$ $ACC.0 \leftarrow C$ $C \leftarrow [m].7$
Affected flag(s)	C
RR [m]	Rotate Data Memory right
Description	The contents of the specified Data Memory are rotated right by 1 bit with bit 0 rotated into bit 7.
Operation	$[m].i \leftarrow [m].(i+1); (i=0\sim6)$ $[m].7 \leftarrow [m].0$
Affected flag(s)	None
RRA [m]	Rotate Data Memory right with result in ACC
Description	Data in the specified Data Memory is rotated right by 1 bit with bit 0 rotated into bit 7. The rotated result is stored in the Accumulator and the contents of the Data Memory remain unchanged.
Operation	$ACC.i \leftarrow [m].(i+1); (i=0\sim6)$ $ACC.7 \leftarrow [m].0$
Affected flag(s)	None
RRC [m]	Rotate Data Memory right through Carry
Description	The contents of the specified Data Memory and the carry flag are rotated right by 1 bit. Bit 0 replaces the Carry bit and the original carry flag is rotated into bit 7.
Operation	$[m].i \leftarrow [m].(i+1); (i=0\sim6)$ $[m].7 \leftarrow C$ $C \leftarrow [m].0$
Affected flag(s)	C

RRCA [m]	Rotate Data Memory right through Carry with result in ACC
Description	Data in the specified Data Memory and the carry flag are rotated right by 1 bit. Bit 0 replaces the Carry bit and the original carry flag is rotated into bit 7. The rotated result is stored in the Accumulator and the contents of the Data Memory remain unchanged.
Operation	$ACC.i \leftarrow [m].(i+1); (i=0\sim6)$ $ACC.7 \leftarrow C$ $C \leftarrow [m].0$
Affected flag(s)	C
SBC A,[m]	Subtract Data Memory from ACC with Carry
Description	The contents of the specified Data Memory and the complement of the carry flag are subtracted from the Accumulator. The result is stored in the Accumulator. Note that if the result of subtraction is negative, the C flag will be cleared to 0, otherwise if the result is positive or zero, the C flag will be set to 1.
Operation	$ACC \leftarrow ACC - [m] - \bar{C}$
Affected flag(s)	OV, Z, AC, C, SC, CZ
SBC A, x	Subtract immediate data from ACC with Carry
Description	The immediate data and the complement of the carry flag are subtracted from the Accumulator. The result is stored in the Accumulator. Note that if the result of subtraction is negative, the C flag will be cleared to 0, otherwise if the result is positive or zero, the C flag will be set to 1.
Operation	$ACC \leftarrow ACC - [m] - \bar{C}$
Affected flag(s)	OV, Z, AC, C, SC, CZ
SBCM A,[m]	Subtract Data Memory from ACC with Carry and result in Data Memory
Description	The contents of the specified Data Memory and the complement of the carry flag are subtracted from the Accumulator. The result is stored in the Data Memory. Note that if the result of subtraction is negative, the C flag will be cleared to 0, otherwise if the result is positive or zero, the C flag will be set to 1.
Operation	$[m] \leftarrow ACC - [m] - \bar{C}$
Affected flag(s)	OV, Z, AC, C, SC, CZ
SDZ [m]	Skip if decrement Data Memory is 0
Description	The contents of the specified Data Memory are first decremented by 1. If the result is 0 the following instruction is skipped. As this requires the insertion of a dummy instruction while the next instruction is fetched, it is a two cycle instruction. If the result is not 0 the program proceeds with the following instruction.
Operation	$[m] \leftarrow [m] - 1$ Skip if $[m]=0$
Affected flag(s)	None
SDZA [m]	Skip if decrement Data Memory is zero with result in ACC
Description	The contents of the specified Data Memory are first decremented by 1. If the result is 0, the following instruction is skipped. The result is stored in the Accumulator but the specified Data Memory contents remain unchanged. As this requires the insertion of a dummy instruction while the next instruction is fetched, it is a two cycle instruction. If the result is not 0, the program proceeds with the following instruction.
Operation	$ACC \leftarrow [m] - 1$ Skip if $ACC=0$
Affected flag(s)	None

SET [m]	Set Data Memory
Description	Each bit of the specified Data Memory is set to 1.
Operation	$[m] \leftarrow FFH$
Affected flag(s)	None
SET [m].i	Set bit of Data Memory
Description	Bit i of the specified Data Memory is set to 1.
Operation	$[m].i \leftarrow 1$
Affected flag(s)	None
SIZ [m]	Skip if increment Data Memory is 0
Description	The contents of the specified Data Memory are first incremented by 1. If the result is 0, the following instruction is skipped. As this requires the insertion of a dummy instruction while the next instruction is fetched, it is a two cycle instruction. If the result is not 0 the program proceeds with the following instruction.
Operation	$[m] \leftarrow [m] + 1$ Skip if $[m]=0$
Affected flag(s)	None
SIZA [m]	Skip if increment Data Memory is zero with result in ACC
Description	The contents of the specified Data Memory are first incremented by 1. If the result is 0, the following instruction is skipped. The result is stored in the Accumulator but the specified Data Memory contents remain unchanged. As this requires the insertion of a dummy instruction while the next instruction is fetched, it is a two cycle instruction. If the result is not 0 the program proceeds with the following instruction.
Operation	$ACC \leftarrow [m] + 1$ Skip if $ACC=0$
Affected flag(s)	None
SNZ [m].i	Skip if bit i of Data Memory is not 0
Description	If bit i of the specified Data Memory is not 0, the following instruction is skipped. As this requires the insertion of a dummy instruction while the next instruction is fetched, it is a two cycle instruction. If the result is 0 the program proceeds with the following instruction.
Operation	Skip if $[m].i \neq 0$
Affected flag(s)	None
SNZ [m]	Skip if Data Memory is not 0
Description	The contents of the specified Data Memory are read out and then written back to the specified Data Memory again. If the specified Data Memory is not 0, the following instruction is skipped. As this requires the insertion of a dummy instruction while the next instruction is fetched, it is a two cycle instruction. If the result is 0 the program proceeds with the following instruction.
Operation	Skip if $[m] \neq 0$
Affected flag(s)	None
SUB A,[m]	Subtract Data Memory from ACC
Description	The specified Data Memory is subtracted from the contents of the Accumulator. The result is stored in the Accumulator. Note that if the result of subtraction is negative, the C flag will be cleared to 0, otherwise if the result is positive or zero, the C flag will be set to 1.
Operation	$ACC \leftarrow ACC - [m]$
Affected flag(s)	OV, Z, AC, C, SC, CZ

SUBM A,[m]	Subtract Data Memory from ACC with result in Data Memory
Description	The specified Data Memory is subtracted from the contents of the Accumulator. The result is stored in the Data Memory. Note that if the result of subtraction is negative, the C flag will be cleared to 0, otherwise if the result is positive or zero, the C flag will be set to 1.
Operation	$[m] \leftarrow ACC - [m]$
Affected flag(s)	OV, Z, AC, C, SC, CZ
SUB A,x	Subtract immediate data from ACC
Description	The immediate data specified by the code is subtracted from the contents of the Accumulator. The result is stored in the Accumulator. Note that if the result of subtraction is negative, the C flag will be cleared to 0, otherwise if the result is positive or zero, the C flag will be set to 1.
Operation	$ACC \leftarrow ACC - x$
Affected flag(s)	OV, Z, AC, C, SC, CZ
SWAP [m]	Swap nibbles of Data Memory
Description	The low-order and high-order nibbles of the specified Data Memory are interchanged.
Operation	$[m].3 \sim [m].0 \leftrightarrow [m].7 \sim [m].4$
Affected flag(s)	None
SWAPA [m]	Swap nibbles of Data Memory with result in ACC
Description	The low-order and high-order nibbles of the specified Data Memory are interchanged. The result is stored in the Accumulator. The contents of the Data Memory remain unchanged.
Operation	$ACC.3 \sim ACC.0 \leftarrow [m].7 \sim [m].4$ $ACC.7 \sim ACC.4 \leftarrow [m].3 \sim [m].0$
Affected flag(s)	None
SZ [m]	Skip if Data Memory is 0
Description	The contents of the specified Data Memory are read out and then written back to the specified Data Memory again. If the contents of the specified Data Memory is 0, the following instruction is skipped. As this requires the insertion of a dummy instruction while the next instruction is fetched, it is a two cycle instruction. If the result is not 0 the program proceeds with the following instruction.
Operation	Skip if $[m]=0$
Affected flag(s)	None
SZA [m]	Skip if Data Memory is 0 with data movement to ACC
Description	The contents of the specified Data Memory are copied to the Accumulator. If the value is zero, the following instruction is skipped. As this requires the insertion of a dummy instruction while the next instruction is fetched, it is a two cycle instruction. If the result is not 0 the program proceeds with the following instruction.
Operation	$ACC \leftarrow [m]$ Skip if $[m]=0$
Affected flag(s)	None
SZ [m].i	Skip if bit i of Data Memory is 0
Description	If bit i of the specified Data Memory is 0, the following instruction is skipped. As this requires the insertion of a dummy instruction while the next instruction is fetched, it is a two cycle instruction. If the result is not 0, the program proceeds with the following instruction.
Operation	Skip if $[m].i=0$
Affected flag(s)	None

TABRD [m]	Read table (specific page) to TBLH and Data Memory
Description	The low byte of the program code (specific page) addressed by the table pointer (TBLP and TBHP) is moved to the specified Data Memory and the high byte moved to TBLH.
Operation	[m] ← program code (low byte) TBLH ← program code (high byte)
Affected flag(s)	None
TABRDL [m]	Read table (last page) to TBLH and Data Memory
Description	The low byte of the program code (last page) addressed by the table pointer (TBLP) is moved to the specified Data Memory and the high byte moved to TBLH.
Operation	[m] ← program code (low byte) TBLH ← program code (high byte)
Affected flag(s)	None
ITABRD [m]	Increment table pointer low byte first and read table (specific page) to TBLH and Data Memory
Description	Increment table pointer low byte, TBLP, first and then the program code (specific page) addressed by the table pointer (TBHP and TBLP) is moved to the specified Data Memory and the high byte moved to TBLH.
Operation	[m] ← program code (low byte) TBLH ← program code (high byte)
Affected flag(s)	None
ITABRDL [m]	Increment table pointer low byte first and read table (last page) to TBLH and Data Memory
Description	Increment table pointer low byte, TBLP, first and then the low byte of the program code (last page) addressed by the table pointer (TBLP) is moved to the specified Data Memory and the high byte moved to TBLH.
Operation	[m] ← program code (low byte) TBLH ← program code (high byte)
Affected flag(s)	None
XOR A,[m]	Logical XOR Data Memory to ACC
Description	Data in the Accumulator and the specified Data Memory perform a bitwise logical XOR operation. The result is stored in the Accumulator.
Operation	ACC ← ACC "XOR" [m]
Affected flag(s)	Z
XORM A,[m]	Logical XOR ACC to Data Memory
Description	Data in the specified Data Memory and the Accumulator perform a bitwise logical XOR operation. The result is stored in the Data Memory.
Operation	[m] ← ACC "XOR" [m]
Affected flag(s)	Z
XOR A,x	Logical XOR immediate data to ACC
Description	Data in the Accumulator and the specified immediate data perform a bitwise logical XOR operation. The result is stored in the Accumulator.
Operation	ACC ← ACC "XOR" x
Affected flag(s)	Z

Extended Instruction Definition

The extended instructions are used to directly access the data stored in any data memory sections.

LADC A,[m]	Add Data Memory to ACC with Carry
Description	The contents of the specified Data Memory, Accumulator and the carry flag are added. The result is stored in the Accumulator.
Operation	$ACC \leftarrow ACC + [m] + C$
Affected flag(s)	OV, Z, AC, C, SC
LADCM A,[m]	Add ACC to Data Memory with Carry
Description	The contents of the specified Data Memory, Accumulator and the carry flag are added. The result is stored in the specified Data Memory.
Operation	$[m] \leftarrow ACC + [m] + C$
Affected flag(s)	OV, Z, AC, C, SC
LADD A,[m]	Add Data Memory to ACC
Description	The contents of the specified Data Memory and the Accumulator are added. The result is stored in the Accumulator.
Operation	$ACC \leftarrow ACC + [m]$
Affected flag(s)	OV, Z, AC, C, SC
LADDM A,[m]	Add ACC to Data Memory
Description	The contents of the specified Data Memory and the Accumulator are added. The result is stored in the specified Data Memory.
Operation	$[m] \leftarrow ACC + [m]$
Affected flag(s)	OV, Z, AC, C, SC
LAND A,[m]	Logical AND Data Memory to ACC
Description	Data in the Accumulator and the specified Data Memory perform a bitwise logical AND operation. The result is stored in the Accumulator.
Operation	$ACC \leftarrow ACC \text{ "AND" } [m]$
Affected flag(s)	Z
LANDM A,[m]	Logical AND ACC to Data Memory
Description	Data in the specified Data Memory and the Accumulator perform a bitwise logical AND operation. The result is stored in the Data Memory.
Operation	$[m] \leftarrow ACC \text{ "AND" } [m]$
Affected flag(s)	Z
LCLR [m]	Clear Data Memory
Description	Each bit of the specified Data Memory is cleared to 0.
Operation	$[m] \leftarrow 00H$
Affected flag(s)	None
LCLR [m].i	Clear bit of Data Memory
Description	Bit i of the specified Data Memory is cleared to 0.
Operation	$[m].i \leftarrow 0$
Affected flag(s)	None

LCPL [m]	Complement Data Memory
Description	Each bit of the specified Data Memory is logically complemented (1's complement). Bits which previously contained a 1 are changed to 0 and vice versa.
Operation	$[m] \leftarrow \overline{[m]}$
Affected flag(s)	Z
LCPLA [m]	Complement Data Memory with result in ACC
Description	Each bit of the specified Data Memory is logically complemented (1's complement). Bits which previously contained a 1 are changed to 0 and vice versa. The complemented result is stored in the Accumulator and the contents of the Data Memory remain unchanged.
Operation	$ACC \leftarrow \overline{[m]}$
Affected flag(s)	Z
LDAA [m]	Decimal-Adjust ACC for addition with result in Data Memory
Description	Convert the contents of the Accumulator value to a BCD (Binary Coded Decimal) value resulting from the previous addition of two BCD variables. If the low nibble is greater than 9 or if AC flag is set, then a value of 6 will be added to the low nibble. Otherwise the low nibble remains unchanged. If the high nibble is greater than 9 or if the C flag is set, then a value of 6 will be added to the high nibble. Essentially, the decimal conversion is performed by adding 00H, 06H, 60H or 66H depending on the Accumulator and flag conditions. Only the C flag may be affected by this instruction which indicates that if the original BCD sum is greater than 100, it allows multiple precision decimal addition.
Operation	$[m] \leftarrow ACC + 00H$ or $[m] \leftarrow ACC + 06H$ or $[m] \leftarrow ACC + 60H$ or $[m] \leftarrow ACC + 66H$
Affected flag(s)	C
LDEC [m]	Decrement Data Memory
Description	Data in the specified Data Memory is decremented by 1.
Operation	$[m] \leftarrow [m] - 1$
Affected flag(s)	Z
LDECA [m]	Decrement Data Memory with result in ACC
Description	Data in the specified Data Memory is decremented by 1. The result is stored in the Accumulator. The contents of the Data Memory remain unchanged.
Operation	$ACC \leftarrow [m] - 1$
Affected flag(s)	Z
LINC [m]	Increment Data Memory
Description	Data in the specified Data Memory is incremented by 1.
Operation	$[m] \leftarrow [m] + 1$
Affected flag(s)	Z
LINCA [m]	Increment Data Memory with result in ACC
Description	Data in the specified Data Memory is incremented by 1. The result is stored in the Accumulator. The contents of the Data Memory remain unchanged.
Operation	$ACC \leftarrow [m] + 1$
Affected flag(s)	Z

LMOV A,[m]	Move Data Memory to ACC
Description	The contents of the specified Data Memory are copied to the Accumulator.
Operation	$ACC \leftarrow [m]$
Affected flag(s)	None
LMOV [m],A	Move ACC to Data Memory
Description	The contents of the Accumulator are copied to the specified Data Memory.
Operation	$[m] \leftarrow ACC$
Affected flag(s)	None
LOR A,[m]	Logical OR Data Memory to ACC
Description	Data in the Accumulator and the specified Data Memory perform a bitwise logical OR operation. The result is stored in the Accumulator.
Operation	$ACC \leftarrow ACC \text{ "OR" } [m]$
Affected flag(s)	Z
LORM A,[m]	Logical OR ACC to Data Memory
Description	Data in the specified Data Memory and the Accumulator perform a bitwise logical OR operation. The result is stored in the Data Memory.
Operation	$[m] \leftarrow ACC \text{ "OR" } [m]$
Affected flag(s)	Z
LRL [m]	Rotate Data Memory left
Description	The contents of the specified Data Memory are rotated left by 1 bit with bit 7 rotated into bit 0.
Operation	$[m].(i+1) \leftarrow [m].i; (i=0\sim6)$ $[m].0 \leftarrow [m].7$
Affected flag(s)	None
LRLA [m]	Rotate Data Memory left with result in ACC
Description	The contents of the specified Data Memory are rotated left by 1 bit with bit 7 rotated into bit 0. The rotated result is stored in the Accumulator and the contents of the Data Memory remain unchanged.
Operation	$ACC.(i+1) \leftarrow [m].i; (i=0\sim6)$ $ACC.0 \leftarrow [m].7$
Affected flag(s)	None
LRLC [m]	Rotate Data Memory left through Carry
Description	The contents of the specified Data Memory and the carry flag are rotated left by 1 bit. Bit 7 replaces the Carry bit and the original carry flag is rotated into bit 0.
Operation	$[m].(i+1) \leftarrow [m].i; (i=0\sim6)$ $[m].0 \leftarrow C$ $C \leftarrow [m].7$
Affected flag(s)	C
LRLCA [m]	Rotate Data Memory left through Carry with result in ACC
Description	Data in the specified Data Memory and the carry flag are rotated left by 1 bit. Bit 7 replaces the Carry bit and the original carry flag is rotated into the bit 0. The rotated result is stored in the Accumulator and the contents of the Data Memory remain unchanged.
Operation	$ACC.(i+1) \leftarrow [m].i; (i=0\sim6)$ $ACC.0 \leftarrow C$ $C \leftarrow [m].7$
Affected flag(s)	C

LRR [m]	Rotate Data Memory right
Description	The contents of the specified Data Memory are rotated right by 1 bit with bit 0 rotated into bit 7.
Operation	$[m].i \leftarrow [m].(i+1); (i=0\sim 6)$ $[m].7 \leftarrow [m].0$
Affected flag(s)	None
LRRA [m]	Rotate Data Memory right with result in ACC
Description	Data in the specified Data Memory is rotated right by 1 bit with bit 0 rotated into bit 7. The rotated result is stored in the Accumulator and the contents of the Data Memory remain unchanged.
Operation	$ACC.i \leftarrow [m].(i+1); (i=0\sim 6)$ $ACC.7 \leftarrow [m].0$
Affected flag(s)	None
LRRC [m]	Rotate Data Memory right through Carry
Description	The contents of the specified Data Memory and the carry flag are rotated right by 1 bit. Bit 0 replaces the Carry bit and the original carry flag is rotated into bit 7.
Operation	$[m].i \leftarrow [m].(i+1); (i=0\sim 6)$ $[m].7 \leftarrow C$ $C \leftarrow [m].0$
Affected flag(s)	C
LRRCA [m]	Rotate Data Memory right through Carry with result in ACC
Description	Data in the specified Data Memory and the carry flag are rotated right by 1 bit. Bit 0 replaces the Carry bit and the original carry flag is rotated into bit 7. The rotated result is stored in the Accumulator and the contents of the Data Memory remain unchanged.
Operation	$ACC.i \leftarrow [m].(i+1); (i=0\sim 6)$ $ACC.7 \leftarrow C$ $C \leftarrow [m].0$
Affected flag(s)	C
LSBC A,[m]	Subtract Data Memory from ACC with Carry
Description	The contents of the specified Data Memory and the complement of the carry flag are subtracted from the Accumulator. The result is stored in the Accumulator. Note that if the result of subtraction is negative, the C flag will be cleared to 0, otherwise if the result is positive or zero, the C flag will be set to 1.
Operation	$ACC \leftarrow ACC - [m] - \bar{C}$
Affected flag(s)	OV, Z, AC, C, SC, CZ
LSBCM A,[m]	Subtract Data Memory from ACC with Carry and result in Data Memory
Description	The contents of the specified Data Memory and the complement of the carry flag are subtracted from the Accumulator. The result is stored in the Data Memory. Note that if the result of subtraction is negative, the C flag will be cleared to 0, otherwise if the result is positive or zero, the C flag will be set to 1.
Operation	$[m] \leftarrow ACC - [m] - \bar{C}$
Affected flag(s)	OV, Z, AC, C, SC, CZ

LSDZ [m]	Skip if decrement Data Memory is 0
Description	The contents of the specified Data Memory are first decremented by 1. If the result is 0 the following instruction is skipped. As this requires the insertion of a dummy instruction while the next instruction is fetched, it is a three cycle instruction. If the result is not 0 the program proceeds with the following instruction.
Operation	$[m] \leftarrow [m] - 1$ Skip if $[m]=0$
Affected flag(s)	None
LSDZA [m]	Skip if decrement Data Memory is zero with result in ACC
Description	The contents of the specified Data Memory are first decremented by 1. If the result is 0, the following instruction is skipped. The result is stored in the Accumulator but the specified Data Memory contents remain unchanged. As this requires the insertion of a dummy instruction while the next instruction is fetched, it is a three cycle instruction. If the result is not 0, the program proceeds with the following instruction.
Operation	$ACC \leftarrow [m] - 1$ Skip if $ACC=0$
Affected flag(s)	None
LSET [m]	Set Data Memory
Description	Each bit of the specified Data Memory is set to 1.
Operation	$[m] \leftarrow FFH$
Affected flag(s)	None
LSET [m].i	Set bit of Data Memory
Description	Bit i of the specified Data Memory is set to 1.
Operation	$[m].i \leftarrow 1$
Affected flag(s)	None
LSIZ [m]	Skip if increment Data Memory is 0
Description	The contents of the specified Data Memory are first incremented by 1. If the result is 0, the following instruction is skipped. As this requires the insertion of a dummy instruction while the next instruction is fetched, it is a three cycle instruction. If the result is not 0 the program proceeds with the following instruction.
Operation	$[m] \leftarrow [m] + 1$ Skip if $[m]=0$
Affected flag(s)	None
LSIZA [m]	Skip if increment Data Memory is zero with result in ACC
Description	The contents of the specified Data Memory are first incremented by 1. If the result is 0, the following instruction is skipped. The result is stored in the Accumulator but the specified Data Memory contents remain unchanged. As this requires the insertion of a dummy instruction while the next instruction is fetched, it is a three cycle instruction. If the result is not 0 the program proceeds with the following instruction.
Operation	$ACC \leftarrow [m] + 1$ Skip if $ACC=0$
Affected flag(s)	None
LSNZ [m].i	Skip if bit i of Data Memory is not 0
Description	If bit i of the specified Data Memory is not 0, the following instruction is skipped. As this requires the insertion of a dummy instruction while the next instruction is fetched, it is a three cycle instruction. If the result is 0 the program proceeds with the following instruction.
Operation	Skip if $[m].i \neq 0$
Affected flag(s)	None

LSNZ [m]	Skip if Data Memory is not 0
Description	The contents of the specified Data Memory are read out and then written to the specified Data Memory again. If the content of the specified Data Memory is not 0, the following instruction is skipped. As this requires the insertion of a dummy instruction while the next instruction is fetched, it is a three cycle instruction. If the result is 0 the program proceeds with the following instruction.
Operation	Skip if [m] \neq 0
Affected flag(s)	None
LSUB A,[m]	Subtract Data Memory from ACC
Description	The specified Data Memory is subtracted from the contents of the Accumulator. The result is stored in the Accumulator. Note that if the result of subtraction is negative, the C flag will be cleared to 0, otherwise if the result is positive or zero, the C flag will be set to 1.
Operation	$ACC \leftarrow ACC - [m]$
Affected flag(s)	OV, Z, AC, C, SC, CZ
LSUBM A,[m]	Subtract Data Memory from ACC with result in Data Memory
Description	The specified Data Memory is subtracted from the contents of the Accumulator. The result is stored in the Data Memory. Note that if the result of subtraction is negative, the C flag will be cleared to 0, otherwise if the result is positive or zero, the C flag will be set to 1.
Operation	$[m] \leftarrow ACC - [m]$
Affected flag(s)	OV, Z, AC, C, SC, CZ
LSWAP [m]	Swap nibbles of Data Memory
Description	The low-order and high-order nibbles of the specified Data Memory are interchanged.
Operation	$[m].3 \sim [m].0 \leftrightarrow [m].7 \sim [m].4$
Affected flag(s)	None
LSWAPA [m]	Swap nibbles of Data Memory with result in ACC
Description	The low-order and high-order nibbles of the specified Data Memory are interchanged. The result is stored in the Accumulator. The contents of the Data Memory remain unchanged.
Operation	$ACC.3 \sim ACC.0 \leftarrow [m].7 \sim [m].4$ $ACC.7 \sim ACC.4 \leftarrow [m].3 \sim [m].0$
Affected flag(s)	None
LSZ [m]	Skip if Data Memory is 0
Description	The contents of the specified Data Memory are read out and then written to the specified Data Memory again. If the contents of the specified Data Memory is 0, the following instruction is skipped. As this requires the insertion of a dummy instruction while the next instruction is fetched, it is a three cycle instruction. If the result is not 0 the program proceeds with the following instruction.
Operation	Skip if [m]=0
Affected flag(s)	None
LSZA [m]	Skip if Data Memory is 0 with data movement to ACC
Description	The contents of the specified Data Memory are copied to the Accumulator. If the value is zero, the following instruction is skipped. As this requires the insertion of a dummy instruction while the next instruction is fetched, it is a three cycle instruction. If the result is not 0 the program proceeds with the following instruction.
Operation	$ACC \leftarrow [m]$ Skip if [m]=0
Affected flag(s)	None

LSZ [m].i	Skip if bit i of Data Memory is 0
Description	If bit i of the specified Data Memory is 0, the following instruction is skipped. As this requires the insertion of a dummy instruction while the next instruction is fetched, it is a three cycle instruction. If the result is not 0, the program proceeds with the following instruction.
Operation	Skip if [m].i=0
Affected flag(s)	None
LTABRD [m]	Read table (specific page) to TBLH and Data Memory
Description	The low byte of the program code (specific page) addressed by the table pointer (TBHP and TBLP) is moved to the specified Data Memory and the high byte moved to TBLH.
Operation	[m] ← program code (low byte) TBLH ← program code (high byte)
Affected flag(s)	None
LTABRDL [m]	Read table (last page) to TBLH and Data Memory
Description	The low byte of the program code (last page) addressed by the table pointer (TBLP) is moved to the specified Data Memory and the high byte moved to TBLH.
Operation	[m] ← program code (low byte) TBLH ← program code (high byte)
Affected flag(s)	None
LITABRD [m]	Increment table pointer low byte first and read table (specific page) to TBLH and Data Memory
Description	Increment table pointer low byte, TBLP, first and then the program code (specific page) addressed by the table pointer (TBHP and TBLP) is moved to the specified Data Memory and the high byte moved to TBLH.
Operation	[m] ← program code (low byte) TBLH ← program code (high byte)
Affected flag(s)	None
LITABRDL [m]	Increment table pointer low byte first and read table (last page) to TBLH and Data Memory
Description	Increment table pointer low byte, TBLP, first and then the low byte of the program code (last page) addressed by the table pointer (TBLP) is moved to the specified Data Memory and the high byte moved to TBLH.
Operation	[m] ← program code (low byte) TBLH ← program code (high byte)
Affected flag(s)	None
LXOR A,[m]	Logical XOR Data Memory to ACC
Description	Data in the Accumulator and the specified Data Memory perform a bitwise logical XOR operation. The result is stored in the Accumulator.
Operation	ACC ← ACC "XOR" [m]
Affected flag(s)	Z
LXORM A,[m]	Logical XOR ACC to Data Memory
Description	Data in the specified Data Memory and the Accumulator perform a bitwise logical XOR operation. The result is stored in the Data Memory.
Operation	[m] ← ACC "XOR" [m]
Affected flag(s)	Z

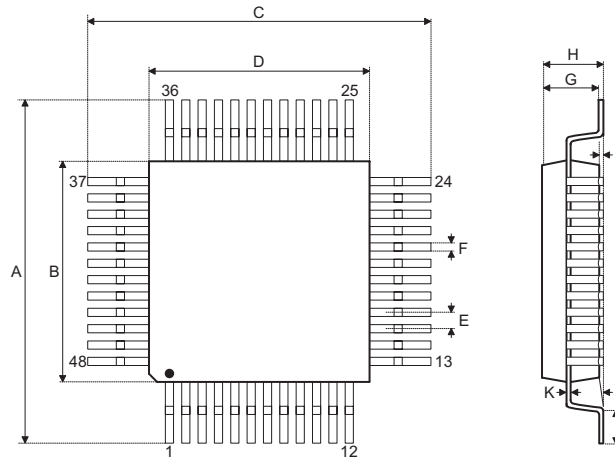
Package Information

Note that the package information provided here is for consultation purposes only. As this information may be updated at regular intervals users are reminded to consult the [Holtek website](#) for the latest version of the [Package/Carton Information](#).

Additional supplementary information with regard to packaging is listed below. Click on the relevant section to be transferred to the relevant website page.

- [Further Package Information \(include Outline Dimensions, Product Tape and Reel Specifications\)](#)
- [Packing Materials Information](#)
- [Carton information](#)

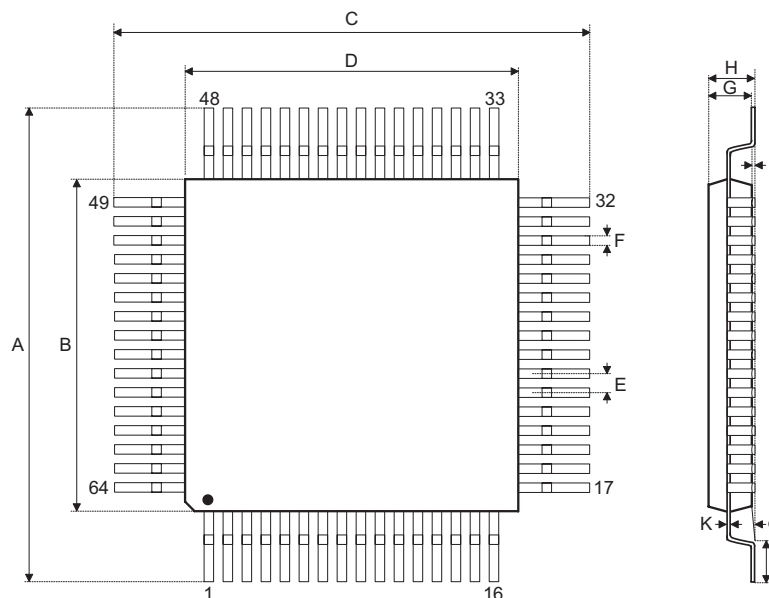
48-pin LQFP (7mm×7mm) Outline Dimensions



Symbol	Dimensions in inch		
	Min.	Nom.	Max.
A	0.354 BSC		
B	0.276 BSC		
C	0.354 BSC		
D	0.276 BSC		
E	0.020 BSC		
F	0.007	0.009	0.011
G	0.053	0.055	0.057
H	—	—	0.063
I	0.002	—	0.006
J	0.018	0.024	0.030
K	0.004	—	0.008
α	0°	—	7°

Symbol	Dimensions in mm		
	Min.	Nom.	Max.
A	9.00 BSC		
B	7.00 BSC		
C	9.00 BSC		
D	7.00 BSC		
E	0.50 BSC		
F	0.17	0.22	0.27
G	1.35	1.40	1.45
H	—	—	1.60
I	0.05	—	0.15
J	0.45	0.60	0.75
K	0.09	—	0.20
α	0°	—	7°

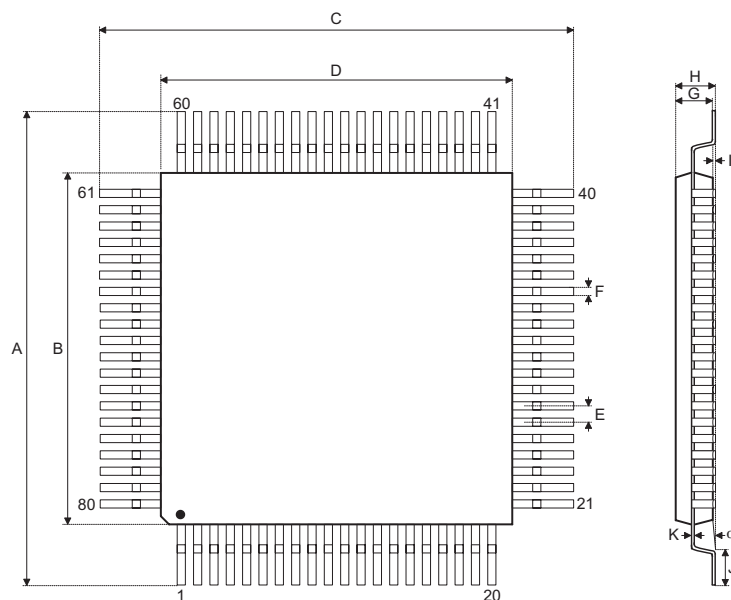
64-pin LQFP (7mm×7mm) Outline Dimensions



Symbol	Dimensions in inch		
	Min.	Nom.	Max.
A	0.354 BSC		
B	0.276 BSC		
C	0.354 BSC		
D	0.276 BSC		
E	0.016 BSC		
F	0.005	0.007	0.009
G	0.053	0.055	0.057
H	—	—	0.063
I	0.002	—	0.006
J	0.018	0.024	0.030
K	0.004	—	0.008
α	0°	—	7°

Symbol	Dimensions in mm		
	Min.	Nom.	Max.
A	9.00 BSC		
B	7.00 BSC		
C	9.00 BSC		
D	7.00 BSC		
E	0.40 BSC		
F	0.13	0.18	0.23
G	1.35	1.40	1.45
H	—	—	1.60
I	0.05	—	0.15
J	0.45	0.60	0.75
K	0.09	—	0.20
α	0°	—	7°

80-pin LQFP (10mm×10mm) Outline Dimensions



Symbol	Dimensions in inch		
	Min.	Nom.	Max.
A	0.472 BSC		
B	0.394 BSC		
C	0.472 BSC		
D	0.394 BSC		
E	0.016 BSC		
F	0.005	0.007	0.009
G	0.053	0.055	0.057
H	—	—	0.063
I	0.002	—	0.006
J	0.018	0.024	0.030
K	0.004	—	0.008
α	0°	—	7°

Symbol	Dimensions in mm		
	Min.	Nom.	Max.
A	12.00 BSC		
B	10.00 BSC		
C	12.00 BSC		
D	10.00 BSC		
E	0.40 BSC		
F	0.13	0.18	0.23
G	1.35	1.40	1.45
H	—	—	1.60
I	0.05	—	0.15
J	0.45	0.60	0.75
K	0.09	—	0.20
α	0°	—	7°

Copyright© 2024 by HOLTEK SEMICONDUCTOR INC. All Rights Reserved.

The information provided in this document has been produced with reasonable care and attention before publication, however, HOLTEK does not guarantee that the information is completely accurate. The information contained in this publication is provided for reference only and may be superseded by updates. HOLTEK disclaims any expressed, implied or statutory warranties, including but not limited to suitability for commercialization, satisfactory quality, specifications, characteristics, functions, fitness for a particular purpose, and non-infringement of any third-party's rights. HOLTEK disclaims all liability arising from the information and its application. In addition, HOLTEK does not recommend the use of HOLTEK's products where there is a risk of personal hazard due to malfunction or other reasons. HOLTEK hereby declares that it does not authorize the use of these products in life-saving, life-sustaining or safety critical components. Any use of HOLTEK's products in life-saving/sustaining or safety applications is entirely at the buyer's risk, and the buyer agrees to defend, indemnify and hold HOLTEK harmless from any damages, claims, suits, or expenses resulting from such use. The information provided in this document, including but not limited to the content, data, examples, materials, graphs, and trademarks, is the intellectual property of HOLTEK (and its licensors, where applicable) and is protected by copyright law and other intellectual property laws. No license, express or implied, to any intellectual property right, is granted by HOLTEK herein. HOLTEK reserves the right to revise the information described in the document at any time without prior notice. For the latest information, please contact us.